



9 21020020 1921 3

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



This book is purchased from
The Schofield Fund
given in memory of
William Henry Schofield
Victoria College, B.A. 1889
Harvard University, Ph. D. 1895
Professor of Comparative Literature
Harvard University, 1906-20.
Harvard Exchange Professor at
University of Berlin, 1907
Lecturer at the Sorbonne and
University of Copenhagen, 1910.
Harvard Exchange Professor at
Western Colleges, 1918.

The Three Kings' Sons.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, LXVII.

1895.

19

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

The Three Kings' Songs.

(ENGLISHT FROM THE FRENCH.)

PART I, THE TEXT.

EDITED FROM ITS UNIQUE MS, HARLEIAN 326, ABOUT 1500 A.D.

BY

F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A.,

TRINITY HALL, CAMBRIDGE; HON. DR. PHIL., BERLIN.

LONDON:

PUBLISHT FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

1895.

PR
1119
E5
no. 67

61033
22-1-37

Extra Series, LXVII.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

FOREWORDS.

WHAT a blessing it was, in old Days of Romance, for a Christian King, beset by Turks, to have a beautiful daughter! Of course all the young Princes and knights of Christendom pictured to themselves the lovely girl in distress, about to be sacrificed to a Heathen brute, and they at once resolv'd to go and fight for her father, and marry her. They thus kild two—nay, three—birds with one stone: first, they fought for the Faith, and saved their souls; next, they got a chance of the girl; and last, of her father's Kingdom. War, Love, and Sovereignty,—what could a man want more?

Here, surely, was a good subject for a story; and so thought the Frenchman—David Aubert, or some one else¹—who wrote the original of the englisht romance (Harl. 326, ab. 1500 A.D.) told in the following pages. It is not a stirring narrative, for it's after the time when men really cared for fighting. In all the battles, no one is split in two; no one has his head clean cut off at one swipe; no one's back is broken; no one's arm or leg even is chopt right off. All the old details of a combat are smotherd up in generalities. Folks' feelings and apprehensions are dwelt upon; and the repetitions are as frequent and as tedious as in Tory speeches against Home Rule. Still, the story is readable, and this it is in brief:—

King Alfour of Sicily is invaded and half-conquerd by the Turks. He has a lovely daughter Iolante. To help them, Prince Philip of France steals away incognito from Paris, and falls ill in Toledo. When well, he proceeds to Sicily with one of King Alfour's generals, Ferant, whom he rescues from

¹ "Several copies of this Romance are in the Bibliothèque Nationale, one of which (No. 6766) is described by Paulin Paris in *Les Manuscrits François*, tome i. (1836), pp. 106—108. This French MS was transcribed at Hesdin in 1463 by David Aubert, librarian to Philip the Good, Duke of Burgundy. For an account of Aubert, see the description of vol. i. of Perceforest in Royal MS. 15. E. V. (under *British and English Traditions*), in the authorship of which romance he there (at f. 3) claims (p. 2) a share. It seems that he makes a similar claim in the MS of the 'Conquestes du noble empereur Charlemaine' (see J. Marchal's *Catalogue des MSS . . . de Bourgogne*, Brussels, tome ii. p. 291); and it is conjectured by Gaston Paris (*Histoire poétique de Charlemagne*, 1865, p. 96) that the whole authorship of the present Romance may not improbably be ascribed to David Aubert."—H. Ward's *Catalog*, i. 782-3.

the Turks, when taken in his first battle, and also captures King Ferabras of Persia. On seeing Princess Iolante, Philip falls violently in love with her.

Also to aid King Alfour, a joint expedition of French, Scotch and English troops, led by Prince David of Scotland, sails for Sicily, but is repulst. Afterwards a storm wrecks the allied fleet, and Prince David is saved from his Turkish foes, only by the mercy of Orcays, the Sultan's son, who soon sets him free, and sends him to Ferant and Prince Philip. They fight often with the Turks, and win, as Philip and David hearten the downcast Sicilian troops. Prince David falls in love with Iolante too.

Meantime, the third King's son, Prince Humphrey of England, steals away from England, also to help King Alfour. His ship is driven ashore at a Turkish town, and he is thrown into a dungeon. From this, he is freed by K. Ferabras of Persia, who has been temporarily releast by the Sicilians, and has promist to liberate Christian prisoners. By him, Prince Humphrey is enabled to join Prince Philip of France and Prince David of Scotland, and all three incognito,¹ are servants of Ferant, and attend on Princess Iolante, whom they all, of course, love. The Turkish prince, Orcays, who is taken prisoner, is also desperately in love with her.

In one battle, Prince Philip is taken, and beaten till he bleeds, by the Sultan, but is rescued. At last the Sultan is slain. King Alfour—by the help of the Three Princes—recovers all his cities, drives out the Turks, and is made Emperor of Germany.

War being over, the Three Princes go home, but return the next May as Kings—of France, England, and Scotland,—their fathers having died. They come back for the grand three-days' Tourney for the hand of Princess Iolante. King Philip of France wins her; and as the other kings have to be provided with wives, King Humphrey of England gives one of his beautiful sisters to King David of Scotland, and the other to the Sultan of Turkey; while he himself weds the Sultan's lovely sister, who has followd her brother's example, and turnd Christian. There are grand wedding festivities; and the Emperor and Kings visit one another. King Philip gets Sicily after the Emperor's death. He and Kings Humphrey and David live happy with their wives, and have lots of fine children; but Sultan Orcays dies soon, childless; and his English widow comes back to England.

For language, the text has not much interest—to me, at least. *Finance*² for 'ransom' (p. 20/39, 93/13, &c.); 'yngoodly' for excellent (p. 174/23),

¹ Prince Philip's incognito is 'Le Despurveu' till Iolante changes it to 'Le Surnome.' Prince David is 'Athis,' and Prince Humphrey 'Ector.'

² This word is also used thus in the Romance of *Partenay*, l. 1853.

'amegred' = emaciated, Fr. *amaigrir* (p. 9/36); 'chapelet,' metaphorically (p. 25/1); 'ensured' = trained (p. 10/18), and a few other words are noteworthy: see Mr. Thomas Austin's Glossary, where some interesting information, glossing Thucydides (IV. 135), will be found on p. 123/3. But Dr. Leon Kellner will deal with the Vocabulary, Syntax, sources, &c. in his Introduction. He was to have edited the Text,—of which his Wife made an excellent copy for the Society,—but he was prevented by his revision of Dr. R. Morris's *Historical English Accidence*. I therefore had to take up *The Three Kings' Sons*, and here is Part I. Dr. Kellner has collated the English text with its French original in Paris, and hopes to give us Part II next year. Our knowledge of the existence of the English version is due to Mr. Henry Ward's admirable *Catalogue of the Romances in the British Museum*, one of the best bits of work that any member of the Museum staff has ever turned out.

F. J. FURNIVALL.

3, St. George's Square, London, N.W.,
Saturday midnight, 9 Sept. 1893.

The Threë Kings' Sons.

[Harley 326, leaf 8. The slight tags to final f and g are not printed].

4 **A**ftir the crucifyng of oure lord Ihesu crist, and that the After Christ's death,
 holy cristen feith was magnified and augmented in alle
 the Reaumes that at this day be cristen / and that
 were founde in oure holy feith by the Apostells, and
 aftir by the holy doctoures / that same feith of oure
 lord Ihesu crist was so moche honoured and kepte that
 alle cristen Reaumes were in so good tranquillite and pees, that and when all Christian lands are at peace,
8 there was no warre a-monges them. ¶ And in this tyme reigned a
 kyng in ffrance, of right excellent and grete recommendacion,
 whos name was Charles, and had weddid a right faire lady, Charles, the King of France, weds a princess of Naverne.
2 daughter to the kyng of Nauerne, whiche for hir vertues was so
 moche biloued and honoured of alle maner people thoroughout the
 Reaume, that more might no princesse be / The kyng and the
 Quene gouerned the Reaume in suche lone, pees, and concord, that
 the laude & praise therof sounded and spred ouer alle the worlde,
6 for neuer thei did nor suffred, to their power, no creature to haue
 wrong nor violence; and if any gentelman were disherite bi mys- They help all men in trouble,
 fortune or euil gouernaunce of his fadir, or were in any maner
 mysery or trouble, thei wolde helpe and comfort hym, & do their
20 deuoir to reconer hym ^{his} right, and suche honour as he was born [^{leaf 8, bk.]}
 vnto. And in like wise, if ther were any poure gentilwoman
 frendles / thei wold helpe to mary hir / and so did they by Mar- and poor girls to marry.
 chauntes that were fallen in-to pouerte by Infortune: thei wold
4 releue them / and so wele thei did, þat by their merites the grace
 of god so largely abounded in them that thei had a sone / wherof At last they have a son,
 thei were so ioifull / that more they might not be; and good cause
 had thei to be glad / for long it was or they had any / and at laste
8 god sent them suche one as was bettir than any man can write of,
 aswele towards god as to the world / and god had formed hym of
 suche beaute, witte, trouthe and worthynes / and of alle condicions

THREE KINGS' SONS.

B

the best possible.

All the realm
thank God.

The Prince
is christend
Philip,

is well
brought-up,

[² leaf 9]

and grows
wiser and
better till he
is 19.

Now I turn
to the King
of Sicily.

that to a kynges sone perteyne to haue, not only for to gouerne that Reaume / but for to haue had al that part of the world vnder his gouernaunce. Now may ye thynke wele / that at his birthe the kyng & the Quene, and alle the Reaume, were gretly reioised / and 4
gave thankinges and preisynges to god, with general processions, doying thorough alle the Reaume as belongeth to suche cas / and moche more were thei comfortid / that the Reaume shold be succeded by hym that came of that noble lyne / than of any othir cristen 8
prince that they myght haue aftir the deth of their kyng. ¶ It is to thinke¹ that childe was cristened as to a kynges sone bilongeth / and he was named Philip. ¶ Of his norture & of his kepyng in his childhode / it is to thynke¹ also that he was diligently kepte / 12
and whan he was paste vij. yere age / he was putte in the handes of notable knyghtes / whiche were chosen by the kyng and his counseill for the most noble of the Reaume, bycause that by them he shulde be induced in alle good maners & condicions ; for at that tyme / the 16
sones of kynges and of grete princes aftir that age were put in the handes of the moost notable knyghtes and worthi men / that the kynges or princes had in their lond / for bicause that the condicions of princes may many tymes auaille and helpe to the comon 20
wele / and that princes wele condicioned may make and restore a desolat Reaume / and the contrary may put the moost noble and myghti Reaume in captyuute & wrecchidnes. ¶ Wherefore it befell that this yonge Philip, the kynges sone, was so wele & honorably 24
norissched to god-ward and to the worlde / that alle thei of the Reaume, grete and litle, loued hym as moche as fadir myght loue
the childe / and with all this was ²he the moost faire creature that any hert coude deuise / and the moost anyable persone to beholde / 28
that they that beheld hym, consideryng the maner & condicions werwith he was enewred / coude neuer be satisfied in beholdyng hym, so moche thei desired it / and more and more multiplied and grewe in hym witte, trouthe and curtesie / so long til he came to the 32
age of xix. yere, in such perfeccion as I haue tolde you / so moche biloued and so moche honoured / that vnnethe was there any withyn the Reaume that coude be wele content without they had seyn hym sumtyme of the yere. ¶ Now shal I leue of a while to speke of 36
hym til tyme shal be / and shal speke of the kyng of Syzile, whiche was at that tyme the next Reaume vnto the mysbileuers and enemyes of the feith / the whiche suffrid for the feith of Ihesu crist

¹ Bear in mind, remember.

moche peyne and duresse / he and alle tho of his Reaume / yn-so-
moche that they were brought to the vttermoost poynt of there
destruceion / sauf that god sent them socours / like as ye may here

4 fether yn this present Boke.

[*Illumination: a Wedding.*]

Now seith the tale / that than was there a kyng yn that
Reaume named Alfour, a valaunt knight, and gretely
loued & dred god / and kepte his commaundementes as-
moche as any prince might, and so shewed it wele; for to
sustene the feith / put he his body many ¹tymes in auenture / and
shedde his blode in diuerse batailles. ¶ This kyng was to mary /
and,—for to haue comfort and helpe ayenst the miscreauntes / that
night and day made him warre, aswele the Turke as othir / holding
the dampnable feith of Machoumete,—had counseil of his princes
and Barons to aske to wif the doughter of the kyng of Spayne, named
Sybille / And the kyng of Spayne was called Albors, and had to
wif the doughter of the kyng of Portyngale / and it was concluded
by the hole counseil of the Reaume / that in asmoche as the kyng
of fraunce had no doughter / that this was the moost myghty place
for the kyng of Sizile to be alied with / to haue helpe and comfort
for to sustene his warres. ¶ Now then were notable messangers
sent forth / and thei labored so that, by the kyng of Spayne, his
doughter was agreed & yeuened to the kyng of Syzile; wherof all his
Reaume was right ioifull, and trusted by tho seide kyng of Spayne
to be gretely socoured and holpen. ¶ Now was this lady deliuered
to the Ambassatours, whiche brought hir in-to the Reaume of Sizile,
wher-as she was receyued with fulle grette honour / the kyng
married hir with right grette ioie / and withyn litle while she was
with Childe / wherof the Reaume was gretly reioised / abiding the
grace of god til it came to the tyme of .ix. monethes ende / that she
was deliuered / and had a doughter whiche was cristened and named
Iolante, whiche was in hir daies the fairest lady of the world / best
condicioned and the best biloued; & not without cause / for in hir
were all the noble vertues that might or ought to be comprised in
so high a pryncesse / and to reherce ferthir .I. passe ouir / for I haue
neithir witte nor tonge that suffiseth therto / ffor in hir tyme she
passed in beaute and vertu all that part of the worlde / for all-
though the kyng hir ffadir were so good a prince & so valiaunt a
knyght / yit was the Reaume more susteyned and aided by a hundird
part for hir sake than for his, for the pite that euery body had of
the destruceion of such one as she was / And whan she came to

King Alfour
of Sicily

(In order to
get help
against the
heathen)

asks for
Princess Sy-
bille of Spain
(daughter of
K. Albors),

and weds her.

She has a
lovely girl,
Iolante,

the most
beautiful in
that part of
the world.

4 *King Alfour afterwards seeks help, and gets it for Iolante's sake.*

K. Alhors
will not wed
Iolante to a
Turk,

and is then so
warred against
[¹ leaf 10]

that he has
to ask help
from all
Christian
kings.

French and
other knights
also beg for
aid for Sicily,

and the mat-
ter is talkt
about at every
Court.

the age of .xiiij. yere / hir renone was so grete that it spredde
thorough the worlde. And yif the kynge hir ffadir wold haue yeuen
hir to the grete Turke for his eldest sone, he might haue had peas
for hym and aH his Reaume; but he wold in no wise be agreable 4
therto, for he was so verry parfit goddys knyght, that he had leuer
a diede / And thus eueri day increasid his warres / and his losse
grewe more and more; but vigorously, and ¹as a valiaunt knyght,
he diffendid his Reaume so long, til his tresour was nygh dispendid / 8
and his Reaume at the poynt of perdicion, his noble men amen-
yssht be the warres, in-so-moche that he was fayn to sende to alle
cristen kynges, to asserteyne hem what eas he was yn / requirynge
hem in the name of oure loide Ihesu criste / that, forto mayntene his 12
holy feith / they wold socoure hym & helpe hym. ¶ Now trewe it
was that many notable knightes, that had no warres in the cristen
Reaumes, disported them thorough diuerse Reaumes / wherof many
passid by the Reaume of Sizile / and whan thei vnderstode the 16
warres that were there / some of them contynned stille there / and
some retourned in-to their contrees / to abile them self for the warres
whiche were dispuruaide there / wherof there were diuerse knyghtes
of ffrance / aswele as of othir contrees / that were come out of the 20
Reaume of Sizile / & euerich exorted gretly their kynge or prince,
vndir whos obeisaunce thei were, to entreprynse the viage, & shewed
them the grete pite that was of the Reaume, & of that faire & good
lady the kynges doughter / of whom eueri man seide more wele than 24
othir / and for the pite & loue that many had of hir / thei abode ful
long in the kynges seruice at their owne charge, for he was not of
power to sowde them / the Reaume was so gretely empouerysht /
thus for hir loue had he the seruice of many a noble knyght. 28
THies tidynges were opende & knowen thorough aH cristendome
to alle kynges and prynces / yn so moche / that there was
daily grete speche therof yn euery Court, Seyng that the reaume of
Sizile was nygh lost without any socours, whiche was to grete a 32
pite that so valiaunt a prince / and so noble a Reaume, & so grete,
so faire & so good a lady, shold so be destroyed by the myscreauntes,
which was to grete a shame to aH cristen Reaumes, sceng the litle
seruice they did to god, wherthorough they dred that god wold 36
vttirly be displeid / All thies thinges were often deuised in eueri
Court / but for aH that / was noon that adressed hem, neither to go
nor to sende any socours. ¶ I ye haue herde here-to-fore the maner
& condicions of Philip the sone of the kynge of ffrance / that was 40

the yong man of the worlde that moost loued & dred god. This
viage of Sizile herd he often spoken of, and many tymes wolde he
speke to his fadir, and meue him as ferre as he durst, to sende som
4 socours to this poure kyng of Sizile / and besought hym to be ware
of goddes displeasir, ¹remembryng the grete wele / god had yeuen
hym / the Reaume, & the grete possession that he helde / the tran-
quillite and peas that was in his Reaume / and he to do no thyng
8 in the seruice of hym that had yeuen him all that / and though
there were noon othir thinge but pite / that aught to meue eueri
prince to the socours of so honorable a kynge and so faire a lady.
Thus many tymes & ofte the right noble sone of the kynge of
12 fraunce amonested his fadir, & so long þat þe kynge was con-
streyned to answer him, seyng thiese wordes / “my sone, .I.
knowe wele / that in this that ye exorte me to do socours to the
kyng of Sizile, cometh of an high and a noble corage, wherof I am
16 right glad & wele content / but y must remembre agein the charge
of this Reaume, the payne and trauaile that .I. haue had, and haue,
to kepe & mayntene it in good peas / for many grete prynces &
lordes holde of me / that somtyme by enuy and presumption
20 wold rebelle and reise werre / wherby the Reaume shold gretly
be empeired / but by grete iustise that y haue alwey kepte, & euer
shal to my power. wherfore it neuer yit bifelle so, ne neuer shaft,
yif god be pleasid. And be sure I haue remembred this matier ful
24 ofte, and fayn wold do suche seruice as might be to god agreable /
but I wote not how, for yif .I. shold sende any of my blode / the
remenaunt that be of estate wold haue enuy ther-ate / and othir
kynges and princes that wold go vndir me wold not go vndir them /
28 & thus the seruice that y shol[d] do to god might litil profit or
nought / And yif y shold go in myn oune persone / the Reaume that
god hath yeue me to kepe shold be without a gouernour / for ye be
but yonge yet / and thus at my comyng ageyn / yif euer it pleased
32 god I shold retourne, I might lightly fynde my Reaume empeired
and divided in such maner that it might be grete damage to vs
bothe, & to the comon wele / wherof we sholde come to late to
repentaunce. And yif y sholde sende you forth / take hede hou
36 other kynges and princes wold be content to go vndir you & in
your company / but rathir might growe enuy / wherof might falle to
you such mysauenture / that y had leuer god sende me the dethe /
ye knowe wele that in you is all my trust / and the only comfort of
40 this Reaume, and for this y wol that ye haue no lenger hope nor

Prince Philip
urges his
father, K.
Charles,
to help the
poor king of
Sicily.
[1 lf. 10, bk.]

But K.
Charles
makes ex-
cuses:

it would in-
jure France,

stir up enuy
among his
nobles,

risk the
Prince's life;

6 *King Charles will not help the King of Sicily. No one else does.*

[¹ leaf 11]

and if he was
kild, France
would be
more desolate
than Sicily.

The King of
Spain does
not help his
son-in-law;

nor does the
King of Eng-
land

or the King
of Scotland,

or the Em-
peror,

or any Ger-
man prince.

desire to go, nor entreprynse this viage / for and I knewe any man
withyn my Reaume, were he neuer so gret, that wold yene you any
counseH or ¹comfort theryn, he sholde dye for it, as he that wele
had deserved it, for he shold take out of this Reaume the grace 4
that god hath yenen vs / that is, to haue an heire male aftir my
daies, whiche is ynough to the pleasir of aH the Reaume / By whos
losse this Reaume sholde be more desolate / then that of Sizile; not
by the ennemyes of the feithe, but be enuy & warre of grete 8
princes marchers vnto this Reaume, whiche thinge may lightly by-
falle for lakke of Iustice and good gouernaunce. But y trust yn
god that, of his grace, aftir my daies ye shaH guyde this Reaume as
wele as y haue don, & better / if it please hym to yene you lif, 12
whiche is the thyng in the worlde that y moost desire / therfore,
yif ye haue had any desire a-fore this to take on you that viage,
lete it passe out of your mynde / for my hert can neuer be agreable
therto / ye se also othir cristen princes, in especiaH the kynge of 16
Spayne, whos doughter the kynge of Sizile hath married, in trust to
haue helpe & comfort of hym / yit y can not vndirstonde that he is
any thyng comforted by hym. Beholde o that othir side, The
kyng of Ingland hath a sone, right wele condicioned as men say / 20
and of age to entreprynse suche auentures / & he hath .ij. faire
doughters, wherby he is comforted that the Reaume shaH not out
of the lyne / & he knoweth thies tidynges aswele as y do / yit can
y here no worde that he any thyng peruaieH to the socours of the 24
kynge of Sizile / Beholde / ferther, the kynge of Scottes, that hath
.iiij. sones, wherof / one is in the age of Armes, wele norissed &
condicioned, as y vndirstonde / & wele may ye wite that he hath
thies tidynges aswele as othir / and he doth nothyng ther-to, and 28
yet is he the kynge that hath leste excuse, sith he hath .iiij. sones,
as it is saide / and yif he wold sende forth one of them / and sende
vnto the kynge of Inglande and to me / y wote wele that for to do
seruice vnto god / ther is noon of vs two but wolde aide therto 32
vnto oure power. Se ferther, also the Emperour, that sholde be
the verry trewe defence of the Church, & sustenaunce / and the
right arme that aught to be defender / and y can here no thyng
that he doth to the socours, helpe or comfort of the kyng of Sizile. 36
Then I, that am ferre from the marches, & of noon acquey[n]taunce
nor alliaunce, shold be the first premeuer or exorter to enterprynse
the viage, it accordeth not. Beholde thorough all almayne, where as
so many grete princes be, whiche of theym presenteth hem forward / 40

- whan I fynde any that ¹this Viage wol take vpon theym, & they
sende to me, seurely y shal do seruice to god to my power; but tyl
that tyme I wol not entremete me ther-with." ¶ This yonge
4 Philippe, vnderstandyng the wordes of his ffadir, considering
that they were resonable, dredyng his displeasir, answerd hym
litol, seyng al sobrelly / "My lord, y know weff youre causes be
good & resonable / but and eueri Prynce be of that opinion / the
8 socours ys like to come to late to the good kynge of Sizile. Where
nedith to be sought a gretter prynce or a better gouernour than he
is / yif it pleased your grace to sende him of youre folkys. and
yif ye thinke ther sholde growe any enuy to sende them in the
12 conduyt of a grete lorde / put hem then in the gouernaunce of
knyghtes, suche as be notable, & preued wise and worthy; and
yeue them in charge to do what the kynge wil commaunde them /
and thus shal thei be sure of a good Capteyne / And than shal
16 there be no cristen prynce but that may and aught to make of you
his mirroure & example to do as ye haue dōn, to þe wele of all
cristendome, wherof the honour shold be doubled in you, yu-
asmoche as ye were the first meuer & begynner therof."
- 20 **T**He kynge, considering the wordes of his sone, thought hem
trewe & right honorable / al-though he had no wille therto /
yit answerd hym thus: "my sone, youre seyng is good and
laudable, & I wol remembre it / and take auyse vpon your exorta-
24 cion." The right noble sone of the kynge was wise, and knewe
anoon / that this was but a meane to be delyuerd of hym, & that
he had no wille to entende to this matter; & thus moornyng, pensif
and right soroufult, he departed fro hym / & went to his chambre,
28 where-as were many noble folkes; and he withdrewe hym in-to
an Inner chambre with suche as pleasid hym / and made one rede
holy stories and lyues of Seyntes, seruantes to the cristen feith /
wher-by he sawe the paynes and trauailes that the holy Apostells
32 and Martirs had sofred to gete the perdurable glorie. Sone aftir he
went ayen in-to his Chambre, where-as he founde many yonge
lordes, sonys to the grete princes and grete lordes of the Reaume /
that had be brought vp of childhode with hym, whiche caused
36 bitwene him and them a verry naturel loue; and they exhorted hym
to speke to the kynge for this Viage of Sizile, whiche they knewe
for trouthe that ouir alle thyng he desired; & gladly eueri man
meueth his maister of suche matiers as moost may please hym /
40 Also eche of ²theym was of the age to bere Armes / and ouir all

[1f. 11, bk.]
Till they
move, he,
K. Charles,
will do no-
thing.

Prince Phillip
answers his
father's ob-
jections,

and urges
him to help
K. Alfour.

K. Charles
puts his son
off:

says he'll
think about
it.

Prince Phillip
goes, griev-
ing,

to his room,

where his
young friends
urge the
Sicilian enter-
prise on him.

Prince
Philip says
little,

but in bed

reflects on the
vanity of
earthly glory.

He desires to
be employed in
God's service,

and to work,
like the
Saints, alone.

[1 lf. 12, bk.]
He resolves
to give up
his heirship
to the Crown,

thyng desired to be at that viage / and often saide to their maister /
 "yif ye myghte haue this viage, ye shold haue al the sute of the
 world / for eueri man wold be ioifuH to put hym vndir you. Ector
 of Troie nor Alisaundre had neuer the renome that ye shold haue 4
 aftir your dethe" / This yong philippe, heryng dayly thies wordes,
 knowyng the kynges pleasir contrary, answerd lesse than he was
 wont to do, wherof they that spake to hym of þe matier were
 abashed, & thought in hem self that he was not so hote ther-yn as 8
 he had ben bifore / but for trouthe he was more ardaunt in his
 mynde than euir he was. Thus euerichon departid, for it was tyme
 to go to slepe. This yong prince beyng in his bedde, contynuelly
 thinkyng on the wordes that he had hadde with his ffadir / aftir 12
 came him to remembraunce the stories he hadde herd redde a litle
 bifore his going to bedde / callyng to mynde also / the paynes that
 be in this world / hou myghti a kyng someuer he be, here hath he
 no surete in noon erthly thyng / but only of the kyngdom of 16
 heuen, that neuer hath fyne / thus he debated in him self, seyng
 thies wordes / "A, verray god! y may do the no seruice / I haue
 the wille, but I haue not the power / I remembre the paynes /
 the seyntes of whom I rede to day endured to come to thy Reaume. 20
 Alas! y had neuer payn for the / but aH wele and glorie / hou may
 y than acheue that crowne without ende / I am of thy grace
 abidyng on that is erthly / whiche right sone y may lese / for
 dethe shal make the departyng; & than shaH I haue no more 24
 possessioun nor part yn erthe than the porest in this Reaume;
 wele cured were I, yif y might make a chaunge of that crowne that
 is morteH, for that whiche ys ymmorteH. So y pray the, very god,
 þat of thy grace thou wilt helpe me, though y may not now / that 28
 here-aftir this Reaume and I may be employed in thy seruice."
 After, he torned hym in his bedde, and said in this wise: "what
 seruice may y do / y haue no power but of myn only body, that
 neuer sawe no thyng, ne wote not what it is of Armes / ner neuer 32
 sawe company assembled. y am yong & but a childe; what seruyce
 may .I. than do to god?" / than seide he ageyn, "A, good lord /
 tho that y redde of to-day, that sought the Reaume of heuen / ne
 did it not in grete company, but only with their owne propre 36
 bodies. It were they that sought the very parfit glorie, and god
 was suffised with the desertes of their owne bodies / wherfore alle
 thynges ¹considered, y shaH put forth my body / and renounce all
 the successioun þat in this world may befall me, and for his sake 40

- promyse with good hert to go vnto the seruice of the kyng of
Sizile / and neuer to departe til the warres be ended / or ellis y^{and fight for}
shaH dye yn the defence of his reaume" / and thus vtterly con-^{Sicily.}
cludid Phelip to departe, & to abandoune the Reaume and aH his
frendes / thynkyng yn hym self / hou to conduyte this matier
that no lyving creature shold haue knowlage therof / ffor wele
wist he that there was noman in alle the Reaume, and he knewe it /
that durst concele it fro the kyng; for he was sure / and they did
othirwise / they shold die; and therefore determyned he yn alle
poyntes to entreprise this viage without discoueryng of his entent
to any lyving creature / considering wele that he had not ben
accostomed to be alone / and that it shold be to hym right straunge /
neuirtheles, for the loue of oure lord, he determyned to suffre &
bere paciently all paynes and troubles that he wold sende hym.
In this determynacion & purpose contynued Phelip the space of a
Moneth and more / thinkyng on that besinesse / and did so that he
p^{er}muade hym of money y-nough to fynde hym .v. or .vj. yere /^{He collects}
trustyng withyn that terme to fynde some good auenture / So it^{money,}
befel that on a Monday at night, the mone shone faire and clere,
and he departid out of Paris; and this was the xxijth day of ffeyrer /^{leaves Paris}
And his age was than xxv. yere / and at his departyng, he verrily^{on Monday,}
promysed in his mynde neuer to be knowen what he was, til the^{Feb. 22, when}
warres were ffynysshed / and bettir for to couer hym self / he^{he is 25,}
chaunged his name / & concludid to calle hym self "le despurueu" /^{and changes}
and passed so forth / & thought wele that whan his goyng was^{his name to}
knowen, that ouir all the marches men sholde seke hym, and in^{'Le Despur-}
especiaH vpone the marches of Sizile, for this that many folkes^{ueu.'}
had knowen his desire thiderward; & therefore he avised hym
not to go that way, but rather drewe hym to the Reaume of
Spayne; for he thought / yn-asmoche as the kyng of Sizile had
maryed þe kyng of Spaynes doughtir, there he sholde here more
certeyn tidynges þan in any othir Reaume / So rode he forth the
streight way towarde Spayne / yn so grete haste that he rode more
in one day / than any of the best ryders the kyng his ffadir had /
did in two / and rode so forth, aH-wey vnknowen, so long tyme til
he came to Spayne / so sore chaunged & amegred that vnnethe any
man myght him knowe / for he had not the lif / he had ben
accostomed to / where-thorough, yif god of his grace had not ¹the
better comforted & holpen him / he had neuer departed out of
Spayne alyue / alweis, what payne and trauaile so euer he had, he

and reaches
Toledo,
where K. Al-
bors is.

He lodges
with a bur-
gess,

and calls
himself 'Le
Despurueu.'

He falls very
ill,

and is in bed
for 6 months.

The Tuesday
morning after
Prince Phillip
leaves Paris,

toke it in pacience, for the loue of god. So fortun'd hym to come
to a Cite was named Towlette / where-as the kyng was / And
for-asmoche as he thought there were folkes a-boute the kyng of
alle nacions, as wele of ffraunce as of othir / and perauenture suche 4
as might lyghtly knowe hym / it thought hym good to fynde some
secrete loggyng where-as he shold not be often seyn / and so, by
the meane of a gentilman that he mette by the way / he was loggid
in the hous of a noble Burgeis, one of the moost riche of the 8
Towne / whiche had weddid the Aunt of that same gentilman / at
whos request they loggid hym right wele, and made hym right good
chere / which felle wele for le Despurueu; for thei were good and
notable folkes, & had a sone & a doughter of right grete and 12
notable recommendacion, faire persones of good condicions, & wele
and honorably norissed / & withyn litle while that the Despurueu
had ben there, the loued hym as their owne sone / & the sone &
the doughter loued hym as their brother. And to the sone of the 16
hous taught he such thynges of honour, that folkes meruailed to se
hym so wele ensured / And the doughter taught he to syng / to
harpe, & to play at the chesse, and all such goodly th[y]nges as
bilonge to a gentilwoman of honour. ¶ Now felle it so / that 20
while he was in this reste aftir his grete trauaile, whiche he was
not accustomed to / bifelle hym a grete sikenesse, that alle tho that
sawe him iuged in hym no thyng but dethe / and durid in hym
more than half a yere / so that he might neuer rise of his bedde, 24
whereby he was so moche empeired / that, & he had ben in the
presence of his ffadir / he coude not know hym / and moche more
greued hym his sekenesse / for it taried hym fro the seruice of god /
than for any payne that he endured / but our lord, in whos 28
kepyng he had put hym, whiche wold not refuse his seruice / made
hym to haue that sikeness / for othir wise might he neuer accom-
plissh his desire vnknown / there was so grete serche for hym yu
eneri cristen Reaume / for so grete sorowe was neuer seyn in no 32
contre as was for his departyng, thoroughout alle ffraunce. [Illum. 13, bk.]

THe tuysday in the mornynge, aftir the departyng of the
kynges sone, came lordes, knyghtes and squyers, as they
were accustomed to be at the risynge of their maister, & 36
founde not yit opyn þe chamber dore; for on the nyght
afore had he made alle the folkes to avoide, as wele his chambrelayn
as othir, seyng that he wold be that nyght alone / whereby they
supposed that he had som lady or Ientilwoman there / that he wolde 40

not haue knowen. Thus they alle retourned ageyn in the mornynge
to his Chambre dore, and there awated right longe, & durst make
no noyse, for displeasir, till it was the houre of noone / meruailynge
4 grettly that he was not stiryng, for he was not accustomed to be in
his bedde at that tyme. So concluded they that the Chambrelayn
shold knocke at the dore / whiche he did all ferefully / but noon
answerd hym, wherof they meruailed gretly / and bode ther so
8 long / that it passed two of the klokke / then worde came to the
kyng therof, whiche meruailed gretly, and forthwith went in-to the
grete chambre of his sones / and founde there many lordes, knyghtes
and Squyers, that awaited on hym / of whom he axed " what may
12 this be " / and they tolde hym the trouth / wherof he was gretly
abashed, for neuer before had he founde his sone of suche demean-
yng. So he went to the dore, and knocked so loude as tough he
sholde haue brokyn vp ¹the dore / but no body answerd hym / so does King Charles.
[1 leaf 14]
16 whereof he toke grete displeasir, and made the dore to be broken
vp / and fonde the Chambre al redy, and the bedde made / and no
body theryn; wherof the kyng was sore ameruailed / & made to
seeche hym ouir all / but noon coude here of hym; than sent he to
20 the stabells, & fond that the best smaſt hors that he had was goon / but the best
ing is out of
the stable.
And wele knewe he that his sone was not departed in this maner
to come sone ageyn / wherfore he toke suche sorowe that he felle in
24 a sowne / and at last, whan he was releued ageyn / he made the
moost pitous regrettes that any man might make / " Alas," quoth
he, " my dere sone / what haue I forfete vnto you? / ye haue put me
to dethe without desert / for y haue loued you more than my self /
28 ye were my ioie, my recomfort, and myn esperauce / Alas / aſh this
haue ye taken fro me / þat am your ffadir, & by this meane shal
abregge my lif / I was he þat more gladly wolde haue died to
haue lengthid youre lif, than to haue lyued by youre dethe; my
32 trust was, that god had geue you vnto me for my grete ioie / but y
se wele ye are come in-to this world for to abregge my daies / wold
god y had agreed to youre request / touchinge the viage of Sizile / K. Charles
regrets that
he refused to
let Philip go
to Sicily.
36 purnaide / that y thinke ye shal neuer perfourme half way,
seyng your softe & tendre norisshyng / Alas, my frendes! helpe to
comfort a discomfortid / that calleth hym self at this day the
moost wrecchid kyng- that leuyth. Alas, my wiff! whan ye shal
40 knowe thies tidyngis, .I. haue grete drede hou ye shal bere the

grete paynes that youre hert shaH suffre / Now y requyre you,
my frendes, enquire ouir aH, yif any lyuyng creature be gon
with hym / for than shold my soroufuH hert be in the lesse
dispeire" /

The Queen
of France
grieues for
the loss of
her son.

YE may thinke that whan the tidinges came to the Quene, she
had as moche sorowe / as the hert of any modre sholde haue
that had lost suche a sone / for there was no lyuyng body
that might recomfort hir / Hir sorow & hir compleint was more 8
than y can deuise you. The kinge, and she, that gladly and by
naturah reson shold comforte echie one othir / they might vnnethes
opyn their mowthes, but as folkes ded & transitory. In like wise
was the sorow so grete of alle suche as were there / for they entendid 12

[1 lf. 14, bk.] neither the kyng, neither ¹the Quene, but rente their here, &
made vnnesurable sorow, as folkes vtterly dispeired / The tidinges
spred ouir aH the Cite of Parys: there might ye here brayng &
cryyng in al þe cite of aH maner of folkes, grete & smale / there is 16
no man that can recorde the sorow that the Cite made / for they
might no more make, though thei had lost on o day alle the frendes
thei had / In like wise felle it thorough aH the Reaume of ffrance /
for ther was neuer noon erthly man more biloued than was this 20
yonge Phelip, the kynges sone / not only in the Reaume of
ffrance, but in alle othir Reaumes that marched ther-to / whiche,
whan thei herd the losse of this childe, thei made meruailous sorow /
And wite for trouthe, that in the Reaume of ffrance was lost at 24

The King is
never after
glad.

that houre aH ioie, whiche dured as longe as his sorowfuH ffadir
lyued / for neuer aftir sawe he the thinge in the worlde that he
moost loued / that was, his right dere sone, whiche was grete cause
of shortnyng of his lif / ffor aftir his sones departyng, coude he 28
neuer here tidynges of hym / for no serche he coude make. ¶ Now

While Prince
Phillip is sick
in Toledo,
his host's
children,
Florentine
and John,
tell him how
he is lost
from France.

seith the tale / that while Phelip lay thus seke in his bed at Tow-
lette / ffaire florentyne, the daughter of his hoste, & hir brothir
Iohn, oftentymes wolde visite hym, and telle him the tidynges of 32
the Reaume of ffrance, how the kynges sone was lost / the renome
that was of hym / the sorow that was for his loue. but, fynally, he
neuer made semblaunt / that it touched him in any thyng. ¶ So
long contynued this terme, that it was passed half a yere sith he 36
departed out of ffrance, in somoch that the speche was alle lefte /
and put yn forgetyng, of the losse of the kynges sone / at whiche
tyme he was in recoueryng, by the helpe of his good hoste and
hostesse and their childe / and by *that* tyme was he al-most oute 40

He recovers.

of the drede of knowlage, by length of tyme and his grete sikenes. ¶ Now aft this tyme contynued the warres of Sizile; for the grete Turke and his brother fferabras, kynge of Peerce, contynuelly

The Great Turk and K. Ferabras of Persia subdue half Sicily.

4 enforced them to conquere the Reaume, whiche was by that tyme more than half conquered / whereby the kynge of Sizile was constrained to sende to alle cristen princes for socours, takyng god to witnesse that, and that Reaume were tourned to the mysbeleue / it was for lak of pite & helpe of theym, for without socours it was not yn his power to kepe it lenger / than such a day as he apointed by his writyng. ¶ Thus sent he notable knyghtes, bothe to the Pope

[leaf 15]

and to alle other Reaumes / among whiche he sent vnto the kynge of Spayne one of the moost notable knyghtes of his Reaume / whiche was named fferant / and was his Senesshaft. and he had a

K. Alfoursends Ferant to ask help from K. Al-bors of Spain.

Brother, right a valiaunt man / whiche had in gouernaunce part of the frontiers ayenst the ennemyes of the feith / and right honourably

16 demeaned hym there. ¶ Now fferant departed out of Sizile yn-to Spayn, and spede so wele his iourneis that he came to Towlette, where-as he founde the kynge, whiche reseeyued hym with right grete honour, & loggid there as the Despurueu was, that by than

20 was wele recouerl. & whan he knewe the cause of fferantes comyng / it reioised hym more than aft the goold in Spayne coude haue done / trustyng to become his seruant / and to go with hym in-to Sizile / than felle he in acqueytaunce with his folkes / whiche had so grete

24 loue vnto hym, for the grete weles that they sawe in hym / that they brought hym in acqueyntance with their maister, whiche was right glad of his company. ffor so wele demeaned hym, le Despurueu, to fferant / and alle his men / that he was gretly desired of them alle to go

Prince Philip gets to know Ferant,

28 in-to Sizile with them / But our alle othir, fferant desired hym moost / wherof le Despurueu was as glad as any man might be / for it was the thyng yn the erthe that he moost desired. Thus is the Despurueu be-lefte with fferant / thinkyng verrily to vse part of his youth yn

32 the warres for the loue of god. ¶ Now seith the tale, that fferant bode at the Cite of Towlette til that he sawe wele his abidyng there might lital profit his maister / for he sped in substaunce nothing that he came for / wherfore he toke his leue of the kynge, & returned in-

36 to Sizile / and le Despurueu, his newe seruaunt, with hym / for whos departyng / his hoste & his hostesse toke asmoche sorow as, and he had be their sone / and cursed the houre that the knyght of Sizile came in-

and leaves Toledo with him, as his servant.

to that contre / thus departed fferant the Senesshaft, right sorowfull

40 of that he hath no better spedde, & emploiede his iourney / til that

he approached the Reaume of Sizile, auisung alwey his newe ser-
 uaunt / consideryng withyn hym self / his persone, his beaute / his
 maner, his humbles / wherof he was moche ameruailed / for he
 wende not that yn the body of any one man might haue ben so
 many vertues to-gedir / So thought he wele / that if he had as
 moche worthynesse and prowes as he had persone & maner, he shold
 be the moost perfit thinge that euer god made sith tyme of his
 [1 lf. 15, bk.] passioñ. ¶ And yit aH¹ were it that he were not valiaunt yn 8
 armes, yit were he worthy to serue any kynge, for it is litle seen
 that alle vertues be complete in one man. Thus rode they forth so
 longe til he entred in-to the Reaume of Sizile / and logged hym the
 first night in a Towne called Taprey, of the whiche, Olyuer, brother 12
 to fferant, was Captayne / and for the moost part was abidyng ther /
 fferabrace, brother to the Soudan, was yn an other Towne but .iiij.
 leeges thens / that was named / ffoundey, whiche he had conquered
 vpon the kyng of Sizile / fferant was trauailed & wery, & purposed 16
 to rest hym ther with his brother a seuenight or a fourtnight / And
 sone after he was come / the tidynges were knowen to fferabrace,
 kyng of Perce / whiche seide to his folkes, "It were il don of vs yif
 we went not to se fferant that is retourned fro Spayn / and he is with 20
 his brother, oure neighbore / & so, if we might take any prisoner, we
 shold knowe of alle their tidynges / fferant is a valiant knyght, y
 doute not / if he reste longe vnsought of vs, with-oute he haue the
 gretter businesse he woH come bfore vs / wherfore it shalbe good for 24
 vs to go thidir to-morow. To this counseile, accorde alle they that
 were with hym / for the ceason was faire & plesaunt / It was than
 yn the entre of Aprile / thus as they concluded, they did / for fuH 28
 erly in the morne they departed from that place with a ij. M. 28
 feighters, holdyng their wey streight to the place where as fferant
 and his brother were / and whan thei were nygh there / they
 departed in two : yn the tain part / was kynge fferabrace / and the
 tothir was a nigh kynnesman of his / when the warte espied the 32
 fforeriders, he blewe a Trompet / and fferaunt rose vp / & went to
 the yate, where as he founde his brother aH redi, to whom he seide /
 "Brothir, this course is made for me / and for to take som of oure
 folkes to kneve of my tidynges ; but, y pray you, lete no man go 36
 oute / for y knowe for trouthe that he hath moche people / and ye
 haue not in this Towne passed v. or vj. hundred feightyngmen /
 and therefore lete them be, for the entreprise of enemyes is euer
 vnprofitable" / Olyuer, that was a fuH good man of warre, seide to 40

Ferant and
 Prince Philip
 reach Taprey
 in Sicily.

K. Ferabras,
 the Sultan's
 brother, is
 at Fondé, 4
 leagues off,

and marches,
 with 2000
 men, to Ta-
 prey.

Ferant will
 not attack
 them.

his brother / "ye sey trouthe," and made to shutte the yates fast /
 wherof many were right sory / and our alle othir Le Despurueu, Prince Phillip
is sorry,
 that hath herde the wordes a foresaide, and was redy armed, and
 4 on horsbak, desiryng to haue seyn som dedes of Armes / wherof he
 had neuer no thinge seyn / ¹whan he sawe this conclusion / he set [1 leaf 16]
 vp his hors / and went vp to the walles and sawe the fforeriders, but goes up
on the walls,
 whiche was but right a fewe people / wherof he had grete meruaile
 8 that so litle compaignie durst come so nere where so many a good
 man was / Aftir this, that so long tyme currouers had be bfore
 the place, & sawe that ther wold no man come oute / they sente
 the kynge worde therof, desiryng to knowe his pleasir / The kynge,
 12 heryng thies tidinges, concluded to come bfore the place to shewe
 his puissaunce / than brake he oute with bothe thembusshementes,
 and came yn ordenaunce bfore the place / Le Despurueu, seeng and sees the
full force of
Turks and
Persians.
 this compaignie, thought wele that he was with a notable & a wise
 16 maister / & that he had grete fore-sight yn suche case / ffor he sawe
 where thembusshmentes departed yn dyuers compaignies / and
 enviroinid the towne as they wolde haue bisieged it / fferant and
 his brother, seeng the Turques thus dissecuerd in diuerse com-
 20 paignies, purposed to gyue them a scarmyssh at one of the yates /
 where-as the leest compaignie was, thinkynge wele that the moost
 parte of the kynges people wolde drawe thiderward / and whan it
 were so, he wold issue out and set vpon the kynge, there his baner
 24 was / thus as y haue deuised was doñ. they began to scarmyssh / With them
the Christians
skirmish,
and K. Fern-
bras is left
with few
troops.
 and the crie aroos, & eueri man drewe thiderward, so that the kynge
 was but with fewe accompaigned. And than fferant & his Brothir
 made open the yate / and came alle on a frusshe out of the Towne
 28 so egrely and with suche force that, wold the kynge or not / he
 was fayne to lese his place & to withdrawe hym shamefully / and He is driven
back,
 had at the same encountre of his men slayn moo then vj.^{xx}, at
 whiche iourney auanced hym self le Despurueu a fore alle othir / and
 32 did so wele in armes that alle that euer sy hym & knewe him of
 his parte, were gretly encoraged therby / and blessed them for the
 meruailes that thei sy him do yn his armes ; and his enemyes were
 as moche abasshed & confused by his prowessse. the mooste parte of
 36 the folkes knewe hym not / but only they that he was come in
 compaignie with, out of the Reaume of Spayne / many went to
 fferant to telle him the grete meruailes that his seruaunt Le Des-
 purueu did / wherof he was ioifull, and praied alle theym that tolde
 40 thies tidynges / that they wold drawe toward hym / and do him to Ferant's
joy.

[¹ ll. 16, bk.]
The Turks
rally,

and the Chris-
tian trumpets
sound a re-
treat.

But Prince
Philip fights
on.

Ferant, in
helping him,
is taken
prisoner by
the Turks.

Prince Philip
rescues Fe-
rant,

captures K.
Ferabras,

and they
all re-enter
Tabrey.

helpe & socours, yf nede were. The crie & the noise aroos on alle parties so moche / that the Turques withdrew¹ theym alle to the kyng to socoure hym / and whan they were assembled to-gedre / thei were a right grete puissaunce / as yn regarde of theym of the 4 Towne / the tuo Brethre sawe welle it was tyme to withdrawe / and made a trompet to blowe retreat on alle parties, & made their people to withdrawe. But le Despurueu, that neuer had be yn cure with suche thinges, made no semblaunt to withdrawe hym / but 8 defendid hym & assailed his enemyes alwey stille so long, that fferant hym self was constreyned to fecche hym / and put hym forth a-fore hym / and bade hym aH angrely / to withdrawe hym / and fferant had taried so longe for the seching of his seruauant, that 12 his enemyes presed so fast / that almoost they had enterd the barers, and had closed yn fferant aH a-boute. Le Despurueu, seyng this / knowing wele that this auenture was falle to his maister by hym, had leuer haue diede than faile his maister, & retourned his 16 hors, and smote in-to the thikkest of the prees with suche ire and force / that he that mette with his full stroke ouirthrowe / & did so wele that he came to theym that had taken his maister / and smote yn amonges them / and by his grete worthynesse deliuerd the place 20 saue of the kyng to whom men had deliuerd his maister / whiche in no wise wold lete him go / yit at the last he might not chese / for Olyuer, that sawe his brother taken, & the grete armes that le Despurueu did, assembled his folkes ageyn, and retourned aH at ones 24 in suche wise & with suche vigour, that, wolde the Turques or not / thei lost grounde / Le Despurueu, seyng that the cristen men wan place and approched nere / and that he rescowed his maister / knewe wele the kyng that was nere, and toke his hors by the bridle / & 28 gate his hede vnder his arme / and by might drewe the kyng forth, whedir he wolde or no / and delyuerd hym to his maister / that forthwith sent hym yn-to the Towne / and commaunded that eueri man sholde withdrawe / And toke his seruauant by the bridle, & 32 ledde hym forth with hym. The kynges folkes, seyng the losse of their maister, & the grete vigour of the cristen men / were so abused that they made but litle prese / And thus retourned the cristen in-to the Towne aH at their ease. It is to thinke,² that Le Despurueu was 36 not the first that entird / for it annoied hym moche that it dured no lenger / for it semed hym the moost grete pleasir that euir he was at yn aH hys ³lif / hou-be-it / that by his harnais and hys body it

² bear in mind.

[³ leaf 17]

- shewed wele that he had not ben idle / nor also right amyably
 delte *with*, for in many places the blode ranne out of such hurtes as
 he had / Anon as they were entird in to the Towne, the brigge was
 4 drawn / and folkes ordeigned on the walles to kepe theym / Le
 Despurueu, when he had conveid his maister to his loggyng / he went
 to his Inne / and vnarmed him / and leide hym downe on a bedde. Prince Philip
unarms and
goes to bed.
 ¶ The Turques seeng their kynge prisoner, & many of their folkes
 8 ded and taken / it semed them that bifore that Towne thei might
 litle profit / But many thought it was better to abide til they knewe
 the pleasir of the Soudan / to whom they sent the trouthe of thies
 tidynges, & thought it was nede for them to take good kepe aboute The Turke
wait for the
Sultan's
order before
raising the
siege.
 12 the Towne / that the kynge were not had a-way ; for yf the Soudan
 wolde hastily come & set a sege ther / he might lyghtly haue ageyn
 his brother / thus as they concluded, they did / and loggid them bi-
 fore the Towne / abidyng an answere of þe Soudan. ¶ Now
 16 retourne we to fferant þat was at his logging vnarmed / right ioifult
 of the good auenture that was bifallen hym / and than went he to
 the kynge / that be than was also vnarmed / & made as good chere
 as he coude after the auenture that was fallen, for wele trusted he
 20 sone to be socoured / Ouir all the Towne was ther no knyght,
 Squyer, lady, nor Ientilwoman, riche ne pore / but that spake of le All the
townsfolk
praise Prince
Phillip's
 Despurueu ; of his grete noblesse, of his persone, and of his maner ;
 & all gaue hym the preise & loos aboute all othir / seyng that it
 24 came hym of grete corage / whan he sawe his maister taken / that
 he allone so mightily a-mong so moche people rescowed his maister /
 and ar any man came at hym / so valiauntly toke the kynge
 prisoner / there was neuer noon sawe yn one man more worthy-
 28 nesse shewed in a day / his enemyes fled his strokes, & they on his
 part had ioie and recomfort / and the leest hardy became valiaunt /
 & were encoraged by his prowess. ¶ Suche wordes and semblable
 were spoken of hym thourgh all the Towne, of grete / meane & litil.
 32 ¶ Now is fferant with his prisoner, and welcomed hym, and did Ferant treats
Ferabras
well.
 hym all the honour and pleasir that any man coude do his prisoner,
 comfortyng hym, seyng that by hym / and by his good meanes, a
 pees sholde be made bitwene his brother and the kynge of Sizile, &
 36 he trusted that for that cause god had ordeyned hym to haue hym
 prisoner / for *without* grace of god ne might it haue ben / for this
 he knewe for trouthe / that he that had taken hym / had neuer
 sene swerde drawn bifore in bataile / and yit was ther no leuyng
 40 man / that moost had vsed the warres coude more haue done / wher-
 THREE KINGS' SONS. C

[17. 17, bk.]

Ferant asks
Ferabras to
make peace
between the
Sultan and
the King of
Sicily.

Ferabras
asks to see
Prince
Philip.

[¹ leaf 18]
Ferant begs
him to wait
till next day.

by all men might knowe / that it was verily goddes werke.
wherefore he praide the kyng, his prisoner, that he wolde put hym
in deuoir to make the pees betwene his brothir and the kyng of
Sizile his maister / and in so doyng / he shold wyne grete loos
and renome, & gete hym self out of the daunger he was yn now.
fferabrace, kyng of Perce, seeng hym prisoner / heryng the wordes
of his maister, answerd hym in this maner / "yif it pleasid Mahun
that y myght do any thyng touchyng the pees of this tuo kynges, y
wolde right gladly emploie me, though y were not prisoner / for y
was neuer of contrary wille / But the debate is betwene them
for sustenance of the feith that he holdeth ayenst oure bileue /
whiche, by the feith y owe to that god that y honoure, y had leuer dy
than be a treter in any mater contrary to oure bileue / yif youre
kyng were content to holde oure lawe, the peas were sone made /
but othirwise y se no remedy" / "Be my feith," seid fferant, "than
shaall we neuer haue pees" / than lefte they of thies wordes, and the
kyng required fferant that he might se hym that had taken him /
for ouer all thing he desired it / fferant knewe wele that he was
right wery of the payne & trauail that he had pat day, wherefore
he had no wille to sende for hym / hou be it / that he had more
desire to se hym than kyng fferabrace had / for he loued hym as
moche as any man myght loue his lady / and grete cause had he /
for that day had he rescowed hym from the dethe / for, and he had
be brought to the Soudan, all the golde on erthe ne might haue
bought his lif / and so Answerd he to kyng fferabrace, "sir, y
suppose that he be at reste, but to-morowe, and god be pleased, y
shalt sende hym vnto you" / the kyng answerd, "at your pleasir
be it / but y shalt neuer be at hertes ease til y se hym / for I desire
as moche to se him, as seke man doth his hele" / fferant sawe the
kynges desire moche; and to accomplishe it, wist not what to do /
for he dred that his seruauant were sore hurt, wherefore he durst not
sende for hym / so wist not he what to answer, but praide the
kyng to haue pacience til on the morowe, whiche answerd hym /
"so most y / for my wille may not be accomplisht. I am a prisoner;
but y sey you for trouthe, and y were at my liberte, y wolde se
hym or y slepte, what trauail so euer y toke on me / wherfor, and
he be any thyng hurt, and ye wold do me that grace to brynge me
ther he is, ye shold do me grete comfort and pleasir" / fferant,
heryng thies wordes, toke conclusion in hym self / that he wold go
se Le Despurueu his seruauant, and seide to the kyng, that yif his

- seruaunt might come to hym, he wolde brynge hym to hym that
night / and yif he might not go / he wolde biseche hym of his
goodnesse to come se hym / thus departed he from the kyng,
4 whiche praide him right specially that he might se him assone as it
coude be / for he coude not bileue that it were any mortal man / but
som spirituel thinge sent from heuen to punyssh hym for his
trespaces; for he thought "it was not possible to be in one man that
8 y haue seyn hym do this day" / fferant began to laugh, and seide /
"sir, whan ye se hym ye shall not fynde him dispuruaide of moche
more" / thus departed fferant fro the kynge / and came to the place
where Le Despurueu was loggid / and was leide on a bedde full euell
12 ordeyned for / and litle remembred of any man. and so he entird
in-to the chambre of le Despurueu, whiche, whan he sawe hym, was
aH abasshid / & wolde haue risen ayenst hym / but he might
vnnethe remewe. whan his maister sawe him in that plite, he
16 ranne to hym, and caught hym in his armes, wepyng for pite that
he had of hym, and in his mynde leide grete blame vnto him self /
that he had noon erste visited hym / seyng, "alas, my frende, ye
are porely awaited on after the high dedes that ye haue don to day.
20 I pray you foryeue it me / y knowe wele that hym that gaue me
ioie & honour, y haue put yn foryetyng, take the honour to me,
whiche cometh of your bounte, that y haue so symply remembred
it; but pardon me, my frende / for the remenaunt of my lif y shall
24 better remembre you / ye aught nomore to thanke me than of
your dethe for lakke of helpe, yef ye had hadde any mortall wounde,
and aH othir wise haue ye deserued vnto me / seing the grete payne
& trauaile that ye haue endured this day to saue my lif & myn
28 honour; and y, as a wreech full of vnkyndenes, haue put you aH in
foryeting, whiche reschewed me this day from dethe / and .I. not
comforte you with one onely visitacion." Le Despurueu, heryng
his maisters wordes, was so ashamed that he coude vnnethe loke vp /
32 doing him all the honour that he might after the hurtis pat he
had on him, reputyng him-self full vnworthy to haue any suche
honour. "seing / my lorde, I neuer deserued such honour as ye put
me to / god yeue me grace to do you seruice that may please you / &
36 therwith aH wold haue drawen him bak as aH shamefast / but his
maister wold not suffre hym / & fourthwith sende for the best
Suricoun withyn the Towne / and men to serche his woundes a-fore
hym; & though he were right sore hurt / ther was no peril of dethe
40 yn hym / so that he were wele looked to / then was he ordeigned for

Ferant goes
to Prince
Philip's
lodging,

and is
ashamed to
find it so
poor.

He apologizes
for his neg-
lect of Phillip,

[1 lf. 18, bk.]

who saved
his life.

He sends for
the best
Surgeon to
attend
Phillip.

Ferant has
Prince
Philip's
room done
up,

and lets K.
Ferabras
come to see
him.

Ferabras
praises
Prince Philip
very highly.

[¹ leaf 19]

Philip asks
him to make
peace be-
tween his
brother, the
Sultan, and
the King of
Sicily.

in the best maner. Than sent kyng fferabrace to fferant, prayng him that he might se his maister. fferant made the chambre right wele to be apointed, and made torches to be brought yn / and sent priuelie to the kyng, that yif it pleasid him he might come / whiche 4 came with right a ioifuH herte / and for the grete desire pat he had to se Le Despurueu, he felt noon of alt the peyne & trauail that he had endured that day. So came he in to the Chambre, and ffounde fferant talkyng with le Despurueu, whiche was leide on a couche / 8 and whan fferant espied the kyng, he kneled downe & toke hym by the hande, and shewed hym hym that hadde taken hym / whiche knewe nothinge of his comyng / but assone as he perceyued hym / he knelid vp as wele as he myght / the kyng toke hym yn his armes, 12 & made hym to arise, seyng / "my right swete frende, yif ye had be somtyme to-day as humble vnto me / and lowly as ye be now / y had not ben here / Although your maner were ffeers & vigours yn the felde / it is here humble & amyable, wherby your dedes be the 16 more to be preised. and now y se yowe / Notwithstondyng the grete peyne & trauail that ye haue endured to-day, me thinketh your persone resembleth your werkes, for yn worthynesse non may com- 20 pare with you. In like wise, in persone, beaute & maner, y knowe noon comparable / & it pleased god, y wolde y might contynue the remenaunt of my lif / youre felawe / with that / that we were parte- 24 ners in all that y haue or euer shall haue, so that y might observe & kepe myn owne feith." / Le Despurueu, ¹that seeth hym self thus 24 honoured and preised at the first dede of Armes that euer he was at in his lif, was so abasshid that he wist not what to Answer, saue only that he seid / "sir, ye do your honoure to praise so moche, so pore a Ientilman as y am / the recommendacion is more youre than 28 myn / for to theym that sey wele, the honoure aught to tourne. I wote not what to sey you / for forsothe it was the first auenture that euer y was at / But it semed me, yif alle youre folkes had resembled you, my lord / My maister that here is had not hadde 32 you now in his handes / albe it pat he put grete peyne ther-to / And yif it were thus, that god by his grace wold consent / that by youre goode meane the pees might be made bitwene your brother & the kyng of Sizile / ynne good houre for youre self were ye prisoner / 36 for your grete renome sholde multiplie & double / and y bileue verily that my lorde, my maister that here is, wold in that case haue of you noo fynaunce, but holde for your raunsouñ your peyne and labour right wele employed. and as for me, y wolde right 40

humbly biseche you theryn / if so simple a persone might make a request in so hy a matier" / The kynge answerd hym, "my right dere frende and felawe, if it were in my power & at my wilt, y
4 certifie you, þat to youre request y wolde emploie me / albe-it þat .I. bileue neuer shall y haue that power / seeng the matier as it is /" with suche wordes they droue forth the tyme tilt fferant thought it tyme for the kynge to departe / seyng vnto hym, "sir, ye be
8 trauailed / & so is your maister that toke you / if it pleased you, it were tyme to go to reste, and for hym also" / After thies wordes departed the kynge from le Despurueu. And fferant conueide him to his loggyng / and came ageyn to le Despurueu / and puruaide
12 that no thing failed him / & folkes to waite aboute him / charging theym to gif hym as grete attendaunce as they wold to hym self / than toke he leue of hym, & went to his loggyng / where as he made a letter vnto the kynge of Sizile, in such fourme, aftir the comen-
16 dacion & maner of writyng : "Sir, I am aryued in this your Towne / at my retourne out of the Reaume of Spayne / the xxviiij day of marche / and for this, that I and my horses & all my folkes were so trauailed and wery, y most of necessite tary with my brother a
20 while ; and the ¹meane ceason of myn abidyng, Kynge fferabrace, [1 lf. 19, bk.] brother and lieftenaunt to the Soudan, was at ffounde, but iiij. or v. litle myle hens, & knewe of my comyng / and for that he desired, as y haue vndirstande, to haue some of my folkes to enquere the
24 tidynges of Spayne, & howe y haue spedde / concludid to ren before this youre Towne, & had in his company .ij. thousand feighters and moo, & made .ij. embussumentes, and sent his currours a-fore this touñ / but for that my brother and I supposed somewhat their
28 entent / we wolde no body to issu out / & whan the kynge vndirstode by his folkes that ther wolde noon of vs come out / he came before the Towne him-self with all his puissaunce, & parted theym in diuerse parties, environyng the Towne rounde aboute / then
32 ordeyned we a right grete scarmyssh to be made ouer the yate that was ferthist fro the kynge / by the whiche crye & scarmyssh the moost part of the kynges folkes drew to that side / & than we, seeng the kyng but with litle company, issued out on hym / at the
36 whiche tyme were many grete armes done on bothe parties / and the kynge taken, and brought by strength to this your Towne /
where-as he is stille / and whan his folkes sawgh the takyng of
their lorde, they made, and make yet, a maner of abidyng before this
40 towne / & trust, as we ymagyne, to haue hasty remedie by the

On a hint from Ferant, K. Ferabras leaves Prince Phillip.

Ferant writes to the King of Sicily,

and tells him

how they took K. Ferabras prisoner.

Ferant
praises
Prince Philip
to the King
of Sicily ;

[¹ leaf 20]

and so does
his mes-
senger,

who reports
how Philip
rescued
Ferant, and
captured
Ferabras.

Soudan. wherefore y dar not departe hens / nor sende vnto you the
kynge / whos taking was by miracle doon / by a very yong man of
my house / that is suche in alle thynges as the berer herof shal
enforme you / & I beleue when ye se hym, ye shaH like him bettir 4
than y write vnto you / if it please god, it shaH not be the last
seruice that he shal do you / and y beseche oure lorde, of his grace
to graunte you thacomplissment of youre high and noble desires :
Writen at your Towne of Talpoir, the .viij. day of Aprile." Thus 8
thies letters writen, he called a messangere right wise and discrete /
and delyuered them vnto hym / & bitwene mydnyght and the poynt
of the day he made him to departe / and so passed he forth, as god
wold, aH peasebly / so that he came sauflly vnto the kyng of Sizile / 12
whom he founde right sorowfull. But whan he had seyne his
lettres, he was right ioiful, and made them to be radde in the pre-
sence of alle the noble men of his Court / whiche deuoutly to-gedirs
thankid & preised god / trustyng, that by this takyng, some frute 16
shold folowe. The kyng ¹commaundeth the Messangere alle
openly to telle his credence / whiche seide vnto hym, "sir, we
repute yn your towne to be a miracle / and I shal telle you the
reason / In the Towne of Towlete was ther a yong man, a-boute 20
the age of .xx. yere / that lay seke of half a yere / which was newly
recoured at the comyng of my lord, my maister / This yong man is
so wele visaged / so faire made of body & of alle fetures, that it
semeth verily that nature haue made him with hir propre handes / 24
and with this excessif beaute / he hath so moche of humblesse and
bounte, that no man can bileue it / without seyng / & of maner he
passeth alle othir. This saide gentilman is of good nacion, but not
riche / So it fortuneth my lord, my maister, to be logged ther as he 28
had leyne so longe seke ; and so wele demeaned him this yong man
to hym & to his folkes / that eueri man him preised / & so moche
that my lorde withhelde him for his seruauant / & brought hym with
hym, often deuysyng with his othir folkes the maner of this man / 32
and hym thought / that he might not faile to be valiaunt ; & so hath
he founde hym ; ffor at the besynesse he sawe him do so wondir-
fully yn armes, that it is to grete a meruaile / for my lorde was
taken / and he alone reskewed hym by his grete strength and 36
hardynes, and toke the kyng prisoner, & brought hym in-to your
Towne / and euery man that sawe the hardynes of this yong man,
toke suche corage & boldnes, that they abandoned theym to the
vtterest / & so they lefte mo than .V. C. of the kynges men ded in the 40

place / & as the sonne passith the sterres, so passid this yong man
 othir folkes. he is borne of the Reaume of ffraunce / and for con-
 clusion / alle that se hym loue hym / honoure him / and cherisshe
 4 hym / and he that aught moost to hate hym, the kyng his
 prisoner, swerith by his goddes *pat* he wolde haue hym in his
 company the remenaunt of his lif, to departe euenly with hym alle
 the lande & goode he hath / This yong man, yif any man reherce
 8 his honour or hardies / is as basshfuH as a mayden / he woH not
 haue the kyng reputed as his prisoner, but for his maisters
 prisoner" / the kyng was of thies tidynges fult ioisfuH, & thought
 wele that god had sent this yong man to do hym yit a grettir aide /
 12 anon he made to ryng the bellis in alle the ch[i]rches of the Towne /
 and he and the Quene & his doughter, and alle othir in the Towne,
 went on processioyn / thankynge god of the good auenture that he
 had gyuen them. Thus bode he ¹stilt, herkenyng what the Turke
 16 wolde do vpon the takyng of his brother.

Ferant's
messenger
continues his
praise of
Prince
Philip.

[¹ lf. 20, bk.]

YE may wele wite that yn the Chambres of the ladies was
 spred a-non the tidynges that fferauntes messangere had
 brought / and rehersed alle the vertues of this yong Squyer,
 20 Le Despurueu, wele asmoche or more than the messangere had
 seide ; for ye knowe wele the reporters put to somwhat more alway /
 The Quene, her daughter, and alle the ladies & gentilwomen, heryng
 recorded the right parfite bounte, beaute, and worthynesse of this
 24 yong man, desired meruailously to se hym. So ther was no day
 but they had hym in speche, in so moche that some of the gentil-
 men of the court had grete displeasir therof, thynkyng that by hym
 aH their loos & grace sholde be the lesse / Thus bigan the enuye
 28 bitwene the yong men of the Court & le Despurueu, that aftir was
 goode & profitable for the kyng / for that they wolde be as worthy
 in armes as he, their corage & hardies doubled, whiche did so moch
 good to the Reaume of Sizile / that it was ayen reuived in honour /
 32 as ye shaH here-aftir here. ¶ ye haue wele herd here-bifore, what
 messangers the kyng of Sizile had sent in to alle reaumes / & that
 the messangers had in charge to telle prynees hou it was *with* him /
 for the disarge of hym, *with*out he were shortly socoured / taking
 36 god to his recorde, & aH the worlde / that the charge was theires /
 and not his / Thus thies messangers, goyng to many kynges &
 prynees / in especiaH to the kyng off ffraunce / of Englund & of
 Scotlond, The kyng of ffraunce hauyng remembraunce of his
 40 sone, that but litle a-fore he had lost, thynkyng yn hym self, that

The Queen of
Sicily, the
Princess
Iolante, and
all the Court
Ladies are
eager to see
Philip.

The other
Courtiers
envy him ;

but they fight
hard to equal
him.

24 *The Kings of France and England will help the King of Sicily.*

The King of
France says

he'll send
40,000 men
to help the
King of
Sicily;

[1 leaf 21]

and the King
of England
promises aid
too,

If the King of
Scotland 'll
let one of his
3 Sons head
the Expedi-
tion.

god had soffered it for that he hadde done noon helpe nor comfort
to this cause / wherfore he had taken fro hym the thinge in the
worlde that he best loued, then renewed a grete part of his sorowe,
and thought / that of hym selue he was so olde & feble that he might 4
not go. But, & any of the kynges of England or of Scottes wolde
go, or any of their sones / he wolde aide theym with xlth thousand men
wagid for a yere / The messenger of Sizile heryng the answere of the
kyng of ffraunce, was right glad and ioifull therof, hauyng grete pite 8
& compassion of the kynges sorowe, which semed ¹more ded than
a-lyue. Thus departed he from hym, & went to the Reaume of
Englond / where he fonde the kyng / to whom he shewed his
credence / and told him also the Answere of the kyng of ffraunce, 12
whiche he had founde in full grete annoy & trouble, seyng that
it semed hym / if his sone had be still ther / with right good wille
he wold a sent hym on that viage. The kyng of England, whan
he had herd the messenger that spake full wele & wisely, he 16
thought moche on that werke / and had many counsells at dyuerse
tymes / And so, aftir sad deliberacion, he answerd the messangere
yn this maner / “ I knowe wele / that among other kynges & cristen
prynces y am gretely bounden to god / for he hath gyuen me more 20
of weles than y haue or can deserue, wherfore y wolde ful gladly
do hym seruice, though y may not so moche as y am biholden to
do. I haue but one only sone for to holde my Reaume aftir my deth,
which y may yn no wise departe with; how be it / if ye can fynde 24
any kyng or prynce that wold entreprise this viage / y shall helpe
hym forth with a good puissance / & if my brother & neighbore,
the kyng of Scottes, that hath .iiij. sones, wold entreprise it / y shall
put to yit more gretir helpe and payne than y wold do yn the 28
company of som othir / and me semyth he might lightlyer do it than
the kyng of ffraunce or I, for he hath .iiij. sones; and if it pleased
him to sende forth one of theym, whiche shold only be gouernour
and hede of this werke, it sholde be to him grete glorie & honour 32
with the seruice that he shold do to god.” The knyght of Sizile,
heryng the answere of the kyng of England / wist not what to
answere, the kynges seiying was so resonable / but so departid fro
hym / and toke the streight wey toward Scotlond. And withyn 36
short while he came there the kyng was / & presented his lettres,
& tolde his credence / and aft that he hadde founde with the kynges
of ffraunce and of Englond. The kyng of Scottes remembred him
self gretly in this werke / and thought that euerich of the kynges 40

- aforesaid had delyuerd to hym the Chapelet / knowyng wele he had moo sones to sende forth than any of that othir / and for that the matier appered to hym full grete / he answerd no-thing lightly
4 ther-to, but full long tyme thought ther-vpon / and for that cause sent to assemble alle the estates of his Reaume / and at ¹their comyng [1 lf. 21, bk.]
to hym, opened & declared to hem, as wele by lettre as by mouthe, The King of Scotland
asH that the knyght of Sizile had brought hym. & for that he sawe assembles his
8 this mater peisaunt, & gretely touchid hym, he wold make ther-to Nobles and
noon answeere withoute their aduise & agrement, and gaue them Commons,
leue to take aduise ther-on ij. or iij daies, and commaunded theym at that tyme to be ther present ageyn, eueri man to sey his aduise.
12 Thus departed they, & counseiled to-gedre fro day to day / and were wele instructe, & remembred what thei shold answeere. the day came that they were assigned to be a-fore the kyng, where-as they ordeyned a full honourable knight to make the Answer for alle
16 the iij. estates in generall, which knight, aftir the honoures & reuerences don to the kyng as to him bi-longed, for alle thestates of his lond seide / "Oure souerayn lord / we haue, my lordes that here be,
prynces, prelates, & Barons / knightes / Squyers, & Burgeis of thes who aduise
20 Reaume, thought on that it pleased your grace to open vnto us toching him
the aduertisment that ye had of the kyng of Sizile, the whiche to help the
aduertisment touchid gretely to youre holy cristen feith / the sauacion King of
of your soule / and to the honour of you & of your Reaume. & for Sicily,
24 to geue you counsell we haue had deliberacion to take aduise to-gedre, suche as y shaH declare vnto you / offryng to you toward
this conclusion / that we shaH put in auenture oure bodies & part and they will
of oure goodes. we knowe wele that ye be created kyng / ye and back him
28 alle othir, for the defence of the comon wele / & specially for to kepe with their
& mayntene the feith / and to this cause be ye ioyned & sacred / and bodies and
if ye faile to the defence of the feithe whiche is the thinge that goods,
moost serueth to the comon wele, than go ye oute of the termes
32 wherfore ye were create / we knowe also the sorowe of the kyng of ffrance, that hath no children but one pat he' loste of late tyme /
the dispureaunce also of the kyng of Englund, that hath but one sone / and ye haue iij., wherfore ye be lesse excusable than any of
36 them, with the grete aide that they offre you, which semyth vs, seeng
your grete worthynesse / the children that ye haue / & the offris that be made vnto you, by reason with your honour ye may take
noon excuse, but ye may conclude to sende one of my lordes your
40 sones, which that pleasith you / and for to knowe oure aduise, we

his eldest
son taking
command.

[¹ leaf 22]

The King of
Scotland

thinks of the
difficulties of
this Sicilian
Expedition

all night,

and next day

answers his
Estates;

[² If. 22, bk.]

conclude alle / that the eldest shold be moost propre, for he is more
redy to harneys than any of that othir, & more sad ¹to conduyte a
grete entrepryse / and if it please you this to do, my lordes alle that
here be / haue made you suche offres as y haue seide here-bifore / 4
vndir whos correccioun y was ordeyned & commaunded to declare
this vnto you / and nowe alf lieth in your good grace, for, as it
pleasith you to commaunde, we are alle redy to accomplishe.”
¶ The kyng of Scottes, heryng the wordes of this forsaide knight 8
yn the byhalue of the .iiij. estates of his land, thought full moche on
this matier, for it touchid him right nere, and therefore differred he
it / til on the morowe, ij. aftir none / and commaundid at that tyme /
eueri man to be ther ayen / thus eueri man departed / and the 12
kyng, that neur coude put this matier out of his mynde, thynkyng
yn hym self that it was in maner leide vnto hym by the kyng of
ffraunce & of Englund / & sith auised hym by the .iiij. estates of his
land / & so restid it but at him self; wherfore hym thought, as a 16
man constreyned by honour, he might not refuse in this viage to
sende forth his sone. And then ayen aftir thies consideracions he
wolde argue yn hym self to the contrary / thinkyng, “this arnee
may not be put on me without grete charge / I am the leest of the .iiij. 20
kynges, & the despenses ar like to tourne on me / it behoueth me
to take grete hede that I haue a notable aide of eche of them / it
behoueth alway that my sone be acompaynyed with people of this
land, & that the grettist company come with hym, whiche may not 24
be without grete enpouerisshment vnto this land, wherof y am nowe
full sorowfull / And if y shold sende forth myn eldest sone / whiche
is the thinge yn this worlde that y best loue / yif he diede, y shold
be so sorowfull / that y sholde neur aftir haue ioie nor rest in my 28
herte / wherfore y wote not wele what y may sey / But y pray the,
my creatore, to counseil me aftir thy pleasir, & to myn honoure /”
thus all nyght stroue he & argued in his mynde / & wist not what
wey he might holde / be aroos in the mornyng, & herd his massis 32
with grete deuocioun, recommendyng him and his werkes to god /
aftir his massis and dyner dōn / as fully affermed of that he wolde
do / wente in-to the chambre wher alle thestates were redy at his
comyn. so entred he yn with visage and maner full trist and sorow- 36
full / & at his comyng, and silence commaundid, he spake to his
men and suggettes / right hertly thankyng theym of the good wille
he founde them of towardes hym, ²and preisyng god with good
herte, that thestates of his Reaume were of suche & so high prud- 40

ence, dredying & louyng god, as he sawe by experience ; for euerichon
of hem yn his parte offred seruice to oure lorde / wherof he was as
ioifult as he might be. And in like wise he sawe, & verely knewe,
4 the grete & naturall loue that alle they of his blode, with the
remenaunt of the .iiij. for-saide estates bare vnto hym / yn-as-moche
as eche of theym wold, & desired grete honoure of hym & of the
Reaume, prayng theym also not to to be abasshed nor ameruailed,
8 though that his manere were perauenture more sobre than it hath
ben be-fore tyme, “for this matier goth full nere me / for many
reasons / one is / that some folkes not wele seiying, perauenture wold
sey, ‘ beholde this presumptuous kyng, the leest of the .iiij., that is to
12 wite, of ffrance & Englund / that of him selue wold enterprise this
viage / that the tothir haue full grete doute to take on hande, whiche
haue so many noble lordes of their lynage / wherof they might full
lightly fynde a suffisaunt hede’ / thus the thyng may turne more to
16 charge than to preise. I considre, on that othir side / þat by the
two forsaid kynges is ny all the charge leide on me / echon of them
with helpe me / and ye my Cousyns, frendes, & suggettes, counseile
me to entreprise this viage / & to sende forth my eldest sone,
20 whiche y loue moost / wherto ye offre youre bodies and goodes to
myne aide in this hy matier. and for asmoche, if y had not corage
to do it, seeng your grete offers / I might be reputed with alle
straungers, & amonge your selue, a man but of litle feith & of
24 slakke corage / and therefore, what-som-euer befall vnto me therof /
either sorowe or pouert, y ought more to put my trust yn you than
any othir ; wherfore y am determyned & thoroughly concludid, bliss-
yng me with the syne of the crosse, recommaundyng my dede to
28 my blissid creatore / to make my sone Dauid to entreprise this
viage / for y haue no sone but hym / but that were to yonge ther-to,
& y pray god yeue hym grace to do him suche seruice as may be to
his pleasir / and y pray you alle my cousyns, frendes and suggettes,
32 to strecch forth your good willis acordyng to your promyses.” Alle
the .iiij. estates, herying the Answere of the kyng, had grete ioie,
vndirstandyng his good wilt, and alle to-gedirs, & eche of them,
helde vp his hand, promysyng ¹the kyng seruice with body &
36 goodes. and thus was the matier perfytly concludid / and day taken
of the departir at feuyrer / and it was the feuyrer affir the depart-
yng of Le Despuruen. The conclusion thus taken / the messanger
of the kyng of Sizile was deliuered, to whom was shewed all then-
40 tent of the kyng of Scottes, with that the kynges of ffrance & of

he may be
blamed for
presumption
in starting
the Expe-
dition ;

but as the
Kings of
France and
England, and
his own sub-
jects, have all
promist their
help,

he will let his
eldest son
David under-
take the
enterprise.

[1 leaf 23]

The Sicilian
Messenger
reports that
the Expedi-
tion is de-
cided on.

The Sultan
hears of it,

and recalls
Ferabras's
troops.

Ferant is
orderd to
send Fera-
bras, and
Prince Philip,
to Sicily.

[1 ff. 23, bk.]

Prince Philip
grieves at
this, and

wants to
serve on the
frontier.

Englond wold do him any aide / Thus the knyght of Sizile departid
fult ioiful out of Scotland, & toke his wey by Englond & be
ffraunce, & shewed the ij. kynges all the conclusion that hath be
taken in Scotland / humbly bisechyng them this holy viage shold 4
not be letted / so hath he promys of both kynges, for no thyng they
wolde faile, but trewly performe all that thei had seid bifore. The
messangers deuoir doon as is here rehersed / he toke the way
streight to Sizile, & came vnto the kyng / sone aftir the comyng 8
of fferauntes messangere / & tolde the kyng of all his spede in the
forseide matier / ye may wele wite that the Soudan was not with-
out his espies in eueri cristen Reaume / wherthorugh he knewe of
the conclusion that was taken in Scotland assone or souner than 12
did the kyng of Sizile / and therfore sent he anone a messangere to
his brothers folkes that lay bifore fferaunt / commaundyng them to
departe thens & to retourne to their garison / for he had herd suche
tidynges that he was determyned to haue no sege laide there as yet. 16
and as for the takyng of his brothir / he wolde remedie it when he
might, but yit he coulde not / thus alle his brother folkes retourned
in-to their garison / and fferaunt in alle haste sente the kyng
worde therof / whan the kyng knewe thies tidynges, he sent 20
fferaunt worde that he shold puruey for the comyng of kyng
fferabras vnto hym, and by suche a day as he apointed him / he
wolde sende him a feliship to helpe conuey the kyng the more
surely. fferthirmore he commaunded him not to leue behinde him 24
his newe esquier / of whom he had herde so moche wele reported /
& alle the ladies & gentilwomen of the court praied the messangere
that he might not be forgotten. Thus went the messangere forth to
fferaunt, & shewed him all his message from the kyng, & from 28
the Quene & hir doughter, & from alle the ladies & gentilwomen of
the Court / And withyn litle while aftir, this came to the knowlage
of Le Despurueu, whiche desired our alle thinges to dwelle ¹in some
place of the ffronteres / to proue his body in his youthe / and to do 32
that wherfore he was departed fro the kyng his ffadir / feling him
self all hole of his hurtes / and so made a request to his maister /
if it pleasid him, that he might abide with his brothir / for he neur
entendid but to abide vpon the ffronteres / ffor / for to be a man of 36
Court now / wold he neur a departed fro the place fro whens he
came. when fferaunt vndirstode his newe esquier, that thus wolde
take his leue of hym / whom he knewe such that noon other might
compare with / yif he were sorowfull, it was no meruaile / & vnnethe 40

- might he holde manere, seying vnto hym, "A! Le Despurueu! haue
y brought you from so fer contre, so sone to forsake me? haue ye
drede / that ye shaH not fynde fightyng y-now yn this contre / or
4 elles that y be a man of so pore condicion / that y dar not holde my
fote nere the fire / truly I truste verily to be founde more often
vpon the ennemyes than they shal be that abide in this place / &
that more often, if ye be with me, ye shaH se strokes gyuen than yf
8 ye abode stille here / neuirtheles, if ye be not pleased to abide in
my seruice, telle it me at ones, & y shaH do as me thinke good."
The yong gentilman, right shamefast and sorowfuH that he sawe his
maister wroth with hym, wenyng not to haue displeased hym for
12 abidyng with his brothir, answerd hym fuH humbly / "My lord! y
neuir thought but that ther was more worthynes in you than y
durst thynke to se / but for that cause spake y not to you of myn
abidyng, but for the drede that y had that ye shold not be so often
16 at skarnysshes as your brother / for, as men sey, the kynge loues you
wele / therefore y thought that ye wolde kepe you nere aboute hym /
and ye knowe wele / it is not accostomed, ne reason, that kynges &
prynces, chefteynes of the warre, be allwey on the ffronters / and
20 for this drede y that y shold se but litle war, nor haue the lernyng
yn armes, whiche was the cause of my desire now to abide / but,
sir, and y haue displeased you / y beseche you to pardone me, for y
knowe neither kynge nor prynce levyng, as longe as ye haunte the
24 warres, for whom y wolde leue you. y haue so moche sene of
noblesse yn you / that y am assured y may lerne more in your
seruise / than y dar enterprise or may here" / fferaunt answerd hym,
"A, my frende! for lakke of warre ¹ye shaH not leue me as long as
28 y leue / for there is y-nough in this reaume for you & me, & many
moo" / thus fferaunt & his newe seruaunt be accorded. Then came
the day / that the kynge sent his folkes to fferaunt / whom they
founde alle redy in the felde / & kyng ffirabrace with him / than
32 departed he from his brother Olyuer, prayng hym to take good
hede to the place & the ffronters that he had in kepyng / So rode
he forth aH a day withoute any interrupcion. ¶ It is to thynke,
ffirabrace folkes dred them of the goyng of their maister, and that
36 he shold be brought to the kyng of Sizile / wherfore they did their
diligence to vndirstonde his departyng / & did so muche that they
knewe it for certayn that he was departed right wele accompanied /
than toke they counseill & aduise to-gedir; & it semyd theym that
40 puissaunce was not so bygge, but that they shold take a shame to

Ferant re-
proaches
Prince Philip
for wishing
to leave him.

He'll get him
his fill of
fighting.

Prince Philip
apologizes,

and agrees to
stop with
Ferant.

[1 leaf 24]

Ferabras's
men plan

to rescue
him.

They form
an ambush,
and set spies
in trees.

Ferant warns
his men that
they may be
attacked, and
advises them
to arm.

[1 lf. 24, bk.]

Some of them
come on the
enemy's
trucks.

The Turks at-
tack Ferant's
host.

suffre their maister thus to be gon. wherfore they vttrily concluded
to put them yn deuoir to the rescue of hym / the mone shone faire
& clere that night that they departed fro the garison / & they did
so moche by the next mornying / that they passed fferaunt, and 4
embusshed theym yn a wode that was ny the same wey that
fferaunt sholde passe / they kepte theym cloos, & made their
wacchis to go vp in-to trees to se aferre whiche wey fferaunt sholde
come; and thei were in nombre xvj.C feightyng men / And with 8
fferaunt a vj.C or mo of the best men that longed to the kynge of
Sizile, whiche were that nyght wele loggid with fferaunt & kynge
ffirabrace, & made right mery & gretly aused le Despurueu, whiche
thought them of visage, persone, & maner, moche more to be preised 12
than the messangere had seide, & moche desired they to se hym yn
armes / & so did they souner than they wende. they aused him in
alle his wordes and his demeanyng, & founde him so assured & wise /
that they were ameruailed / this nyght passid forth, & the morn 16
came / and fferaunt, that was an ynly wise knyght of warre, saide
to his folkes, "my lordes, if the kynge oure soueray[n] lorde were
prisoner, as he is that we lede / and ye wold do by my counseil, &
we had the puissaunce that oure enemyes haue, ther is no place y 20
wolde souner put me in deuoir to reskewe hym, than here by / and
yistirday we rode armed & helmed / and as this day y se no man
charge hym with harneys; but y sey for me, y shall arme me as y did
yisterday." some helde ¹opinion he seide wele, & did by his counseil, 24
& some toke litle hede therto / but le Despurueu was all-vey armed /
for he had no valet to bere his harneys. fferaunt departed fro his
loggyng, the moost part of his folkes armed / & som not, whiche dere
a-bought it / thus rode they forth til they came ny to the wey there 28
as the embusshementes were leide / many of the yong folkes of the
Court whiche had Grehoundes, trauerst the felde to fynde the hare
or some othir disporte, so longe, that they came on the trakkys of
there enemyes / and anoon tolde fferaunt therof / but he was so ny 32
that he coude set no remedy to take none othir wey / but taried
stilt, & put kynge ffirabrace in sure garde / thus put he yn ordyn-
aunce all that he might. on the tothir part / the wacchis of the
enmys that were yn the trees tolde to the embusshementes what 36
they sawe / & sodeynly they shewed them-selue, & brake their
embusshmentes, and alle at ones ranne on fferaunt & his ffelisship.
and aftir the puissaunce that fferaunt had, he encountrid theym
right mightly / but fynally they might not wele haue endured, ne 40

had be the grete worthynesse & vertu of Le Despurueu, that did
 so wondrefully in Armes at that day, that eueri man meruailed /
 he ouirthrowe men & hors; noon myght withh-stonde his strokes /
 4 so wele was he knowen of his ennemyes that eueri man fledde hym /
 and as he was feightyng thus amonge his enemyes, they that were
 behynde hym, by strength of Armes / they reskewed kyng fira-
 brace, and delyuerd hym to xx^{ti} men / that in all haste toke the
 8 wey toward his place / and fortunéd that Le Despurueu, that so
 valiauntly fought, herde the crye & noise / howe men seide kyng
 firabrace was reskewed: "se where he goth!" he tourned sodeynly
 on that part, & sawe hym ferre on his way / then toke he his hors
 12 with the spores, & folowed the kyng yn all that he might, without
 espiying of any of fferauntes folkes, saue of .vj. that folowed hym.
 Le Despurueu hastid him in suche wise, that in a valey he ouirtoke
 the kyng, & smote yn amonges them, & did so, that he slewe v. or
 16 vj. of them or the tothir vj. coude ouirtake him, whiche, at their
 comyng, with the helpe of Le Despurueu, discomfited the Remenaunt.
 Le Despurueu toke ageyn his prisoner / & be that tyme bothe their
 horses were so wery & fortrauailed that they might no ferther / but
 20 bothe were fayne to alight a fote, to lete their horses take brethe /
 In this meane tyme fferaunt espied that his prisoner was gon / &
 1 that he had lost his newe seruauant / if he were sorowfull, it is no
 question, not only for losse of the kyng / but specially for his
 24 seruauant, by whom god had sent him so faire auentures. thus sorow-
 full, he cursed the houre that he came ther / and wisshed that day
 he had be slayne. Alle tho that were yn his company, as litle as they
 had knowen le Despurueu, yet for the dedes in armes they had sene
 28 hym don that day, thought the losse of hym was as grete a sorowe /
 as if the Reaume of Sizile had ben vtirly lost / and yn this sorow,
 as they were to-gedre biholdyng the wey where-as kyng firabrace
 wente / they sawe vj. or viij. horsis comyng / than drewe they them
 32 to-gedir, wenyng to haue hadde newe to do, & that they had ben
 of a newe feliship to a set on them / than sent they som of their
 forriders thiderward / & anone as they came ny them, they knewe
 verrily they were of their folkes. than went they to them, and
 36 knewe Le Despurueu / that brought ageyn the kyng. than seide
 they to hym, "A, right noble Squyer, flour of honour, ye be wel-
 come / for ye haue recomfited this day the moost discomfortable
 company that euer was / for by your dedis they haue recouerd such
 40 honour and surete that they ar out of all perile. Blissid be the

Prince
Philip's val-
our alone
saves Fer-
ant's men.

K. Ferabras
is rescued,

but Prince
Philip spurs
after him,

and retakes
him.

[1 leaf 25]

Ferant
mourns
Prince
Phillip's sup-
posed loss,

but he soon
turns up,
with his
Prisoner
again.

wey that ye came on hiderwarde, and the place fro whens ye came ! ”
 Than anon one of them rode ageyn in aH haste to fferaunt / and
 whan he sawe him, he seide / “ My lord, be mery, for yondre is Le
 Despurueu aH hole & sauf, that by his grete myght & hardynes hath 4
 brought ageyn kynges ffrabrace.” ye may wele thynke the ioie was
 grete thorough aH the company / whan that worde was herd / and
 eueri man presid who might be first with hym. whan fferaunt came
 to hym / he toke him in his armes & kist him / and did him suche 8
 honour that the pore yong gentilman was gretly abasshet of / than
 seide fferaunt vnto him / “ that day y firste sawe you, was the moost
 happy day that euer y had / And beholde ye nowe whethir y haue
 gabbid vnto you / haue ye failed nowe at the begynnynge, of the 12
 fyndyng of som auenture *with* me? had it nedid you now for this
 cause to haue biden *with* my brothir / yif ye so had doñ / there
 had bifallen this day the moost pitous auenture that euer was in
 Sizile / that only by *your* persone is come to good conclusion / ” 16
 eueri man seide to Le Despurueu so many goodly wordes of honour /
 that he wist not what to Answere / but as a man shame-fast, smote
 yn amonge the tothir feliship, for to eschewe such wordes as moche
 as he might; so he yeldid kynges ffrabrace his prisoner to ^{the} 20
 handes of his maister / After the auenture thus befallne, they with
 grete ioie departed alle to gedir / and toke their way in right good
 ordenaunce; and eueri man seide that fferaunt was right a wise
 knyght, for he had tolde them full wele in the morning as was 24
 sith befallen. ffro that day forth, fonde they no recountre that dis-
 tourbed theym yn their viage / & *with*-yn litle season they came
 thider as the kyng was. bifore their comyng, many were gon bifore
 to take vp their loggyng; & also som officers of armes & pur- 28
 ceuantes that had be at this iourney, wente in aH haste to the
 kyng / & tolde hym aH the maner & trouthe therof / And wite
 wele the kyng was as ioifuH as he might be / and gretely meruailed
 of the grete prowess that he herd euery day of this yong man, Le 32
 Despurueu; & moche he desired to see him, for he thought wele it
 was some tokne that god wold recouer him; for the armes that he
 herd reported of hym, semyd to hym not to be possible to noon
 erthly man / If the kyng were yn this opynyoun / so were alle the 36
 knyghtes, squyers, ladies, & gentilwomen / and the faire & good
 Iolante, the kynges doughter, that in alle hir werkes was wise,
 womanly, & vertuous: whan she herde at any tyme of the honour
 of this yong man, she toke meruailous grete pleasir ther-yn / & she 40

Prince Philip
is greeted
and kist by
Ferant's
men.

He is so
praised that
he feels
ashamed.

[1 ff. 25, bk.]

Henceforth
they march
in safety.

The King of
Sicily,

and all his
Court, and
the Princess
Iolante, long
to see Prince
Philip.

- thought verily that such honour might not be yn a man of smale
 birth / and also she wist wele that without grete nurture, & beyng
 in high places, he might not knowe the weelis and honoures that
 4 he coude / and in hir mynde she wissed that he had ben of such
 corage that he wold haue entreprised alle his armes for hir sake /
 hou-be-it she had neuir, daies of hir lif, ben amorous / not as moche
 as she enioied the company more of one than of an othir, but as
 8 honoure & maner requyred / thus euery man thorough the towne, as
 wel as in þ^e courte, spake of the worthynesse of Le Despurueu. And
 in this meane season fferaunt & his company came vnto the Towne ;
 & at the comyng, the stretes were so fult of folkes that vnnethe he
 12 might passe, for eueri man desired to se hym that had so honorably
 aquytte hym twies sith he retourned fro Spayne / also euery man
 desired to se his frendes that had 'be at this last iourmay / In like
 wise desired they to se kynge fforabrace / and the tothir prisoners /
 16 so did thei Le Despurueu, of whom they had herde so moche wele
 reported / thus the houses were alle fornyssht with folkes. And yet
 ther was an othir cause / for a grete while they had not sene no
 good auenture for the kynge of Sizile, but alle of losis & damages,
 20 wherfore this was ¹to them the grettir ioie / thus fferaunt passid [1 leaf 26]
 thorough the prees with grete payne, and came to his loggyng / where
 as kynge fforabrace alight, and alle his folkes / and yn alle hast
 aredied hym to go to the kynge his maister / and to delyuere hym
 24 his prisoner. so wente he forth vnto the kynge, that abode hym in
 the grete halle of his paleis / that was so fult of people that euery
 wyndowe and borde was charged / and so were alle the stretes of the
 Towne / so that he was a large half houre or he coude passe the
 28 prees to come yn to the halle where the kynge was / and at the
 laste he came vnto the kynge / and put the kynge his prisoner afore
 hym / whom he shewed to the kynge of Sizile / and whan he per-
 ceyned Kynge fforabrace, albe-it he was his prisoner / yit did he him
 32 such honour that he went toward hym a grete way bareheded, and
 toke hym by the hande / kynge fforabrace seeng him self prisoner,
 & at the wille of the kynge of Sizile, did hym grete reuerence, for
 at that tyme was he as his sugget / than wente they two hand yn
 36 hand vudir the clothe of estate / & than talked the two kynges to-
 gedre, and callid fferaunt vnto them / but ouir alle thing / the kynge
 of Sizile desired to se Le Despurueu, & behelde ouir alle to knowe
 him / but this yong gentilman, that of his condicioun was shamefast
 40 & humble, had drawn him in-to the prees behynde moche people /

Ferant and
 Prince Phillip
 have a grand
 reception
 from the
 townfolk.

Ferant takes
 his prisoner
 King Fera-
 bras to the
 King of
 Sicily,

who does
 him honour,

but asks
 for Prince
 Phillip.

King Ferrara
praises
Prince Philip,

who captured
him twice.

The King
of Sicily is
much struck
with Prince
Philip,

whose beauty
and prowess
are praised by
all.

the kynge that yn no wise coude espie hym, seide to fferauut,
 “ where is your newe seruant / why put ye him to no more honour /
 be that y haue herde sey / he hath deserued as moche honour as
 any *withyn* this halle, noon othir excepte / forsothe y desire gretely 4
 to se him ” / kynge fferabrace, þat herd the kynge of Sizile thus
 speke, coude him in his mynde right goode thanke / and saide, “ be
 my feith, he is worthy to haue moche honour / & wold god that y
 had suche a seruauut, that helde the lawe y holde, and y wolde 8
 take hym for my felaw, daies of my lyf / and partener yn alle that
 y am worth / & shold be as grete maister of my Reaume as my self,
 seeng that y haue sene him do / whiche is not credible / y am his
 prisoner by .ij. tymes / and notwithstanding, all the daunger that y 12
 am yn, cometh by hym / yet is he the leuyng man that y moost
 loue / and moost desire the compayny of.” The kynge of Sizile
 commaundid fferauut to calle him / and so he did / and when he
 herde him called for / he came forth fro behinde moche of the 16
 people / his visage aȝ redde for shame that so ¹many folkes called
 him / He came before the kynge, & kneld douȝn, and salewed him
 as he coude fult wele for aȝ honour was yn hym / the kynge toke
 hym by the hande / & made him to rise vp / and bihelde him right 20
 ententifly / & the more he behelde him, the more was he ameruaild
 of hym that excedid alle othir in euery thinge to be preised / then
 talked the kynge *with* him / and so did kynge fferabrace also. and
 yn alle his wordes they founde him suche, & so wele assured / that 24
 they were ameruaild. The kyng of Sizile, & alle they that sawe
 him, thought / there were moo laudable thinges yn hym than any
 might reporte / he was gretely lokid on of alle them that were
 there / and euery man priaide for him that god of his grace sholde 28
 longe contynue hym yn honour. *withyn* litle while, kynge fferabrace
 departed from the kynge of Sizile to his loggyng, to his dyner.
 The kynge of Sizile commaundid fferauut to “ brynge ageyn kynge
 fferabrace aftir dyner, & le Despurueu also. and then shaȝ they se the 32
 quene, the ladies & gentilwoman.” & thus departed they to their
 loggyng / Aȝ that day in euery place was moche speche of the beaute,
 persone & manere of Le Despurueu. But they that had sene hym in
 armes seide, that his beaute was not to compare with his worthy- 36
 nesse / and some answerde that than passed he aȝ the world. The
 kynge, aftir his grete assemble was departed, went to his dyner /
 and *with* hym dynyd the Quene and his doughter. and ye may wele
 thynke that this dyner tyme, through aȝ the halle they hadde grete 40

speche of Le Despurueu. The quene, & faire and good Iolante hir
doughtir, & alle the ladies & gentilwomen, desired so moche to se
hym, that they thought the dyner right longe, and seide amonge
4 them / "fuH eurous is fferaunt the SeneshaH, to whom god hath sent
this man / by hym is he at this day moche honoured / & the moost
renomed knyght yn this Reaume / If y were kyng, y sholde haue
Le Despurueu of myn house, for he hath noon suche" / On the
8 tothre part, fferaunt dred right sore leste the kyng wold desire his
newe seruaunt from hym, whiche was the thing that moost sholde
sorowe hym / and therfore aftir dyner / er he wente to the courte, he
toke Le Despurueu alone yn-to his chambre / and seide vnto hym,
12 "my dere frende & my childe, the kyng hath doñ you to-day grete
honour, wherof y am right glad / for he may not do you to moche,
neuirtheles y drede that by som enuy that reigneth 'ouir alle, the
kyng sholde be exorted to take you from me yn-to his hous; and
16 if ye were yn wiH now to leue me / it sholde be þ^e grettist displeasir
and sorowe that myght befall me / but y knowe wele it happeneth
alday that men leue company for a higher seruice; hou be it / seeng
that y haue sene in you / y can not Iuge þat ye wiH so do / for ther
20 is so grete bounte in you. I knewe weel þat ye haue not ben
acompayned here as bilongeth vnto you, and therefore y graunt you
fro this day forth to haue v. or vj. men waityng on you / & to take
part of my goodes as longe as it pleasith you to be with me, as my
24 owne sone sholde, if y had any / and if god send me neuir noon, y
shaH make you myn heir, yeldyng thanke to god to haue suche a
successour." Le Despurueu fult humbly thankid his maister, &
promysed hym trouthe & seruice to his power, without hauyng
28 thought or wille to seche any othir maister, as longe as he wold
serue / and that his maister shold lyue / and of this, at the request
of fferaunt, promysed him his feith / wherof he was more sure than
of any obligacion in the worlde / sone aftir departed fferaunt from
32 his loggyng toward the kyng / & had Le Despurueu with him, that
aboue alle thinges desired to se the kynges doughter, whom of beaute,
bounte, & alle good manere was renomed thorough the worlde. Wher-
fore he apoynted hym, as goodly as he coude, to go with his maister /
36 & they came euen as the kyng was arisen. and yit were alle the
ladies & gentilwomen there / the prees was not so grete as it was in
the mornyng / and therefore men might more easily se fferaunt & his
company / Le Despurueu, for his grete humbles, was noon of the
40 first, wherwith his maister was no thinge pleased / for to his power

Ferant fears
that the King
of Sicily will
take Prince
Philip from
him;

[leaf 27]

so he gives
Philip five or
six waiting-
men, and a
share of his
goods.

Prince Philip
promises
Ferant his
faith.

Ferant intro-
duces Prince
Philip to the
Queen,

[1 lf. 27, bk.]

who says he's
to amuse
himself with
her daughter
and the
Court-ladies.

Philip is
taken to the
fair Princess
Iolante,

who christens
him *Le Sur-*
nome.

he wolde fayn haue anaunced hym. The kyngg resceyued fferaunt
fult gladly / and aftir that he had salewed the kyng he toke forth Le
Despurueu by the hande / and brought hym to se the quene, seyng
vnto hir, "Madame, here is a gentilman of ffraunce that y brynge
you / if his beaute be not resonable, his worthines recompenseth,
for by hym and his dedis hath the kyng, the Soudans brother, yn
his prisoun / for to me ought not the honour to turne therof, but
to god & to this gentilman / and therefore, madame, y brynge hym to
you / that it might please your grace to haue knowlache of hym" /
The quene answerd to fferaunt / "for sothe, Seneshalt, a grete
while sawe not y so faire a presente / & y wilt be aqueynted with
hym with right goode¹ wilt / and he is right welcome to me, & y
shalt se hym & welcome him more at leiser / if it please god / and
y pray you, brynge hym or sende hym often to disporte hym with
my doughter & the yonge ladies and gentilwomen of the courte /
for it behoueth that we assay him in alle poyntes, if he be suche
amonge ladies & gentilwomen as he is amonge you men / And if
he can not wele the manere / y beleue he shall sone haue lerned / for
it is a comon seyyng / that men of warre be not good companyers
with ladies & gentilwomen" / Le Despurueu Aunswerd / "Madame, 20
y thanke your grace right humbly / and verily sheweth the same /
that of the warres y can no thyng / but that my lord, my maister,
hath taught me / for neuir yn my lyue was y yn warre but in his
company, wheryn men may lerne bothe wele and honour / for y 24
haue herde hym ymagyne & sey yn the euenyng, that hath befall
yn the morow" / fferaunt answerd & saide / "by my feith, sir, if
ye be as light to lerne your contenaunce amonges ladies & gentil-
women as ye haue ben to lerne the crafte of armes, ye shalt yn 28
shorte tyme be a bettir mayster / than they that shalt lerne you ;
for so farith it by you & me in the warres" / the quene lough, &
seide, "y beleue / from hensforth, yn like wise he shalbe bettir wel-
come than ye" / Aftir thies wordes, fferaunt made him to rise vp / 32
& brought him to faire Iolante, that Le Despurueu desired so moche
to se / he went not with a nay / but with a right good wille / and
whan he sawe the grete beaute that was yn hir, he thought that all
that euir he herde speke of hir was no-thing in comparison to that 36
he sawe yn hir / he salewed hir fult humbly, & the faire lady toke
hym by the hande & seide, "my right dere frende, ye ar right
welcome, & by that / that y se / your name is 'Le surnome' ; for ye
ar not Le Despurueu of beaute, ne of alle othir condiciouns as y here 40

sey. Wherefore me thinketh your name is gyuen you with wronge /
 and also me semeth that my lord my fadirs warres be a grete dele
 bettir puruaide sith your comyng, than bifore / I trowe that god of
 4 his grace hath sent you hider" / this yonge gentilman was so
 ashamed & so supprised with the beaute of this faire lady, that he
 wist not what to Aunswere, saue that he seide, "Madame, god
 yelde your grace / but trewly y am wers puruaide than my name
 8 can shewe / but what name that pleasith you, y am content to
 bere" / the quene & fferaunt lough wele at the wordes ¹of hir [1 leaf 28]
 doughtir / & fro that day forth was he named Le Surnome; whiche
 enery day multiplied, for the more men asaide him at alle pointes,
 12 the more they were assured of hym, & founde him puruaide of alle
 thinge / that to a noble man belonged.

Prince Philip
 is abashit at
 Iolante's
 beauty.

This meane tyme, abidyng the comyng of the kyng of Scottes
 sone / fferaunt & his felawe abode stille with the kynge, yn
 16 grete ioie, for the tidinges of socours that they abode / and
 yn this season of fferauntes abidyng, Le Despurueu, that now is
 named Surnome, by the kynges doughter / euery day wold go se
 the ladies, & in especia^l the Quene & hir doughter, on whom all
 20 his mynde restid / and ther was he right ioifully reseceyued / and
 euery day was preuyd in dauncyng / in songes that the ladies coude
 thinke were couenable for a noble man to conne; but in euery
 thinge he passed alle them that were there / The kynge, for to assaie
 24 him, made Iustis & turneis / & noman did so wele as he yn
 rennyng, pleyng at the pame; in shotyng, & castyng of the barre
 ne founde he not his maister ne his felawe / for yn euery thinge he
 passid all othir. Thus past forth the tyme / but it annoyed gretly
 28 Surnome, that ther were no warres ne dedes of armes / for the causo
 of his departyng from his fadir was only to do god seruice yn the
 warres ayenst the hethen men: thus had he litle ioie, saue only of
 the faire and good Iolante, to whom his hert was bounden for ener
 32 without departyng. ¶ Now leue we of a litle, to speke of the
 kyng of Sizile and alle his courte, & we shalle speke of the armee
 of Scottes, hou they did affir the departyng of þe messangere of
 Sizile.

He visits her
 daily,

and dances
 with her.

He jousts and
 tourneys,
 plays at
 tennis, &c.,
 and beats
 everybody,

but loses his
 heart to Io-
 lante.

THe conclusioun thus taken, as ye haue herde, with the kynge
 of Scottes, that knewe thies tidynges, sent to the kynges of
 ffraunce and of Englonde, how, vpon trust of them / & that
 they had aunswerde the knyght of Sizile / that he had concludid
 40 to sende, yn the seruice of god, to the socour of Sizile, Dauid his

The King of
 Scotland

eldest sone / albe-it they knewe full wele it was not yn his power to
 fynde ther-to a suffisaunt nombre of folkes / wherfore he praide
 eche of theym to assertyne hym what aide & socours they wold do
 to god / to the kyng of Sizile / & to his seide sone / bicause that
 vpon this he might take aulse / & shewed theym vtirly that
 without their aide he helde his conclusion noon / ¶ Notable
 knyghtes & ¹messangers went to the two kynges. ¶ Now was this
 Viage of Dauid spradde & publisshed thorough all Scotland /
 wherof Dauid & alle the yonge lordes & knyghtes of the land were
 gladder than euer they were yn their lyue / seying amonges them
 that they were moche bounden to god / that in the floure of their
 youthe had yeuen them this auenture. Dauid was a goodly yonge
 man, of like age to Surnome, wele condicioned, as to a kynges sone
 bilonged / and wele shewed it / as hereaftir ye may here / there
 was no thyng so noious vnto him as his long abidyng / and to the
 kyng his fader was no thyng so sorowfull as his sones goyng / for
 it was the day of the worlde þat he drad moost / and so he had
 cause, for it was full longe or he sawe hym ageyn / In this ceason
 of abidyng worde fro the kynges of ffrance & Englonde / he made
 alle his prouisions & ordenaunces for his sone / so wele and so honour-
 ably / that ther was neuer non suche seyn bifore in Scotland / In
 like wise alle the princes & Barons abielde them, & made to abile
 their sones, to go in this armee / whiche they desired to do sone /
 seying the conclusion taken / many auntyente knyghtes there were
 also, affermed & concluded to auenture their lyues in this Viage, &
 thought them wele eurous to make their last viage in so high a
 seruice bothe for body & soule. ¶ The messangers spedde them so
 that euery man came there his charge was / he that came to the
 kyng of ffrance, did his message right wele, & foryate no thyng
 what Aunswere he had yeuen to the knyght of Sizile / In trust
 wherof his maister was determynd to sende his sone, and ellis not /
 The kyng of ffrance, remembryng for trouthe what wordes he
 had to the knyght of Sizile, wolde yn no wise for his honour
 contrary them ; and therefore, by good deliberacion of counsell, or-
 deyned to sende his Constable with the nombre of .x. M^l men,
 certifiyng him that at such day as the kyng of Scottes had taken
 ther shold be yn his parte no faile / Thus departed the messenger
 of Scotland, that was honorably resceyued, & had grete yiftes.
 And now returne we to hym that went yn-to England / that
 semblably in substaunce declared his charge, as the tothir had done

asks England
 and France
 what help
 they'll give
 to Sicily.

[¹ ff. 28, bk.]

The Scotch
 youth are
 eager to fol-
 low Prince
 David,

and a large
 Expedition is
 prepared.

The King of
 France pro-
 mises 10,000
 men.

in ffrance. the kynge of Englonde, heryng the wordes of the
 messenger, sawe wele that, and he sente not socours as he promysed,
 vpon him sholde reste the charge, and so concluded to sende his
 4 Admyrall of Englonde / and with him the nombre of ¹vj. M. men /
 promysyng on his feith / that such day as þe kyng of Scottes had
 taken, shold not be failed by hym / thus delyuerd he the messenger,
 and honorably rewarded hym. and thus .ij. Messangers sped them
 8 so wele, yn shorte tyme they came ageyn vnto the kynge their
 maister, to whom they shewed hou they had spedde / Whan he
 herd thies tidinges, he perceyued wele ther was no lettyng for his
 eldist sone / than ordeyned he with alt diligence his apparaile, & so
 12 did euery man yn his parte / & so wele quitte them that at the day
 they had set / there was noon vnredy / and eche of the kynges
 kepte his promys. Then was it a meruailous thinge to se, & a
 faire / the .ijj. companyes to-gedir / that for the honour of the
 16 kyng of Scottes helde them only vnder the obeisaunce of his sone
 Dauid. ¶ Wele knewe Le Surnome, that the kynge his ffader sent
 som folkes to thies socours; wherfore he was in grete sorowe lest
 any of them shold knowe him, for be his wille he wolde not be
 20 knowen. ¶ Now cometh the day of assemble of the puissaunce of
 thies .ijj. kynges / and alle were at the porte Deon, yn Scotland.
 the kynge of Scottes conueied his sone thider / and aftir that euery
 mannes harneis was shipped / they toke their leue of the kynge,
 24 whiche vnnethe might speke to them, and in especiaff to his sone /
 but whan he toke his leue, felle yn a swone / so that men were fayn
 to bere hym yn-to a chambre, so araied / that he semed rather ded
 than alyue. Alle they that abode & sawe their frendes go, had
 28 suche sorowe that they coude not comfort the kynge / for they were
 alle comfortles / they that wente made litle sorowe, but only to se
 the hevynesse that their frendes toke for theym. The kynge hath
 committed his sone to the aduise of therle douglas & of the Erle
 32 Busshaunt, that were wise knyghtes, & connyng yn the warres, &
 had seide to them bfore their departyng / “my frendes and cousyns,
 y put yn your handes the thinge in the worlde y loue moost / &
 commaunde him to the kepyng of almyghti god, & sende hym forth
 36 with you” / and more might he not sey vnto theym. whan euery
 man was to shippe / and the Sailes & ankers wounde vp, they had
 good wynde / that brought hem sone from the port / and alle the
 people that were a lond commaundid them to the kepyng of oure
 40 lord / and there was euery day a seuenyght aftir their departir

The King of
 England
 guarantees
 6000.

[1 leaf 29]

The three
 Hosts are
 under Prince
 David of
 Scotland,

and embark
 from Port
 Deon in Scot-
 land.

David's ad-
 visers are
 Lords Dou-
 glas and
 Busshaunt.

generall processione thorough all the Reaume. Alas! this grete & notable armee did litle profit to cristendome / wherof was grete pite and damage / but it is to thinke that god doth all for the best / for perauenture they ¹that went yn his seruice went not as they ought; 4 but I remitte all that to the knowlage of god. [*Illumin.: siege by ships.*]

The Sultan
hears of the
Christian
navy

Off the departyng of this grete & high armee was the Soudan playnly enfourmed / & yn like wise the kynge of Sizile / but of all the reaume of Sizile was not one *with* the armee. The 8 Soudan, in eueri parte of the land that was yn his handes, had folkes to here tidynges / and helde him and his power on the feldes nygh the portes, where as he thought they might aryue; so *withyn* litle while came certayne worde to hym, that men sy the cristen 12 navee comyng to take lond at the port of Gayette / the Soudan, heryng thies tidynges, drewe thider *with* alle his puissaunce, & brought his ordenaunce *with* hym, & ranged hym & his people vpon the ryuage, and leide his gones & his coluerynes to diffende 16 & distourbe the cristen mennys landyng / vpon the tothirside, Dauid of Scotlond, *with* all his company, approched the port, & perceyued the enmys redy to deffende their landyng; and yn as moche as it was late, & that they knewe not the port, they toke 20 counsell to ly at ancre til on the morowe, that they might se bettir what they had to do: So did they as ye haue herde / and at that tyme was the wedir faire and ²calme, & thorough alle the cristen 24 navee they made to blowe trompettes, claryons & taberynes, & alle 24 maner of mynstraffeie, so that it semed wele a place of ioie / their baners & penouns set out fleyng *with* the wynde, so that they that were on land might se them by the bright sonne / & thought it was a riche & a wele ffournyssht navee. Oure good cristen men 28 thought longe, that they might not set vpon the Sarasyne that night. In the hoste of the Turkes souned they all night grete taberynes / that it semid bettir Helle than any othir thinge. Aftir all this done, Dauid of Scotland sent for the Constable of ffrance 32 & the AdmyraH of Englund / & the moost part of notable knyghtes & Squyers, prayng them to take aduise & counsell what were best to be done / aftir many wordes & demaundes, the conclusion of the councill was this / that men shold take .xx.^{ti} or xxx.^{ti} Galiettes, of 36 the lightest that were in the Navee, & that they shold be wele & strongly garnysht *with* artrye & serpentynes, and alle other abilementes that were behoffult / & that they shold go costyng the lond / to se where were best londyng; and in this wise might they se 40

nearing Ga-
cta,

and prepares
to oppose
their landing.

[² leaf 30]

The Christian
fleet looks a
joyful scene:

the Turkish
host like
Hell,

somwhat the maner of their enemyes / And also that in euery
galiette sholde be some notable knyghtes and squyers wele accom-
payned, suche as were connyng & expert yn armes / this counceylt
4 was admytted / and euery captayne that had yn charge to ordeyne
his folkes, did it with all diligence / So euery man was redy at the
houre that he was apointed / & the Galiettes wele persuaide for / &
full of folkes / But ye may wele thinke that euery man went not
8 that wold, for euery man had desire to auenture him in that high
seruice / whan they were assembled, they departed & sprad in many
plais / approchyng the aryual. The Soudan, seying this company, reconnoitre,
drew towards them, wenyng veryly that they had come to take
12 londe / wherfore he ranged his folkes vpon the aryual as ny the
water as they myght, for to defende the cristen mennys londyng;
where he did foly, for the Galiettes approched them so nye / that
they drewe all at ones withyn the shotte of their ordenaunce, &
16 were withyn ij. stones caste to theym / for the Galiettes & bargettes
drew but litle depnesse / & at this first encountre were many
turkes slayn, & many grete lordes of theym; for the moost noble
alwey desired to be foremost / that day bare the turkes grete damage /
20 & with litle losse the cristen folkes retourned ageyn to their grete
vessels, that lay at ancre without the port / ¹whiche had seyne all [1 lf. 80, bk.]
that they had done on lond / and whan they came, they had grete
laude and thanke, for they had so honorably aquitte them pat day.
24 Dauyd of Scotland / the Constable of ffrance, the Amyrall of
Englond, sende for their folkes to come to the shippe that Dauid
was yn / for to telle what they had seyne on lond, and hou they
did for the grete shotte that came among hem, and hou they sup-
28 posed that they alle might londe / and thus they answerd alle
generally, that yif the grete vesselles might haue come as nere as
the litle / it sholde haue be a light thinge to take lond / but they
sawe wele it was not possible for theym to come so nere / wherfore
32 it was nedefull to take good aduise, ffor the company of the thre
kynges that ther was / was not lightly to be auentured, for the
losse of them might turne to our grete hurte to all cristendome /
Dauid and alle the tothir lordes, heryng this reporte, concluded that
36 euery man shold take aduise of this matier / & on the morowe, in
the point of the day, that euery man shold here masse / and forwith
after meete ther ageyn / & sey ther advise, such as they shal haue
remembred that night / this was done, & euery man wente to soper
40 and to reste. ¶ Nowe shal we retourne to þe Soudan & his

The galliettes
of the Chris-
tians

and shoot
many Turks.

They report
to Prince
David and
his Council,

who resolve
on a consulta-
tion next day.

The Sultan
calls his
Captains to
Council.

Baltasar

advises the
Sultan

[1 leaf 31]

to have pits
dug on the
shore,

and great
trenches,
all fild with
Turks,
and then re-
tire his army
behind them.

folkes, that gretely meruailed of the maner of oure cristen folkes /
for moche people had they lost by them / and aftir the departyng of
the Galiettes, the Soudan sent for alle his Capteynes, to take aulse
what was best to do / either to lete the cristen men to take lond / 4
or to resiste theym / they sawe clerely that yif the cristen men
contynued yn that they had done the day before / he might no
thyng wyne, but alwey lose / so he praied eche of them trewly to
counseile him, & say what was to be done / and aftir thies wordes 8
he asked aulse at one that him thought most sad to counseile in
suche cas / & this knyght was named Baltasar / whiche alt his
tyme had vsed his lif in warres / as wele on cristen as on hethen /
the whiche Baltasar, aftir many excuses made, leyng the charge on 12
them þat were wiser than he / seyng that it was full vnsittyng for
hym to speke bifore suche as there were / & whan he sawe he
might not be excused, he seid in this manere / "sir, sauynge your
pleasir and correccion, ye haue a feble choyse of me / but sith it 16
pleasith you that y shall speke, & may not be excused, y shall sey
vn^dir correccion as me thinketh / ye haue sene the maner of the
cristen to-day / what Damage they haue done to you & youre folkes /
whiche is more than folkes put you yn knowlage of / ye se wele 20
that alt their desir is to take lond ther as we be ; wherof y mervaille,
for it were more profitable ellis where for them / and therfore y
suppose that they haue non of Sizile with them / and so they wote
not where to seche their port but here / wherfore me thinketh it 24
were good this night to make pittes ther as they sholde londe,
whiche sholde be wele garnysshed with ordenaunce, and that they
shold be made yn suche wise that eche of them might defende
othir / And also that ther might be made grete trenches, that ther 28
might be grete nombre of people hid theryn / and that your grete
armee drewe them a-bakke the draught of an arowblast, and there
shewed them. I suppose verily whan the cristen shall se that / they
wold come in many placis to take lond / perauenture alle the puis- 32
saunce of them / and if they come ones withyn gonne shotte, y
suppose that fewe of their vessels, or noon, shal escape vndrowned /
and for this that y haue seide of my opinion, alwey with correccion,
me thinketh ther shold be apointed moche people, wele puruaide of 36
vitaile til to-morowe yn the mornynge, to go yn hande al night
with this werke / and yif eueri man do his deuoir, y trow it wol
not dure half the night ; and as for my part, y wol begyn, if ye be
plesed. and if myn advise be simple, y beseche your grace / & alle 40

that here be, of pardon, for if y coude bettir / bettir y wold sey, and
 offre me to the best counseil" / Aftir thies wordes / the Soudan
 asketh forth alle othir folowyng / hou they thought. and he that
 4 spake nexte, seide / "sir, ye haue herde thaduisse of Baltasar / that
 all his tyme hath haunted the warres / and for the spede of this
 matier, to myn aduise ye may no bettir be adressed / wherfore,
 without holdyng of longe speche fro pointe to pointe, y can no
 8 bettir say / than y haue herd him say ; wherfore y offre my self &
 all my folkes with all diligence toward the perfourmyng ther-of /
 if it so please you." whan thies two had endid their reasons /
 the Soudan asked ferther / and euery man was of thopinion of
 12 Balthasar / offryng them self and alle their folkes to all that
 pleased the Soudan to commaunde / this counseil was sone
 taken & concludid / and they that shold do the diligence [1 lf. 31, bk.]
 were ordeyned, and to euery man deliuerd their charge, whiche
 16 was done before day / and so wele accomplished that no man
 coude amende it / for it was not so wele deuised / but it was
 performed.

All the other
 Captains
 agree.

The pits and
 trenches are
 dug and
 mand.

20 **Y**E haue herde wele hou the cristen men had apoynted the
 moost noble men to be yn Dauyd shipe yn the mornynge
 be tymes / to take aduise what was to be done. at the houre
 apointed they came, & went to a counseil / and than spake Erle
 Douglas for his maister / seyng, "faire lordes, ye knowe at oure
 24 departyng yister euen, howe euery man sholde take remembraunce
 of this grete matier. Wherfore, my lorde that here is, wolde fult
 fayne knowe your auises / what is to be done, for he knoweth wele
 amonges you alle, prynces & Barons, ye haue this night fult ofte
 28 awaked to stodie aduise yn this high werke, where-yn we be / In
 whiche we may wyne the glory of heuen / the honour and renome
 of the worlde / and aqyte vs of the charge pat is youen vnto vs.
 So praieth you, my lorde that here is / that it plese you to counseile
 32 hym / and he is redy to execute it to his power. The kynge his
 fadir hath ordeyned hym ther-to / and for that cause sent him
 hider" / aftir tho wordes, Dauyd hym self praide them the same /
 and than he bisought the Constable of ffrance to speke first / for
 36 he was moost noble man of the company, and not werst puruaide of
 good aduise / it was no meruaile, for he was one of the chief of the
 Reaume of ffrance. Then spake he, & seide / "y meruaile moche,
 my lorde, of so wise a kynge as is the kynge your fadir, that he
 40 hath sent you hider yn this grete & noble company, without

At Prince
 David's
 Council,

the Constable
 of France
 advises

that, as they
don't know
where to
land,

they shall
wait for the
King of
Sicily.

[1 leaf 32]

The Admiral
of England
agrees.

The look-out
men report
that the
Sultan has
withdrawn
his army
from the
shore.

hauyng one only man of that same reaume that ye shold aryue yn.
vndir correccion / me semeth it a grete defeaute / for as longe as
oure enemyes wille / we shalle take no londe here / seying the Soudan
& alle his puissaunce bifore vs, and we not knowyng the londyng, 4
whereby we haue neither Wisdam nor poliece to helpe vs / also the
kyng of Sizile is not aduertised of oure comyng / wherfore y wote
not what to counseile you / but best, me thinketh, it were to sende
vnto the kyng of Sizile, and byde stille here til their comyng 8
ageyn / But ther is o sore point / they that shalle go, knowe not the
way / ne where they shalle fynde hym / but y make no doute, if
they may haue grace to come to hym / the kyng shall purvey for
them to be conduyted surely y-nough / I can se noon other wey but 12
this / for the more y thinke on it / the more straunge me semys
the matier / wherfore y can not wele geue you counseil, 1but
biseche youre Lordship to axe ferther of them that haue sene more
than I. ffor often tyme they that haue grettist charges be not moost 16
wise / & so farith it by me / but as for my parte, y am redy to
obeie you / and do you seruise as is commaundid me / and to
bileue the counseile of wise & noble men, bettir knowing suche
matiers than y, wherof many may lightly be founde in this notable 20
company." Dauid vndirstode wele that the Constable was yn dis-
pleasir, by cause they had noon ther of the Reaume of Sizile that
might conduyte them / and so he askid forth the Amiral of Ing-
londes aise, whiche in alle poyntes folowed the Constable of 24
ffraunce / & shewed more sad matier to be troubled than did the
Constable / and spake as he that was not pleased, leyyng grete
charge to them that had the conduyte of the armee² / and Dauid of
Scotland askid ferther, but he fonde noon that coude take a ferme 28
purpose. Thus as they were yn argumentes, without any conclu-
sione takyng, they that were in the somer Castells & toppis of the
shippis / that might easely se alle them that were a londe, per-
ceyued verrily that the Soudan and alle his armee was withdrawen 32
more than the draught of an arowe; & anon they tolde thies
tidynges to dauid / & to alle theym that were with hime, whiche
forthwith went vp on the shippes / an sawe it was trewe that they
had seide / Som of them seid the Soudan did this for to haue 36
bataile, & to haue the cristen men at lesse defence / & som seide
that he withdrewe him for the grete losse he had ysterday with the
gonnes & shotte of cristen men / whiche he wolde no more abide.

² ? MS. arinee.

alle they that were there, seide that they withdrewe them for they
 might not wele feight so ny the water, seyng the smalle vessells so
 wele furnysht / Than they concluded to go thider ageyn / and it
 4 was ordeyned that they shold go, that went the day a-fore, with
 many moo yn their company / so than was the houre apointed / &
 to euery man deliuerd the charge of such feliship as shold go at
 their conduyte / whan the houre came, alle men went to their ves-
 8 sells / and in especialt, grete nombre of yong knyghtes & Squyers,
 moo than had done the day a-fore / & whan they were assembled /
 they spredde their vessells as they had done the day bifore. Of
 the tothir parte / grete nombre of Turkes came out of their paulyions
 12 toward them, makyng semblaunt to defende the londe; they that
 were *withyn* the barges & Galiettes, in all haste nyhed the ¹Londe, [¹ lf. 32, bk.]
 & then feyned the turkes to withdraw them, for the grete shote of
 oure cristen men / this seyng, they of the Galiettes approched so
 16 nye that they might a lepte to þe londe if they had wolde; & so
 they had done, if it had not be defendid fro them / the turkes that
 were yn the trenches & in the pittes, that were so wel made that
 their shot was all a longe the see side fro place to place, & was so
 20 wele garnysht that no thinge failed; and whan they sawe the
 barges & Galiettes so ny, that they might no nerre without
 londyng, then lepe they out of their trenches / *with* so horrible a
 noise & cry, as though it had ben alle the ennemys of helle; & all
 24 at ones shotte with gones, serpentynes & culuerynes, arblastes,
 crosbowes; & alle suche ordenaunce as they had / they lete go at
 ones; and whan the turke herde this noise, he made to caste vp a
 cry & a noise amonge his folkes, & drewe thiderward in suche
 28 maner that alle our folkes were a-ferde; & not *without* cause / for
 many of their barges were a londe, & had fewe gones or serpen-
 tynes to defende them self *with* / and they were araied in suche
 wise / that they were almost destroyed / for the moost part of them
 32 *withyn* / were so hurte that they might not helpe them self / the
 remenaunt durst not shewe them, for the grete shot that came on
 them / moreour, ther were at this first encontryng .iij. or .iiij.
 galiettes & barges drowned / wheryn many a notable knight &
 36 squier endid their lyues / It is not to questionne / þat our folkes
 þat were in þe grete Naaee, & might se þis grete infortune / but
 they had asmoche sorowe as þey might bere / for yn þis litle
 Naaee was þe flour & þe choise of alle þeir yong chiualtry / fuH
 40 feyne wold þey at þat tyme a bene a londe to a uentured their lyues

The Chris-
tians man
their small
vessels, and
advance.

The Turks
make a feigned
retreat;

their men in
the trenches
leap out and
fire.

Three or four
Christian
gallies and
barges are
sunk, and
many men
kild.

The Christians retreat, having lost eight boats,

and many men kild and wounded.

[¹ leaf 33]

I drop this, because it annoys me.

Prince David holds a second Council.

It decides to send two Scotch knights to land by night,

and capture a Turk to show them the way to Sicily.

yn the helpe and rescuse of their frendes / but for alle their discomfort / it might now be noon other. The turkes did their deuoir to destroye the cristen / and the cristen put payne to saue them self / without making any othir warres, the moost part of them 4 came ageyn to the grete Navee, Wherof were hurt without nombre / & many of them dyde that were hurt with the gonnes & serpentyntes / whan aH this was endid / they tolde of their losse / hou viij. of their smallest vessells were drowned, wherof neuir a man 8 escape, beside all the remenaunt that were hurte / this day hath done asmoche harme to þe cristen men as sholde a done a grete bataile, for suche as were of hy & grete corage, that wolde auenture them / the moost part was dede. ¹There was the sorowe & com- 12 plaint that eueri man made for his frende / aswele for the hurte as for the dede / whiche were to longe to reherce. ¶ I shall leue of this sorowe, for the writyng therof annoieth me / and I retourne to the Soudan & his company / that make grete ioie this night / thinkyng 16 that for a bigynnynge this was a faire auenture / and knewe wele by them self of the night a-fore / ynne what discomfort the cristen men were / and gretely honoure they The knyght that hadde yeuened them this conseile. that nyght concludid they to tary there stille, 20 til the cristen Navee was withdrawen, for the grete losse & sorow that they had / this nyght was yn the cristen Navee no counseill nor conclusion taken, for euery man had y-nough to do, to visite his frende / there is no sorow nor mysfortune but it most passe. 24 So on the morowe Dauid assembled his counseill; and aftir that he had made the compleyntes & lamentyng of them he had loste, to their nyest frendes / he praied them euerichon to take this auenture yn pacience, & to shewe their best counseill in this matier / & for 28 to reherce the opinions of eueri man, it shold be to longe, I shall go to the conclusion, that was this / they apointed two notable yonge knyghtes, hardy and wise of their age, and wele aduised, & ordeyned them to take that night a Galee / and more than ij. leegis 32 from the Soudans puissaunce thei sholde londe / & put them in deuoir to take som maner of persone walkyng yn the felde, whiche sholde teche them the way to the kynge of Sizile. whan this was apointed / they leide the charge of the message on thies two 36 knyghtes, whiche were bothe of Scotland, whiche charge was no thinge elles but that they shold telle by mouthe, what auenture was befall to the cristen Navee / and aH for lakke that they had no man of that countre that coude conduyte them / and that they wolde 40

abide ther / the messangers / xiiij. daies / and if thei retourne not
 withyn that time / they wolde departe / for they had no lenger
 vitaille. Thus departed the two knyghtes / and euery man praide
 4 them to do wele their deuoir; so they went to their vessells, &
 slepte there til it was night / than toke they their course toward a
 grete wode / that semed a two leegis from the Soudans hoste / then The two
Scotch
knights land,
 they toke vnto them vitaille for ij. or iij. dayes, & armed hem
 8 lightly, & toke theire sheldes and their swerdes / and eche sware to
 abide by other yn alle auentures; & wele might eche of them trust [¹ If. 33, bk.]
 othir, for they were cosyn germyns, comen of the best lynage yn
 Scotland, as of Barons / and of their age of them self moost renomel.
 12 So moche did they that, vnperceyued or knowen of any persone,
 they came to the forseide wode. this forest was ful longe, and but
 litle wey fro thens was the place fro whens kynge ffrabrace and get to a
wood.
 partid whan he was taken / and that forest endured to the playne of
 16 Tapyr / that Olyuer, fferauntes brother, had yn gouernaunce. Now
 ar thies ij. knyghtes londid, and made their praiers to almyghti god
 to be their guyde, and conduyte hem from alle them that wold hurte
 them / then they wilke forth thorough the forest til it was day / &
 20 when it was day, they perceyued a grete hy wey, that was moche
 vsyd & betyn with horsis / it was a wey that went to a Toure of
 kyng ffrabrace / & assone as they might / they leste² this hy wey /
 and toke a more wilde wey in-to the foreste / alwey costeyng by
 24 the same wey, to the entent to mete with some laborer that might
 auertise them where they were / so long they went til they came
 out of the forest / and were almost at the Towne of ffounde / where
 a grete garison was of the Turkes / and they dred to come yn any They come
near Fondé,
 28 toune til they knewe more / and withdrewe them ayen in-to the
 forest / they had gone but a while, but they mette an olde woman / and meet an
old woman,
 that bare a fagot on hir hede of stikkes, that she hadde gedird yn
 the wode / and whan she perceyued thies knyghtes, she knewe
 32 anoon be their abilment that they were not of the turkes, & she
 dred hir moche, & seide vnto them in such langage as they might
 wele vndirstonde / "my lordes, preised be ihesu criste / that y
 haue founde you here, for y se wele ye be cristen / & forsothe so am who pretends
to be a Chris-
tian.
 36 I / and for that y wote not that ye knowe this contre / y wol aduise
 you to be ware / for on that honde is a grete garison of the Turkys
 folkes." and this seide she, for she thought they had sene the
 place, by cause they sholde haue the more affiaunce yn hir / when

² ? for *left*.

the knyghtes herde her speke / they wende wele she seide trouthe,
 and came the more out of the wode to speke more to hir / and
 askid whiche was the nexte place that hilde of the kynge of Sizile /
 she seide it was but .iiij. myle thens / and that a knyght had it in 4
 gouernaunce, that was called Olyuer, whiche was Brother vnto the
 Seneshall of Sizile; & she seide that but a litil while syne / the
 Soudans brothir, kynge firabrace, was taken prisoner bfore the
 same place / the ij. knyghtes were ioifult of thies ¹tidynges, & 8
 priaiede the woman that she wold bringe hem thider / she made
 semblaunt of haltyng, as she might not wele go / for there was no
 thinge she drede more than to come yn to that place / for she was
 knownen ther for the worste & the moost vntrewe that yn hir tyme 12
 lyued / then asked they hir, what wey they myght holde / and she
 tolde hem the trouthe, & shewed hem whiche wey they sholde
 take / and that shold not faile them til they came withyn a bow-
 shot of the place / than bitoke they hir vnto god / and helde forth 16
 that wey aswele as they might. & whan they were out of hir
 sight / she leide doune hir fagot / and ranne yn suche wise toward
 the garison of the turkes, that she semed not lame / for vnnethe an
 horse might ouirtake hir; so fast she ranne / that by than she 20
 came to the place, she might vnnethe speke / and whan she was
 brethed, she called the Captayne & tolde him alt that she had
 founde, & hou she thought they were not of the Reaume of Sizile;
 & hou she had counseiled them / for she dempte they were of the 24
 cristen armee / that is now come, "and if ye wille, they may not
 escape you, for y shall brynge you where y lefte hem" / whan the
 Captayne herde this olde woman / he callid his folkes, & made hir
 to rheree the tale ayen bfore them; & so she did, & seide verily 28
 they had no horses, but wente a fote, & drewe toward Olyuers
 place / wherto they might not come but by ij. passages / thenne
 apointed he xx^{ti} of the garisone to go forth in ij. partes to the two
 passages that they thought thies ij. knyghtes sholde passe by / and 32
 sent forth othir .x. with this olde woman, to wite if they might
 fynde them nere ther she lefte them / Thies ij. cristen knyghtes,
 that sawe this olde woman renne thus whan she was departed fro
 them / and that she was not lame as she had seide / knewe fult wele 36
 what hir entent was / & wherfore she ranne so fast toward the
 Sarasyns / wherfore, as wise knyghtes of warre, they drewe them
 farther yn-to the wode / yn-to the thikkest therof / costeyng alwey as
 the woman had taught them / so that they came neither yn hy wey 40

The old woman tells the spies that a Sicilian town is but 4 miles off.

[1 leaf 31]

As soon as they leave her, she runs to the garrison,

and tells the Turkish Captain about the Scotch spies.

He sends two parties of his men to catch them.

The Scotch spies get farther into the wood.

nor path / but costeyde forth as streight as they coude, towardes the
 place / And for the turkes, that y haue tolde you rode to the ij.
 passagis / they toke no grete hede to the reporte of this olde
 4 woman / but seide amonges them, ¹“oure Captayne is wele occupied [1 ff. 34, bk.]
 to geue any credence to the seyng of this olde woman / that is wors
 than the blak deuelt of helle; it may as wele be that she doth this
 for the harme of vs, as for the hurte of othir / it is not good to
 8 trust to moche yn hir sorowe / haue he that hastith hym ouir faste
 for her wordes / it is goode we auise vs wele a-fore / for Olyuers
 folkes be men of grete vertu and worthynesse / and if we approche
 their place, y suppose we shall not retourne without debate” / with
 12 suche wordes rode they forth al easely, so longe til one of the x.
 that were to-gedir, perceyued the ij. knyghtes comyng out of the
 wode, & toke the wey to Olyuers place / whiche was not fer fro
 them. & when the turkes perceyued hem, they spored aftir them
 16 in aH that they myght / the two knyghtes vndirstode wele that they
 were enemys, & fled toward the ffortresse / but they were so nere
 them / that they ouirtoke them withyn lesse than a bow-shotte to the
 toun & ffortresse / & whan they sawe they might no ferther, they
 20 put on their helmys / and aredied hem to their defence, & made a
 syne to them of the place for helpe, & set them self ayenst a tre,
 & defendid them ayenst aH .x. The wacche of the place, that sawe
 wele aH this, sende worde to Olyuer herof in aH haste, whiche
 24 came vp anone on the wallis, & sawe wele alle the feeldes aboute /
 that there was no moo but they, & that they were so nere his place /
 wherfore he had no drede to make his folkes issu out on them / &
 anone they came to the socours of thies ij. knyghtes, that wele and
 28 manfully faught / & be than had slayne ij. or iij. turkes / & made
 suche way aboute them / that their enemyes durst not wele approche
 them. the turkes perceyued þe comyng-out of þem of the place,
 and durst not abide them / but anon fled streight toward the wode,
 32 but ther was noon that folowed hem / for assone as Olyuers folkes
 came to the ij. knyghtes, they taryed stille with them / and brought
 them yn-to the toun to their maister, that resceyued them with
 grete ioie whan he knewe what folkes they were / and askid
 36 them of their tidynges / whan the knyghtes sawe Olyuere, they
 thankid god of his grace / that had brought them yn-to his handes;
 and than they tolde him aH the pitous & sorowfult auenture that
 was falle vnto the cristen the day bfore their departyng / the dis-
 40 comfort of Dauid, the kynge of Scottes sone / & of alle the Prynces

The old
 woman's
 report is
 pooli-poolid.

The 2 Scotch
 Knights are
 attack by
 Turks.

Oliver sends
 his men to
 succour the
 2 Scotch
 Knights,

who are then
 brought safe
 to the fort-
 ress.

[¹ leaf 35] of ffraunce, Englund and Scotland, that were there / & ¹hou they wist not where they were / nor herde no worde fro the kynge of Sizile, wherof they thought grete meruaile / seying that he was assertayned of their comyng / of tyme & houre of their departyng / 4 and neuir had sente one only man vnto them / wherfore they toke grete displeasir / and were gretly annoied towardes him, & had sente them / vpon their retourne *withyn* xv. Dayes / or ellis to go their wey / and tary no lenger / Olyuer excused the kynge as moche 8 as he might / for he sawe wele it was nede / & that the cristen had cause of displeasir / So made he the knyghtes ~~att~~ the chere that he coude, & promysed to conduyte them to the kyng of Sizile, that was but ij. dayes iournay thens, of whiche kynge we wol speke 12 now, for we haue lefte of hym a grete while.

The Scotch, &c., are angry at the King of Sicily's not sending to them.

The King of Sicily

The kynge of Sizile, knowyng verily the Armee made by the iij. kynges, assembled the thre estates of his lond, and helde a grete counseilt, to take aduise hou he might con- 16 duyte & gouerne him, the ceason he abode the comyng of the cristen armee / eueri man counseiled hym to reise alle the power of his lond, a litle bifore suche tyme as the cristen armee shold arryue / accordyng to this aulse he did / and sent for alle maner abile men 20 of warre / & anon *without* any delay they came vnto him / arraied and accompanied as wele as they might / thenne shewed he vnto them / the hope & comfort that he had, to haue socour of the cristen men / and the kyng was then wele accompanied aftir the 24 pouerte of his Reaume / and the grete losse that had fallyn ther-to / & for they of the reaume had moche leuer dye / than to contynue yn suche case as they had bene a grete while / for this cause came alle maner of folkes / eueri man for his parte aswele abiled and 28 accompanied as they might / In like wise the kynge of Hungry,

and the King of Hungary and his,

assemble to meet the Expedition from Scotland, &c.

that ioyned to the reaume of Sizile, hadde arredied him & alle his power, to mete with the cristen men at their londyng / accompanied with the kynge of Sizile, trustyng at that day to se the warres 32 endid / Thus the kynge of Hungry, wele acompanyed, abode eueri day to here tidynges of the cristen / but noon he herd / whiche was a grete defeaute yn alle partyes / For lakke of sendyng eche of them to othir, grete harme befille, wherof was grete pite. The kyng of 36 Sizile, abidyng tidynges, was asserteyned by his Capteynes that the Soudan had assembled alle his people, ²as they vndirstode by suche of his folkes as were taken prisoners / and that he purposed to encountre the cristen armee, whiche was ny the costes, as he vndir- 40

[² lf. 35, bk.]

stode. The kynge, knowyng for certayn thies tidynges from many
places, toke the felde with alle his folkes, a thre leegis from the
Soudan on that on side of hym / but his puissaunce was not to
4 dele with the Soudan and his hoste / & than toke he counseilt
what was to be done yn this matier; and they auised him to ley
seege to a place that was named fosses, whiche was but iiij. myle
fro the porte where-as the turke lay. This sholde be but for a
8 maner to holde his peple to-gedir til the londyng of the cristen
armee / & to thentent to cause the Soudan drawe thiderwarde til
the cristen might londe / for he entendid to hoolde no seege ther / for
and the Soudan came / he wolde withdrawe him / for he was not
12 able to dele with him / thus was the conclusion taken / and as yn
maner of a seege, loggid him and his folkes bifore the place, where
he was the same tyme that the ij. knyghtes came to Olyuer, whan
he promysed them to conduyte hem to the kynge in ij. dayes.
16 ¶ On the morowe fult erly, whan the ij. knyghtes were wele restid
at their ease, Olyuere puruaide for them .ij. good horsis / & conueid
them so wele that he brought them to the kynge / and with the
lesse payne he might do so, for alle the hethen men were with the
20 Soudan / saue only they of the garisons, whiche were not right wele
furnyssht with folke, as it shewed wele by the place that the kynge
of Sizile lay bifore / thus as the ij. knyghtes and their guydes
rode / they questioned of the kynge of Sizile & his puissaunce / and
24 Olyuers folkes tolde hem the grete paynes, hardnesse, mysery, &
pouerte, this pore Reaume had endured / and than they tolde hem /
hou, bi-fore the comyng of the cristen armee / a man like an Aungel
yn beaute, to seynt George in worthynesse, was come vnto them, &
28 sith hys comyng, they had neuir but good auenture / and alle their
dedes & emprises were come to good conclusion / and tolde them
of the ij. first good auentures that felt sodeynly at his first comyng,
and tolde alt the maner hou they fell / and that sith his comyng,
32 one Sizilion was worth vj. turkes, and byfore, vj. of them were not
worthe one turke / and that nowe the turkes might not endure
ayenst them / of thies tidynges were the ij. knyghtes wele com-
forted / and desired no more of god, ¹but that their company were
36 ones assembled with the kynge of Sizile / And for to knowe more
of this yong man that was newe come in-to Sizile / they asked his
name / “for sothe,” seide their guyde, “whan he came hider, his
name was Le Despurueu; but for that eueri man hath sene yn him
40 so moche wele & noblesse / the ladies of the courte haue named him

While wait-
ing, the
Sicilians and
Hungarians
besiege
Fosses.

Oliver brings
the 2 Scotch
Knights to
the King of
Sicily.

and they are
told of the
wonderful
acts of Prince
Philip.

[leaf 36]

The 2 Scotch
Knights

join in the
assault on
Fosses.

They see
Prince Philip
fighting alone
in a tower,

[¹ If. 36, bk.]

and go to his
help.

Le Surnome ; for they sawe him yn no thinge dispurueid that longid
to honour / thus now his name is Surnome. And if ye wil knowe
him, it nedith not to desire any man to shewe him you, but
beholde the moost faire and amiable, and the moost likly of the 4
kynges armee / and that is he, and by this ye may lightly knowe
hym" / The ij. knyghtes of Scotland rode forth aH ioifully, hering
thies tidynges, & had grete meruaile that yn the persone of one
man might be so grete cause of preise, desiryng moche to se him / 8
so longe they rode, that they approched the kyng of Siziles hoste /
and at their welcomyng, there was right a grete assaute at the place /
and they alight as folke of right high corage, and went streight to
the saute / & fonde ther many pavis throwen to the erthe / and eche 12
of them toke one, & went to the wallis, beholdyng who did best /
& they sawe, by force of defense, that the saute began to waxe lesse /
& many folkes to withdrawe them / for there were many of the
cristen woundid & sore hurte / but at the laste, they sawe at o toure 16
one of the kyng of Siziles parte that valiauntly fought, and for no
thing wolde descende, but rather was maister of that toure / but he
had noon erthly helpe / wherfore he made a syne to his company
that they sholde retourne / hou-be-it ther were fult fewe pat drewe 20
thiderward / for euery man helde hym vtirly destroyed with-oute
remedy. men might se wele a-fer that he was sore assailed / but
meruailously he defendid him / so that noon durst abide a stroke
of his hande. he was so hy a-lofte that nedid to drede, neither gonne 24
shot, ne stone cast / nor no hurt they might do him, saue only with
strokes / and the turkes dred his strokes so moche, that they durst
not abide him ; thus, as half taken, was he vpon this toure, & sy hym
self at a mischief / wherfore he made synes to the people, geuyng 28
them corage to come ageyn / thies ij. forsaide knyghtes of Scotland
had be their but a while, when they herd cry, " Le Surnome is lost /
but if he haue socour / whiche sholde be the grettist hurt that euir
befell to the reaume of Sizile ;" & anoon they knewe ¹wele that it 32
was the same valiaunt squyer of whom they haue herde speke,
whiche stode yn auenture for lakke of socour. than toke they ij. a
laddir, and drew them toward the toure / anoon affir them came 36
many moo folkes, but they were the first, be a good while, that went
vpon the laddir / the saute began on alle parties more huger and
more sore than it had ben bifore / thies ij. knyghtes of Scotland
did aH their payne to come vp / & to make them to be knowen of
Surnome, as wele as of them of the hoste. wherto they did aH the 40

- diligence that any noble men might do / & many tymes were put
doun of the ladders / & many tymes remounted ayen. Surnome, Prince Philip
seyng the good wille of them, thought, with the helpe of god, to
4 make them better wey / & so betoke him-self to god & blessid him /
& auaunced hym-self amonge the turkes that were on the walles
a-boute the toure, delyng them suche lyuerey, that many he slewe /
and the remenaunt fled bifore hym / and so made he the two and the two
Scotch
Knights
drive the
Turks from
the walls;
8 knyghtes of Scotland, and many othir, to come vp on the walles /
the turkes drewe them to the market place, sore discomfit. the
kyng & his folkes entred yn-to the toune by the gates that were
opynd vnto them by them that had wonne the wallis. the defence
12 that the turkes made yn the market place ayenst the kynges folkes
auailed not; for, with the helpe of Le Surnome, alle were slayne /
thus was the towne wonne *with*out any grete losse or damage to the and Fosses
is won.
cristen men / and it was bothe faire & stronge. Thies tidinges came
16 anoon to knowlage of the Soudan / wherof he was right sorowfuH,
& knewe wele thier was to hym a right grete losse / & impossible to
him to recouer so many good men as he had slayn there. And
thies ij. knyghtes of Scotland were gretly ameruailed of *pat* they The 2 Scotch
Knights
wonder at
Prince
Philip's
prowess.
20 had sene that day, yn the persone of Surnome, more than they had
herd sey / then desired they moche to accomplissh their charge
that they had to the kyng / and also to se Le Surnome vnarmed,
and that *pey* might be aqueynted *with* hym / assone as they myght,
24 they founde vp them that had conduyte them, whiche they sente
to the kyng / to certifie him that ij. of the *seruauntes* of Dauyd of
Scotland were come to him / fro the saide Dauyd, desiryng moche to
speke with the kyng / seyng that hir message was hasty. The
28 kyng, hou-be-it that his folkes were yet alle out of aray, & that he
wist not where noon of his coun^{seil} were logged, yn asmoche as [1 leaf 37]
the towne was newly *wonne* / wherfore euery man was loggid *with*-
out an herbeiour, he sent them worde that *withyn* ij. houres he wold
32 sende for them / and *commaunded* them that had conduyte them, to
holde hem company vnto that tyme / and that they shold put them
yn deuoir to do them aH the chere and ease they coude / The
kyng of Sizile, aftir that he was wele loggid, & his folkes, and
36 made gret slaughter, & wanne grete good, he made to seche where
they of his counseil were logged, & sent for them to come to hym;
and than sent he for the knyghtes of Scotland / that, as ye may wele
thinke, had not chaungid their *abilementes* / for their somers were
40 not ther / they came to the kyng, their visages grete and swolne of

They are
sent for by
the King of
Sicily.

The 2 Scotch
Knights tell
the King of
Sicily

that the Ex-
pedition of
his Allies
have waited
at Gaeta,

and not had
one message
from him,

so that the
flower of
their army
has perisht.
[1 ff. 37, bk.]

He must
therefore
send to them
soon.

the strokes that they had reseeyued, & salued him right honorably,
as knyghtes of honour that had be right wele acostomed to do suche
thinges / yeldyng thankes to god of the grete and good fortune / that
he had that day / geuyng hym a grete commendacion and preise / 4
seyng that the place that he had wonne at this tyme, was not con-
querable without the grete grace of god, and worthinesse of his
persone & of his noble chyualrie / aftir this, fro Dauyd of Scotland,
the prynces & lordes of the cristen Armee pat at that tyme were 8
yn the see bifore the port of Gaiette / made they semblable recom-
mendacion, seyyng to the kyng / that for to do seruyse to Ihesu
criste / to hym, & also to his Reaume, this grete and mighti armee
was sent fro the iij. kynges, of ffraunce, of Englund & Scotlande, of 12
the whiche Armee, Dauyd, the kyng of Scottes eldest sone, is chief /
and he and alle the prynces and Barons of his company meruaile,
yn-asmoche as ye were assertayned of the Armee by their propre
messangers / and of the day of their departyng / and yit haue they 16
not one only messenger fro you / nor your auertisement hou they
shold be demeaned, nor haue not yn their company one man of
this Reaume ; whiche thinge gretly abasshith them / that so mighti
a kyng, so porely hath condite so grete an acte / wherethorugh hath 20
folowed moche harme & shame to the cristen men / And there they
tolde of the grete ynfortune that felle to the Armee the day bifore
their departyng / and enformed the kyng that the flour of chialre
of the cristen armee was full ny lost that day, ¹and so many of them 24
were slayne / that it was grete pite to rehence : this sore annoied
them, and so ought it to the kyng yn whos seruice they came /
seyyng fether, that if they had not right sone tidynges from the
kyng, that it was not possible for them to abide there / for this 28
infortunat day caused grete displeasir amonges them / so pat
Dauid had right grete payne to kepe them stille / for whiche cause
they full humbly requyred the kyng to be hastily spedde, for such
was their charge. The kyng of Sizile, heryng thies wordes & 32
tidynges that the ij. knyghtes had tolde him, hou-be-it this day had
be right ioifult to hym of the takyng of this stronge towne / yit
was he sore troubled yn his corage, & seide / “they shold be answerd
& delyuerd the nexte morowe,” for he desired moche to se this hy 36
and noble company / to the whiche he was as moche beholden as he
might be / “and y beleue verily that ther is the flour & choice of
chialrie / for yn you, faire lordes, hath be shewed this day grete
noblesse / and if alle your company be such / it may be called the 40

- flour of chiularie of the worlde / for ye hane made you more to be
 knowen this day in this company, bothe of the worthy men and of
 cowardes / than they that haue ben moche lenger here / y leue full
 4 wele your visages be vnknownen to cowardes, but the abilementes of
 your bakkes might wele y-nough be knowen of alle them that were
 behinde you. *with* them y was / & therfore y knowe your abilement
 wele / y leue / he that was yn the toure knowe your visages bettir
 8 than y do / for ye shewed them vnto him / that at that tyme had
 ful grete nede of socours." The knyghtes thanked the kynge fult
 humbly, that for so litle deserte yane them so grete honour, &
 seide / "that he allone that was yn the toure, to their conceite was
 12 cause of the good auenture that day; & it semed them / that he
 allone suffised y-nough for half them that were *with*-yn, for ther
 was noon that durste abide his strokes." As they were yn this
 talkyng, fieraunt the Seneshall, & Surnome his seruauant came yn
 16 to þe kynge / & assone as þe ij. Scottyshe knyghtes sawe Le Sur-
 nome comē yn / by the report þat they had of them þat had con-
 duyte them / þey wist for trouthe it was þe same / for, so goodly a
 man ne saw þey neur. & þan thought þey þat it was he þat
 20 was on þe toure, & for the vois that þey had herde amonges the
 people that cried "helpe Surnome þat is on þe toure" / þey
 thought certeynly þat the name that the ¹Ladies had geuyn hym, [1 leaf 38]
 was more propre for hym than the first name / for god and nature
 24 had highly puruaiede for him. Assone as the kynge sawe hym yn
 the Chambre, he came to hym / & embraced hym / & seide to the
 knyghtes of Scotland, "knowe ye this man?" / that one answered
 anone & seide / "for sothe, *sir*, yea; and y sey for trouthe that he
 28 is Le nonpareil that euir y sawe or herde speke of. and god of his
 grace long contynne hym, for by the name that renneth on hym
 now he is vnarmed, we knowe hym; and by his dedes and prowesse
 whan he was armed to-day, we inged it shold be he also / and I wote
 32 wele, whan our maister, Dauid of Scotland, shalt here that we haue
 sene yn hym, he shall put hym yn grete payne to haue his
 acqueyntaunce / for we knowe certaynly that the gretest desire that
 he hath, is / to haue acqueyntaunce *with* Valiaunt folkes / and knowe
 36 wele that his body, his power, and his goodes shalbe as redy this
 gentilmanys, as his oune." Le Surnome thanked them alle shame-
 fastly of the honour that they gaue hym / prayng god that the
 hundreth part of this that they seide, might be yn hym / for he
 40 knewe fult wele that this preise came of their goodnesse / for an ill

The King of
Sicily praises
the 2 Scotch
Knights.

They praise
Prince Philip,

who is intro-
duced to
them by the
King.

They call
him the
Nonpareil.

He thanks
them.

Prince Philip
lauds the 2
Scotch
Knights.

hert deyneth not to preys anothir. "I sey this, for that this day, ye
that were vnknownen, haue made to be knowyn yn ech of you, yn
one houre / more than this is yn any of this company; and for
sothe y haue to day knowen you more be sight than any man yn 4
this hoste / and the kynge that here is / ought to thanke god & you
of his good anenture." Yf y shold reherce the wordes of honoure
that were bitwene Le Surnome & them, y sholde haue to moche to
do / but e[ue]richon to his power honoured his party. ¶ Afir this 8
talkyng, the kynge made to conduyte the scottissh knyghtes to their
loggyng, & commaundid them to be honourably serued, and wente
him self to his counseil to wite hou he shold do to the cristen
Armee / & there were they longe debatyng this matier / And at last 12
they were of acorde to sende notable folkes to Dauyd of Scotland,
to the prynces & Barons of his company / desiryng them that they
shold departe fro thens, & drawe to a-nothir porte, that was, Le
toure de gretuz / and there esily & without any perile they might 16
londe. albe-it that the port was som what more daungerous, yit were
it not so grete auenture for them the londyng ther / and they
thought, if the cristen Armee were 1 onys Londid, sone afir the
turkes sholde haue more than y-nough to do. The knyghtes that 20
sholde do this message, were ordeyned that night, whiche on the
morowe by tymes entreprised the viage with right good will. The
Scottissh knyghtes were sent for / and the kynge of Sizile seide
vnto theym yn this wise / "my frendes, and right wise Valiaunt 24
knyghtes! y haue herde the credence that by you was sent me fro
my good cosyn, Dauyd of Scotland / and my good frendes, alle othir
princes and lordes ther / yn the whiche ye haue right notably
declared the mysery that they haue suffred for the honour of oure 28
blissed creatore / and for the socours of this pore and desolat
Reaume / whiche is to me right soroufult to here rechersid. and for
to make myn excuse, y knewe verily by my folkes that y had sent
to the iij. kynges, ther answee / and what tyme the Armee shold 32
departe / but neur sith, by them nor noon of them, had y neur
tidynges, by letteres nor othirwise / and for that ye knowe wele / the
thynges chaunge often yn so hy matiers / y wist not what to thinke,
for y supposed verily to be asseyntayned fro them of their comyng / 36
which, and y had knowen it, had not be conduyte as it is now / but
tho thinges that god wolt haue suffred, may not now be amendid /
therefore remytte we alle thinge to the will of god / And to go to the
conclusion of the surplus of this matier, to puruey the best that 40

The King of
Sicily's
Council ad-
vise their
Allies to land
at Le toure
de Gretuz.

[1 If. 38, bk.]

The King
explains to
the 2 Scotch
Knights

that their
Generals
never told
him that
their Expe-
dition had
started.

may be doñ, y haue ordeyned iiij. knyghtes of my folkes, that
knowe best the conduyte of thies marches / and they shal put them
in deuoir to brynge you ayen to your maister / & declare vnto hym
4 suche conclusions as y haue taken with my counsell / whiche to
their power they shal helpe to execute / and shall not departe fro
hym til he and y be to-gedre ; & so ye may puruay to departe whan
it pleasith you / and they shaft be redy to accompanye you " / whan
8 the scottish knyghtes had herd the kyng, they were right wele
content of his Answere, and toke their leue of the kyng / whiche
gaue eche of them a courser, and othir grete giftes ; and thus they
departed / and iiij. knyghtes of Sizile with them, whiche conduyte
12 them so wele, that they brought them to their maister ij. dayes
bifore the terme that he had set to his seruantes. and at their
comyng, it is no question if ther were ioie thorough all the company,
for they wende neuir to haue sene the houre of their retourne. And
16 after their comyng was knowen, ¹and that they had brought iiij. ^[1 leaf 39]
knyghtes of Sizile with theym, the prees was grete a-boute theym /
as wele of the frendes of thies ij. knyghtes, as othir that helde them
half lost / & were right ioifull that they had accomplisshed their
20 charge, to their grete honour. & eueri man desired to knowe of their
tidynges ; but, as good & right wise knyghtes, they tolde nothinge til
they had spoken with their maister / and assone as they might,
they went vnto hym, & lefte the knyghtes of Sizile accompanied
24 with many a noble man / til tyme they knewe the pleasir of their
maister / what tyme they shold bring the knyghtes of Sizile
vnto hym.

4 Sicilian
Knights
guide the 2
Scottish ones
back

to the Allies.

[1 leaf 39]

They are
joyfully
welcomd,

And aftir their comyng vnto hym / there had they a lawde,
28 honour & thanke that they so valiauntly had accomplisht the charge
he had geuyn them. than tolde they hym hou they had spedde, and
that .iiij. knyghtes of Sizile were come with them to enforme hym
of all the kynges entent / and to abide stille with hym til their
32 londyng. Of thies tidynges was Dauid right glad, and alle they in
his company / and anoon sende forth ayen thies .ij. knyghtes, with
many othir notable men in their company, to fecche them of Sizile.
And anoon they came ayen / and brought thies iiij. knyghtes with
36 them, whiche fult humbly salued Dauid & alle the lordes of his
company / yn recommendyng the kyng, their maister, to them, &
to alle the noble chyalrie & company that was yn this armee / they
were reseceyued right ioifully of Dauid, and of all the lordes that
40 were present / they performed their charge, so as ye haue herde

The Sicilian
Knights
are intro-
duced to
Prince David.

The Allies
resolve to
get ready
next day,

[¹ If. 39, bk.]

and start for
Sicily the
day after.

The 2 Scotch
Knights tell
the French
Constable
and English
Admiral
all their
adventures
in Sicily,

and the
nobleness
of Prince
Philip.

before, that the kynge gaue them at their departyng / & offred them
self to the accomplishment therof / and to helpe to conduyte them
without departyng fro them / til the kynge & they were mette with
the grace of god / Aftir their credence herd / they were ledde to an 4
othir faire vesseH, wele accompanied with knyghtes & squiers. and
the counsell abode stille to-gedir, to take aduise vpon this message,
what was to be done / and so they concludded. In-asmoche as the
kynge of Sizile had sente thies knyghtes to conduyte them / that 8
on the morowe alle the maisters shold be warnyde to aredye them
& conduyte of thies knyghtes of Sizile that the kynge had sente
them / Alas, fortune ! whan a man weneth to be moost sure, than 12
is he nere his daungere ; for sone aftir this apointement and this
grete ioie, there befelle suche infortune that it was grete Damage to
aH cristendome, as ye shalt anoon here / this counseH, takyn, the
knyghtes of Sizile were sent for / and tolde them the conclusion 16
that was taken amonge the lordes / wherof they were wele content,
and thought the conclusion good. than euery man departed, and
brought the knyghtes of Sizile to their loggyng, and did them aH
the honour and chere that men myght do yn suche cas. Daidid made 20
his knyghtes that he had sente yn-to Sizile, to suppe with hym that
nyght, to telle hym and the Constable of ffrance, & the AdmyraH
of Englonde of their tidynge, bothe of their departyng & of their
demeanyng, and of aH the manere of the contre / than the two 24
knyghtes tolde hem suche tidynge as they knewe, and of the olde
woman / yn what wise she wolde a betraide theym / and hou they
escope, and were reskowd by fferauntes brother / and hou he made
them to be conduyte then in alle haste to the kynge of Sizile, 28
whom they founde assantyng right a faire towne / & wanne it. than
they tolde the noblesse of Surnome, and all the honour they hadde
herde of hym, and aH that they had sene hym do / & what honour
he put them to bifore the kynge / and hou he was the moost 32
amyable persone that euir they sawe, daies of their lif / and they
wende that nature coude not, nor neuir sholde, make no suche / And
so moche they seide of hym, that alle the lordes that were there / and
alle othir, had grete mervaile ; and if the knyghtes that tolde it had 36
not ben of their age the moost renommed of sadnesse & trouthe yn
the cristen Armee / they coude not haue bileued them / for suche
worthynes, bounte, & beaute, semyd them ympossible to be yn one
persone. Also the knyghtes seide of the kynge of Sizile moche 40

honour / and tolde yn what maner he excused hym, wherof alle the
lordes that were there thought them self culpable, seyyng, "verily
that they did ille, *pat* they had not sente one to hym bfore the
4 departyng of the armee fro Scotland, for to haue had som of his
folkes to be conduyte by. Nowe was alle thinge yn suche cas that
it was past remedy" / wherfore they praied god that the remenaunt
of their viage might be ¹bettir conduyte, and more to their honour
8 and profite / Than tolde they hem that, "by the noblesse of Le
Surname / the hardynesse of alle them of Sizile was redoubled / for
where .vj. of the Turkes haue put to discomfiture .xx^{ti}. Sezillions &
moo / at this day it is the contrarie; for it faileth not, but vj.
12 Sizillions are worth xx^{ti} turkes / and they thynke verily / that, and
they myght ones ioyn with the turkes, they sholde lightly wyne
the our hand of them." The iiij. knyghtes of Sizile suppid yn a
nother vesseh, rehersyng ther aft the wynnyng of the towne, and
16 the manere of the ij. knyghtes / and howe they were knowen for
their prowes; & reported grete honour of them / and seide vnto hem
that accompanied them / "if alle ye be such as they .ij. are / I wote
wele the turkes shalle not longe abide you." Of this tidynges were
20 alle they ioifulle that herde hem, and coude the ij. knyghtes right
grete thanke, that so wele aquytte them / and so did they to the
knyghtes of Sizile / that so honorably reported them. Aftir soper,
eueri man drew hym to his loggyng / for to be vp on the morow
24 betymes, for to redye hem to departe the next day / thus eueri man
went to his vesseh. Nowe I pray god conduyte them / for this
nyght toward the point of day befelt them a meruailous harde
fortune, as ye shalle here folowynge.

28 **B**Etweene midnyght and the point of the day, grete wynde &
tempest aros vpone the see, yn such wise that the shippes
tumbled as they shold alle to-breke; and at the point of the day the
tempest was grettir than bfore / and the wawes came with such
32 violence, that eueri wawe came in-to the shippes, and our them
an C. galons of water at ones / oure goode cristen men, seyng
this huge tempest, feh on their knees with their handes ioyned
toward the heuen / bisechyng god of mercy, reheryng vnto hym /
36 that they were departed out of their contre & possessions to do
hym ²seruice, & had also forsaken fadir & modir, wif & childe,
only for his seruice, bisechyng hym to gene hem that grace / that
they might wele retourne ayen yn-to their contrees. At that tyme
40 was the noise so grete a-monge the Nauuee, that the Soudan & alle his

The Allies
confess that
they ought
to have
warded the
King of
Sicily of
their coming.

[¹ leaf 40]

The 4 Sicilian
Knights
praise the
2 Scotch
Knights.

A tremend-
ous tempest
rises.

The Allied
fleet pray
God for
mercy.

[² lf. 40, bk.]

The hideous
tempest
makes the
Allied Fleet
cut their
cables.

Some ships
dash to-
gether.

Earl Douglas
laments the
danger.

The Prince's
ship runs
ashore, and
breaks up.

[2 leaf 41]

Prince David
gets to land,
and is attackt
by Turks.

company were full ioifult / for they might wele here them / and a
myle beyonde that he was. It is to thinke, that of this grete and
hidious tempest they were gretely reioised / trustyng it sholde do
grete hurt to the cristen armee / and so it did / for this tempest 4
contynued til the sonne risyng / and brought them to suche necessite
that they cutte their cables & drew vp their sailes, and put them
alle in the auenture of god / many shippes were dryuen forth with
the wynde / some caste hider and thider with the wa[w]es / that had 8
neither saile ne maste / nor noman so hardy that durst conduyte
the steerne; som of the shippes russet to-gedir, that they alle to-
brake; & some drawe forth, waityng but dethe. The Erle douglas,
that was in Dauid vesselt, made the moost pitous compleyntes that 12
any man might make; for he sawe wele by the shippes that
perissshed & drowned afore hym / and also by othir that he sawe
dryue forth with the wynde, som without either saile or maste /
that all was yn auenture to be drowned / than seide he thus / that 16
alle might here that were aboute hym / "A! ffortune male-eurus / I
thought me highly honoured to haue in my conduyte the eldest
sone of my souerayn lorde, yn so grete a seruice as the seruice of
god / nowe se I wele, that to god pleasith neither his seruice nor 20
myn / but rather we must dye / and ende oure lyues wrecchidly /
and of þat dethe þat yn this world y moost dredde. A! my
creatour! I pray the resceyue the sowles of my maister and of vs
alle yn this company, yn-to thy glorie / and knowe wele, that for the¹ 24
we are in this cas, and for doying vnto the, seruice / we are come to
oure dethe" / Such wordes and compleintes made the Erle Douglas,
that was a full wise and a worthy knyght / and yit was that vessel
stille at ancre, and so was noon of the company but they / they 28
thought with euery wave the vesselt shold all to-breke / "& than,"
seide the maryners, "it behoueth to put vs in the auenture of god."
the yonge Dauyd, seying this dolorous fortune, was agreable to cutte
the cables / and anone as they were cutte, the vesselt smote a londe 32
streight before the Soudan / and brake all on peces / and so ther
escope noon, but alle were drowned saue Dauyd and Erle douglas,
and vj. othir persones, that with helpe of boordes droof² to Londe,
whiche was ther ny / then had the Turké of his cruelte com- 36
maundid, that if any of fortune came a-lyue to londe / that they
sholde sle them without raunsome / and whane his people sawe this
yonge Dauyd, they came to sle hym / and that, sawe the Erle

¹ the = thi

- Douglas, and sterte bifore hym / to diffende hym / but his helpe
auailed not / for anon he was slayne at his maisters fete / and so
were alle they that came with hym / saue hym self / and he, seyng
4 hym in this daunger, withdrew he hym, and set his bakke ayenst a
litle rokke was ther / trustyng to diffende his lif / and that it shold
be dere boughte to som of them that wolde sle hym / & than he
thought his dethe sholde be the more easy / and that eueri noble
8 man of honour wolde haue the more pyte of his dethe / so put he
hym vtirly yn the handes of god / and leyde so aboute hym that
noman durst approche hym / for he slewe of them many. The
Soudan, that saw the armes that he did / yn his hert had grete
12 despite / and spake a-lowde / “what! shaft o. cristen man discom-
fort this armee / if there were any noble man amonges you, he shold
endure but litle while” / he had a sone of the age of xx^{ti} or .xxiii^{ti}
yere, that behelde aft this, & had grete pite of this yonge lorde of
16 Scotland, that so manly diffendid hym / and meued with suche
pite / ayenst the wylt of his fadir, he went to hym, brekyng the
prees / & made eueri man to withdrawe fro hym / and sithe seide
vnto hym / “my frende, thou seest clerely that thy strength may
20 not auaille the / & that thou stryuest and feightist without reason /
but yelde the to me with thy fre wille / and I shall brynge the to
the Soudan, and pray hym for the.” whan pore Dauid herd thies
wordes, he was not of a grete while so glad as aftir the auenture
24 that god had sent hym / for he knewe wele that he had spake to
hym / was a lorde of grete estate / bothe by his aray / and by the
obeisaunce that alle men did vnto hym / and thus he answerd hym,
“My Lorde, ye se yn what cas y am / if I feight in diffendyng my
28 lif, noman blame me, for I haue sene your folkes take litle pite oñ
any of vs / alas! what may vj. pore persones do ayenst alle your
company, whiche were fallen yn your mercy / & humbly asked
your grace & mercy / and, sauf I. allone, they are alle slayne / many
32 folkes shalle calle this rather rigour & tiranny than any honour /
but of the offre that ye haue made me, right humbly, my lorde, I
thanke you / and I. yelde me to you / here is my swerde” / whiche
he delyuered hym / & seide, “In you is my lif and dethe, whiche,
36 I had not be the trust of youre assuraunce, y wolde a done my
payne a litle lenger to diffende / so demeane ye me as it pleasith
you.” And this yonge sone of the Soudone, named Orcays, assured
hym on his feith. and aftir that, was noon so hardy that durst
40 approche hym / thus was yonge Dauid takyn / & brought by

Prince David
defends him-
self,

and kills
many Turks.

The Sultan's
son, Prince
Orcays, pities
Prince David,

who gives up
his sword to
him.

[1 lf. 41, bk.]

The Sultan
wants to
kill Prince
David;

but his son
Orcays tells
his Father

that he will
die with
David,

who yet says
he is ready to
die joyfully.

He prays God
to receive his
soul.

[¹ leaf 42]

The Sultan
orders Prince
David to be
kept prisoner.

Orcays bfore his fader / whiche made hym take of his helme / and sawe hym, of visage and body, of right excellent beaute / and saide to his sone, "ye wol nedely take this man prisoner / but it is bettir lete hym dye than lyue, without he wol bileue as we do / for he is 4 meruailously shapen to do armes, as ye haue sene hym proued by experience / and if ye be so content / me thinketh best / that men delyuer the worlde of hym lightly" / this yonge Orcays, heryng his fadir, was yn grete sorow and displeasir / & thought yn him self 8 that he shold sle hym also with his prisoner / and seide vnto his fader. "My Lord, the first prisoner that euer was taken with my handes y haue brought bfore you; the payne that y had yn takyng hym was not grete / without any stroke he put his trust yn me / 12 where nomañ durst come ny hym / & leue not / that yn one man be the power to destroie this company / wherfore ye nede not to haue no drede of hym / but ye may do with hym & me your pleasir / for y thinke not he shaft die without me / seyng the feith that I haue 16 promysed hym; and if any othir than ye lay hand on hym, he may be sure to repente it, for y shaft diffende hym to my power while y haue any lif" / and thies wordes seide Orcays so vigorously, that his visage wex al rede. All this vndirstode wele, this yonge Dauyd, 20 with visage assured / as he that abode the dethe / without haunyng any regarde to his lif, seide to the Soudan yn this wise / "Sir, y holde me wele ewred of the wordes I haue herde you sey of me / & be ye assured, yf y die, y shaft die with ioie to thynke for whos sake 24 it is / for of my lif y rekke fuH litle / if it please my creatour, y haue lyued y-nough / sith this day y haue sene so many a notable man die befor me / and y haue no wiH to leue their company / for y am wele assertayned that be this houre their dethe is to them right 28 ioifult / I am yolden to this lorde bfore you vpone his feith / y wote not who he is / but forthwith y aquyte hym therof, & pardone hym and you also my dethe / prayng to our lorde, at my dethe to resceyue my soule." The Soudan, heryng his sone speke, seyng 32 hym vtirly wroth, had pite of him / and aH-be-it he was ¹right hard / yn corage ayenst alle cristen / yet had he pite also of Dauyd / that so hardly spake, & with so stable manere, abidyng dethe with suche corage / that to beholde, he was aH recomforted / and so he 36 answerd his sone, not geuyng hym no surete of his prisoners lif / bade him lede his prisoner where he wolde, so he were kepte sure / "and y shaft take aduise here-on / and shaft speke with you / and y doute not, aftir ye haue herde me, ye shaft be content of that / that 40

I wolt do" / Thus this Orcays sent forth his prisoner; but for drede
 that men sholde do hym any hurte, he kepte hym all that nyght yn
 his chambre, without departyng fro hym, for he knewe the cruelte
 4 of his fadir such that, & he might gete him at large / he wolde
 make hym to be slayne / and thenne wolde he laugh ther-ate / as
 though a had made kyl a dog / or som othir vnthrifty beste / and
 for thies doutes kepte he contynuelly his prisoner with hym / and
 8 as a bridle is assottid on hir make / so was Orcays of Dauyd.
 ¶ After this grete tempest was thus befallen vnto the cristen
 Navee / ye may thinke welle / that the vessells helde not all one
 wey / for som arryued by infortune amonges the sarasynes / wherof
 12 som were kepte as prisoners / and some were put to pore occupa-
 cions, as to kepe shepe & bestes / for they solde the cristene men as
 they wolde selle catelle / and they that had bought theym, bete
 theym euery day like dogges, and they did not wele that / that they
 16 had yn charge / the tothir vesselles to whiche god wold extende his
 grace / aryued / som yn ffraunce, som yn Englund / som in Scot-
 land / many aryued yn othir cristen reaumcs / wherby the sorow-
 fulle tidynges were sone spredde thorough-out alle cristendome / and
 20 sone came to the knowlage of the kynges of ffraunce, of Englund
 and of Scottes / that were hugely sorowfulle of that ynfortune / and
 eche of theym made grete enquerre after their frendes & seruantes /
 but noon ther was that coude assertayne theym what folkes were
 24 saued or loste / euery man trusted his frende were sauf, their hertes
 desired it so moche. The kynge of ffraunce vndirstode verily that
 the moost parte of his folkes shold retourne / so did the kynge of
 Englund and the kynge of Scottes / that euery day herkened for
 28 tidynges of his sone, pat he loued asmoche as any fadir might do
 his childe / and trusted moche yn the wisdom and conduyte of the
 goode Erle Douglas / that had the gouernaunce aboute hym / A
 grete while thought he that he herde no tidynges of them .ij., for
 32 there were come many othir / & of the reume of Scotland were
 not loste past .vj. shippes / the Erle Bussaunt was sauf, & many
 othir notable men of Scotland / the grete losse was in Dauyd
 vessell, for it is to thinke that yn his vessell was many a notable
 36 man. Of Englund came ageyn many / bothe the Admyrall / and
 the moost parte of the noble men that went forth, but som were
 loste. Of the reume of ffraunce came ageyn many / but the goode
 Constable abode / men wist not whedir he was drowned or takyne.
 40 ffor final conclusioun, euery man of this thre reaumcs trusted wele

The Turkish
 Prince
 Orcays is
 captivated
 with Prince
 David the
 Christian.

Some Chris-
 tians are
 sold like
 chattels and
 treated like
 dogs by the
 Turks.

The Kings
 of France,
 England, and
 Scotland
 grieve over
 the losses of
 their Expe-
 dition.

[1 ff. 42, bk.]

that their frendes were sauf. Aftir the retourne of hem that were come ageyne, y can thinke the iiijth parte of this arme was myssed, of such as were takyn, & suche as were drowned / tho that the kynge of Sizile had sent to Dauyd were saued / as for the two 4 knyghtes that had been with the kyng in message / y wote ner whethir they were saued or not / for y fynde no more of theym.

The King of Sicily reproaches himself as partly the cause of his Allies' loss.

YE shalle retourne to the kynge of Sizile, that fulle sone was assertayned of this ynfortune, wherof he was so sorowfull 8 that noman might recomfort hym / and iuged him self yn party the cause of this auenture; &, as a man enraged with sorowe, cursed the houre of his birthe / & wisshed hym ded / sith thorough his defeaute & negligence, so many notable prynces & lordes were 12 perissshed and dede of so lamentable a dethe / and seide / "y wote wele / and y had aquytte me to them as y shold / they had bene a londe / & noon of all this ynfortune had happed; but wele y wote, the turkes shold sone a be destroyed / and this londe set yn a perfit 16 reste / But now sheweth wele god / that y am not to hym agreable / and that I haue done some synne that displeasith hym" / ye may thinke that yif the kynge of Sizile had such wordes / that eche of the iij. kynges, [of] ffraunce, Englund, & of Scotland were of 20 semblable condicioun, thynkyng yn hem self / that the seruise that they did to god was not to him agreable / for by their owne corage they knewe wele they had done this seruise more for veynglory, and to haue a renome, than for the loue of god / and therfore they 24 thought the iugement of god, and his stroke, resonable / thus their owne conscience iuged. The kyng of Scottes compleyned hym / "Alas! y haue sent my sone, for that the kynges of ffraunce & of Englund put it on me / & for myn honoure y durst not refuse it / 28 and yf y had not dred shame, he had ben yit stille with me / at his departyng y had suche sorowe that noman might comforte me / and for thies thinges, y wote wele y haue displeasid god / and haue not done as did Abraham by Isaac his sone / y offred not seruise to 32 god of my childe / but y offred to the worlde, & for drede to haue had shame / god that is iuste / and that knoweth the condicions of man and their thought, hath refused this seruise, as he did the sacrifice that Caym did / and he hath good right / but myn owne 36 sone, that with my trespas might no thyng do / wente with so grete corage & desire, that me semeth / god ought to haue pite on hym. As for my self, I crye god mercy / & besече hym to haue pite on my childe / where-som-euir he be" / and thus yn secrete 40

The Three Kings think this

Judgment of God deserved.

[1 leaf 43]

The King of Scots says that God has refused the service of the Allies.

place the pore kynge of Scottes made his compleinte, wepyng alwey
 & prayng to oure lord for his sone / The kyng of England, on his
 party, remembred also / how longe he had taried to sende socour to
 4 the kynge of Sizile / and yit had noon sende hym, if he might by
 any meanes a left of / and so he sende more for drede of shame
 than for the loue of god / and yit he felte himself ferther culpable,
 for asmoche as he had leide the charge to the kynge of Scottes to
 8 sende forth his sone / whiche was so goodly a yong man / and now
 is lost thorough his counsell / and yit he did it to thentent but to
 cause the armee to breke / and for this / he thought wele god was
 displeased *with* hym / and of right hath refused his seruise. The
 12 kynge of fraunce had sent his armee yn the company of Dauyd / and the King
of France
reproach
themselves
as to the
Sicilian Ex-
pedition.
 alle to a nothir entente than the .ij. kynges did / for he dred, if he
 sent hem not forth, that god wolde be displeased with hym / for at
 such tymes as his sone had often meued hym *with* the same, & he
 16 wold not enelyne to his request, god suffrid him to lese his sone /
 whereof he toke suche sorowe that he neuir recouered to that he
 was a-fore / and therfore lest god wolde take vengeaunce on hym,
 & aftir his dethe vpon his reame, that was fulle like to be lefte
 20 *with*oute heire / he did to god his seruise / wherfore he knewe wele
 yn hym self / that he had done this seruise to god, more fore drede
 than for loue / and therfore he thought that god was not pleased.
 Thus thies iiij. kynges that ye haue herde of, eche of theym leide
 24 grete charge to them self of the sorowfuH auenture. But ouir alle
 othir, the kynge of Scottes made grete sorowe, and alle his reame,
 for yonge Dauyd; and so did alle the iij. reaumes / for the grete
 28 vertues yn hym, eueri man perfytly loued hym / and thought it was
 to importable a losse. Thies ¹thre reaumes aforeseide / were yn [1 lf. 43, bk.]
 compleyntes & wepyng, & in especiaH for their frendes, that were
 not retourned ayen yn-to their contrees / neuirtheles, eueri man
 trusted that they were aryued in some othir lande / or takyn
 32 prisoners / and that they shold here tidynges of them / and many
 contynued yn this hope duryng their lyues, & in especiaH women,
 suche as myssed their husbondes, that neuir sawe theym aftir / and
 some ther were / that in litle while were recomforted *with* the
 36 retourne of their frendes / the fortune of this world is not like to
 euery body / But nowe y shaH leue of this sorowe, that was made
 thorough all thies reaumes / & retourne to the kyng of Sizile, that,
 aftir the destruccoon of the cristen armee, was discomforted out of
 40 mesure / neuirles, he perceyued, as a wise Prynce, that no discomfort

tells his
Council

that his
father, the
King of
Spain, won't
help them;

but they must
take heart.

He will give
his all for his
folk.

[¹ leaf 44]

They say the
Sultan will
attack them
at once.

might remedy hym / wherupone he shewed his wisdom, and put aH
his trust yn god / and assembled his grete counseH, seyng vnto
them in this wise. ¶ “My frendes, eche of you is assertayned
of this pitous auenture that is befallen vnto oure socours / yn the 4
which were so many princes and Lordes, that came to vs from iij.
reaumes / ^{bat} most might helpe vs / and it is to suppose that of
them we gete no more helpe / and y holde this company, or the
most part therof, loste, whiche kan not be without grete hurte, 8
losse, & sorowe to the iij. kynges and reaumes / and therfore it
behoueth vs to take hede to oure self / I haue often sent vnto my
fadir, the kynge of Spayne, and we can haue no socour; thens this
reaume is yn grete auenture, but god of his grete mercy helpe / and 12
sith it is so / we haue the more nede diligently to beholde what is
to do / than euir we had / for oure hope of othir nowe is failed vs /
lete vs do oure self what we may / for othir comfort may we not
abide / My frendes, I pray eche of you to take good corage / & be 16
content to obeie and abide the wille of oure lorde / & to take suche
part yn pacience, as he wol sende / and y sey for me, that haue
more to lese than any of you / y shalt comfort me yn god, and yn
the helpe of you, my trewe frendes / and yn your good counsell, 20
whiche y wol vse, and be redy to auenture my body, my lif, & my
good amonges you, requiryng you alle, & eche of you, to yeue me
counsell, comfort and helpe / & to aise shortly what y haue to do.”
Thus the kynge of Sizile spake to his folkes, with teres trikelýng 24
downe oñ his visage, whiche caused alle them that herde hym to
haue grete ¹pite and wille to helpe to diffende his reaume. And
they Aunswerde hym: “sir, to holde longe counsell is not profit-
able, for it behoueth you shortly to conclude; for ye may thinke 28
wele that the Soudan is enhaunced yn suche pride by the destruc-
cion of thies cristene folkes, that hym thinketh the sonne and
the sterres shold honoure hym / and that no thinge sholde holde
party ayenst hym / wherfore it is to suppose that he wol come yn 32 •
aH haste vpone you / ye be not of might to abide hym, seyng their
corage is redoubled / & your folkes be amated and alle yn discomfort
for this pitous auenture / wherfore y kan not thinke be no meanes
how ye may abide hym / but me semeth it is best to take aise of 36
suche as pleaseth you / & that the matier be shortly concluded, for
the cas requireth it.” The kynge perceyued that the knightes seide
trouthe, & asked ferther this knyght was the first that spake, &
answerd without tariyng, for him semed that it was tyme, and 40

seide yn this manere / " sir, the cause y presume to speke, is, for the
 matier requireth such haste; neuirtheles, lete eueri man sey, in
 discharging of his honour & trouthe / the best aulse that he can /
 4 but me semeth / if the thurke knowe you here / he wol come to
 besege you; and withoute any faile, if he haue good counsell, he
 wol do so / & if he so do / & ye abide him, ye haue no vitaille for
 your armee, wherfore ye may not longe holde party ayenst hym /
 8 & as for feightyng / y haue seide myn aduise / seyng his folkes so
 moche yn comfort, & youres yn dispeire / But me thinketh that yn
 this towne, that is right stronge & wele furnysshed with orden-
 aunce, ye may leue a ij. M^t of good men / and a good Captayne, or
 12 ij. of the moost notable of your armee / And your self, to-night or to
 morowe at the point of the day, to departe to Naplis, where-as the
 quene is, with alle the remenaunt of your company / whiche hath at
 this houre, y dare sey, right grete sorowe yn hir herte; and if the
 16 turke came bifore hir, she is yit right feibly acompayned. and yf
 ye go thider, ye may so wele puruay you, & so wele furnyssh the
 towne with men, ordenaunce & vitaille, that if the turke come
 bifore you he shaH more lose than wyne / for the lenger he lith
 20 ther / the more shal he spende of his good and lese of his men, &
 shaH haue asmoche of youres at his goyng / as he had the first day
 he came. And nowe lete vs nomore trust on rescue / but put oure
 only truste yn god / and y trust he shaH helpe ^{1 vs bettir than we} [1 lf. 44, bk.]
 24 can thinke / a[n]d therefore lete not oure hertis faile vs for noon
 y[n]-fortune that is fallen yit / for he may socour vs whan it pleasit
 hym " / The knyght that spake thies wordes, was fferaunt the
 SenesshaH, that gladly was herkenyd of alle folkes / & gaue grete
 28 corage to eche of theym / Aftir thies wordes, the kyng askid alle the
 remenaunt of lordes, knyghtes and squyers, of their aduise; and yn
 conclusioun they were of the opinion of fferaunt / & preised gretly
 his wit & counsell / seiying that it was tyme nowe to leue of alle
 32 sorowe & lamentacion for any fortune that was befaller / & to put
 alle thyng yn foryetyng / sauf only to pray god for the soules of
 suche as haue lost their lyues yn thies viage, and eueri man to calle
 vnto hym a desirous corage & good wille to aulse to the defence &
 36 kepyng of the reaume. And they in alle poyntes concluded &
 folowed the opinion of fferaunt / The kyng, heryng thies wordes,
 was right gretely recomforted & reioiced of the corage that his
 owne suggestes yaue hym / and ordeyned fferaunt to abide yn this
 40 place accompanied with ij. M^t men, suche as he wolde chese / and

Ferant ad-
 vises the
 King to leave
 2000 men in
 Sicily, and go
 himself to
 Naples.

The rest of
 the Council
 agree.

So Ferant
is made Cap-
tain,

chooses 2000
men (with
Prince Phi-
lip),

and places his
artillery.

The King
starts for
Naples.

[leaf 45]

The Sultan
is fild with
pride,

and boasts of
the favour of
his Gods.

made hym Capteyn of them alle. fferaunt refused not, but rathir /
with good herte & noble corage, right gladly toke on hym the
abidyng & garde of that place / and right lightly chase oute the
nombre of ij. M^t; and eche of theym bode with hym with right 4
good wilt / for the grete wisdom & noble pat was yn hym / whan
Le Surnome knewe that his maister abode, ther was no thinge
coude make hym so glad / for he thought wele to se this towne
biseged / whiche he had neuir sene to-fore, trustyng euery day to 8
do armes, whiche was the thyng he moost desired / and thought
hym self wele fortuneted to be yn seruyse with suche a maister as
fferaunt was. thus aH the nyght fferaunt leide & establisshed his
ordenaunce yn the moost propre places / wher-of he was right wele 12
puruaide / And at the pointe of day came to the kynge, that than
was at masse, and redy to departe / & so he toke his leue of hym
and of alle his company, certifying hym that he shold kepe that
place to his power / and not departe therfro but acordyng to his 16
trouthe & his pore honour / Aftir masse, the kynge toke his leue to
departe, of fferaunt and alle his company, prayng them full hertly
that eche of them wold peyne hym to do wele, and to obeie fferaunt
their Capteyne / whiche he had lefte ther as his ¹lieutenaunt, pro- 20
mysyng hem alle that, in obeyng fferaunt, he wolde con hem
asmoche thanke, or more, than if it were to his owne persone. Thus
departed he fro them / takyng the ²wey streight to the place where
as the quene was, & his doughter / and aH this while he was in 24
grete thought & drede; neuirtheles he comforted hym in aHnighti
god, in whom was aH his truste. fferaunt abode stille in the place /
and be than the sonne was vp, he had delyuered euery man his
charge, suche as he thought them moost meete vnto / ¶ Now shalle 28
we retourne to the turke, that was on the see side, in suche pride
that almoost noman durst approche hym, & wende wele to be
kynge of aH the worlde / and that his renome sholde sprede ferthir
than euir did Alisaundres. The night aftir the perdicion of the 32
cristen Navee, he made him to be serued more rially than euir he
was bifore / and aH that day abode yn his loggyng, for the fortune
endured til it was nere noone / so aftir soper he sent for his folkes,
to take a conclusion of his departyng, & seide vnto them: "Sires, 36
ye se wele the grace and myracle that oure goddes haue shewed for
vs this day / ye haue sene that, in turnyng of an hande / the grete
pride of the cristen is ouirthrowen / and ye may wele thinke that

² MS. they.

- the kyng of Sizile and alle his folkes shalle now lese corage, knowing the myracles of oure goddes; and their hardynesse shall falle & mynyssh / and contrary therto, I trust oures shall encrease / for we
4 may clerely se that oure goddes wolke helpe vs / & we may be called of slak corage, & vnhappy / if we wyne not yn short tyme the remanaunt of this reaume, that is fult ny aȝ oures. And it be-
houeth vs to put peyne to the rescuse of my brother, the kyng of
8 Peerce / that y suppose haue grete sorowe yn his herte, that he was not here this day / to se the miracle that oure goddes haue shewed for vs / wherfore lete vs put our deuoir to accomplishe the reme-
naunt that oure goddes haue so wele begonne" / and eueri man
12 concludid that it was tyme now to put hem in deuoir, and alle accorded yn one, that the Turke, with aȝ his grete might, shold ley sege to the towne of Siz / that was wonne but late by his
enemys / and he sholde wyne it as lightly ayen / & they thought
16 wele that there was noon that durst abide the anenture ther, without the kyng were there him self; and if he were there, they wold trust sone to haue hym / to this conclusion helde they,
¹ trustyng that yn that place, nor yn noon othir, shold they fynde [1 lf. 45, bk.]
20 noon that might endure ayenst hem / for they thought alle their enemyes were discouraged / and they auised the turke to abide ther ij. or iij. daies, to thentent that he & alle his folkes might departe
at their ease and leiser / whiche turned hem rather to hurte than
24 auantage / for their abidyng was to fferant & his folkes gretly available / for yn that tyme thei fortified their towne bigger than
enir it was / for there was neither knyght ne squier but labored right diligently ther-yn / who had sene the labour that Surnome
28 toke / and knowyng what he was, wold a merueled / for like as he past them alle yn armes / paste he them alle in labour / and that he did it with so good wille that alle men had ioie to beholde hym / Thus in litle while they were so wele fortified & assured, that they
32 thought right longe of the Turkes comyng. [Illumin.: knights, poor men.]
- N**OW came the day that the turke had apointed to departe. ye knowe wele that it is a grete daies iourney to departe with suche a company / he went that day but a leege and a
36 half fro thens as he lay / and sent some of his fore-riders to herkene tidynges of the kyng of Sizile & his company / and they toke some of the pore folkes fulle ny the garison of fferant / by whom
they knewe for certayne that the kyng of Sizile was departed, and
40 had lefte a grete garisone yn the place that he had wonne; & they

The Sultan says they must rescue his brother, the King of Persia,

and besiege Siz.

The Turks dawdle for 2 or 3 days,

while Ferant strengthens Siz.

The Turks hear that the King of Sicily has gone,

and that the
Sicilians are
confident.

[1 leaf 46]

Prince Or-
cays asks
Prince David
who he is,
and wants
him to turn
Mahomedan.

David re-
fuses;

and says
he's a poor
gentleman
named Athys.

purposed to kepe it, & defende it ayenst the Turke & his power /
and they tolde hem also / that as for the mysfortune of the cristen
men þat were drowned yn the see / the hardynes & wille of the
Sizilions was no thyng mynysshed, but rather encreased, for they 4
sawe wele they had noon othir comfort but god, and with his
helpe they purposed to defende them self and their goodes to their
1 power / his knyghtes retourned ayen þat night yn-to the turkes
hoste, where they reported as they had herde & founde, & brought 8
the pore folkes that they had takyn, by-fore the turke / that herde
hem speke, and fonde yn them the same that his foreriders tolde
hym; wherfore he purposed on the morowe to be loggid but a litle
leege from the place that he purposed to ley sege to. That night 12
Orcays felle in questionyng with his prisoner, & askid him his name,
& of what blode he was descendid / and what he purposed to do /
shewyng hym that by reason he ought to turne to their feithe,
seyng the gre[te] miracles that their goddes had shewed / with many 16
moo wordes / whiche were to longe to reherce / but in conclusion he
seide vnto hym / that pouerte shold not lette hym to be of their
creaunce / for if it were his pleasir to be so / he shold be most yn
fauour aboute hym of alle othir. Dauid answerd hym / and of his 20
grete bounte right humbly thanked hym / and if his wille were to
turne to othir creaunce than his predecessours had alwey holden,
the grete loue & honour of hym that hath saued his lif / shold
rather make hym to enclyne ther-to, than any othir thinge / but he 24
was determyned yn his feithe to dye / for to suffre as grete martir-
dome as was possible any man to endure / wherfore he bisought
him to speke no more ther-of, for it sholde be in veyn / but humbly
beseching him from thensforth to helpe hym / for yn his contre he 28
was a gentilman / but at this houre he trowed there lyued not a
porer nor a more redeles / and as for his name, it was Athys / and
trustid that his fadir & moder were lyuyng, which were of full litle
power to helpe hym, or to brynge hym oute of thies daungers. whan 32
Orcays herd hym thus sey, he had grete pite of hym / & askid him
if he had any maister / or whedir his maister were dede / Athys
answerd hym / "the same to whom y obeied, was slayne euyn at
my fete there as y landid / wherof grete sorowe befelle me, & me 36
thought it grete cruelte / for he wold a yelde him to the Soudone /
that, affir his takyng, might a done with him what he wolde / as ye
may do with me whan it pleasith you / that of your grete bounte
haue saued me vnto this tyme." Orcays was right sorowfull that 40

- he might not turne his prisonere to his beleue / and sawe wele that
 their company might not longe contynue, whiche greued hym right
 sore / for moche he loued hym, for that he ¹sawe hym bothe amy- [1 ff. 46, bk.]
 4 able, wise, and worthi / and bithought hym self hou he might saue
 hym / for he knewe wele / that with them might he not abide
 without holdyng their lawe / or ellis dye / and he knewe wele that
 his fader desired gretely his dethe / & so he remembred hym of a Prince Or-
cays recol-
lects the
custom that,
 8 good costom that was amonges them, whiche was alwey kepte
 amonges notable princes, and by that he was verily assertayned to
 saue his prisoners lif / The costom was this / than whan the sone when a prince
takes his first
prisoner,
 12 that euir he toke yn his lif, what-som-euir he were worth / if he
 were not the chiefteyne of the warres / he shold horse hym & he may equip
him and set
him free.
 harneyse hym honorably, and geue hym a C. scutes / and make
 him to be surely conduyte vnto his parties / & thus thought he to
 16 do by his prisoner / for he knewe wele his fadir might not lette hym
 ther-of / for, and he did it, shold be to hym an ouir grete reproche /
 In this thought went he to his fadir, and seide vnto hym / "My So he asks
his father,
the Sultan,
 20 the tothir day, at the fortune that befelle them, y toke hym with
 my handes prisoner / and saued his lif / wherof ye wolde a done me
 grete wronge / yf ye had put him to dethe, contrary to my promys &
 assuraunce / whiche had be to grete a shame, if my first feith that
 24 euir y yaue yn armes, sholde a be so shamefulli broke / wherfore if
 y² were soroufuH & somewhat greued yn my mynde, ye ought to
 take no displeasir / for y knowe wele what the costom ys of alle
 reaumes here a-boute / & also of your self and of your predecessours /
 28 that whan they haue ben in suche cas, they haue delyuered hir first
 prisoners / & y am remembred for certayne that ye haue done the
 same yn your tyme / and y trust verrily that ye wilt in no thing
 amenysshe me / & that ye haue noon othir entent / but that y may
 32 & shalt do / as they of the lyne fro whens y came haue done bifore
 me / that is, to geue leue to my prisoner / and to araie hym as y to let him
free his
prisoner,
Prince Da-
vid.
 ought / with this / to make hym to be surely conduyte vnto the
 cristen folkes; and hereof humbly y beseche you /" The Turke,
 36 herynge his sone speke yn suche wise, coude hym yn his herte full
 grete thanke / & knewe wele that, by reason & honour, his request
 might not be denyed / albe-it that of this delyueraunce his hert yaue
 hym right ille, for-asmoche as he had sene hym do so moche yn

The Sultan
agrees.
[¹ leaf 47]

Prince Or-
cays tells
Prince Da-
vid, and asks
him where
he'll go.

David says,
to Siz,

and its com-
mander,
Ferant.

So Prince Or-
cays equips
David,

[² If. 47, bk.]

and tells the
Sultan all
about it.

armes. Neuir⁴theles he agreed to the request of his sone / and
bade hym yet assay to conuerte the cristen man vnto their lawe.
His sone saide / *pat* so he had done / but in no wise he wold be
agreable therto. Thus departed he from his fadir / & wente to his 4
prisoner, and tolde him alle howe he had downe *with* his fadir / and
that a conclusion was takyn that he shold departe on the morowe,
wherfore he wold wite whider he wolde go / either to the kynge of
Sizile or elliswhere / for whider that eur he wolde / he wolde 8
puruay him to be surely conduyte / and tolde hym that on the
morowe they alle sholde departe to ley sege to a cristen place, that
but litle bifore was conquered on his fadir / and tolde him hou it
was not stronge, wherfore it might no while be kepte ayenst hem. 12
when Athis herde thies tidynges, that ther was a cristen place so
nygh, that sone sholde be biseged / yif he were glad, it is no de-
maunde / and aftir the thankynges that he made vn-to Orcays his
maister / as right wise & wele aduised, & as he that coude aH 16
honour / he saide vnto hym / that for no thyng wolde he go
ferthir than to the next place, not shewyng no semblaunt that it
was of any desire to be yn the warres, but for drede to be ferre con-
duyte / and for periles that might ensue therof / and he enquerid 20
of Orcays who was *withyn* that place / he answerd, "that it was
one fferaunt, the SeneshaH of Sizile, that was there" / Assone as
Athis herde hym named / he knewe wele that it was the same *with*
whom the Valiaunt maz dwelled, that he had herde so moche speke 24
of / and if his wille were bifore to go vnto that place / it was more
now by a C. part / Orcays his maister, of good wille counseiled hym
to the contrary, seyng / "my frende, this place may not endure
ayenst oure power / and if ye taken wit-yn it / y know, my lord, 28
my fadir is such a man that all the worlde may not saue you /
wherfore y counseile you to drawe to som other parte / and drede
not, but y shall se you to be surely conduyte." But for no thyng
that Orcays coude sey / coude he meue Athis from his opinion, 32
wherof he was right sory. Then he yaue hym the best hors that
he had, and the harneys that he was armyd yn hym-self / whiche
was at that tyme as good & as faire as any might be / and yaue
him an C. floreyms / & concluded that on the morow, when they 36
came to their loggynges, ²he wolde sende hym surely conduyte to
the towne. Than tolde he his fadir thentent of his prisoner / by
the whiche purpose he ymagyned more & more, that yn this man
shold be right grete honour and corageous wille / nertheles, sith he 40

had promysed his sone, he wolde not breke his promes, but was
agreable to that his sone had ordeyned / and on the morowe they
departed, and came withyn litle while to the towne / and than
4 Orcais called his prisoner, and saide vnto hym / "Athis, my
frende, the tyme is come now of oure departyng / but, & my com-
pany were asmoche desired of you / as youres is of me / it sholde
be harde to make the departyng / nertheles, y had leuer we sholde
8 departe, than my fadir shold put you to dethe / se yondir the cristene
towne that my fadir entendith to ley sege to / but y pray you, go
not thider / & y vndirtake ye shall be sauflly brought whidir euir
ye will ellis / but y know wele, and ye go thider, ye may neurir
12 departe thens withoute dethe." Athis answerd then, & seide, "my
lorde, y betake me vnto the garde of hym that hath brought me
here; and sith that it pleasith you to do me this grace, to yeue me
leue, I beseche you that y may be conduyte to yondir place" /
16 Orcays toke him forth with him, & brought him to his fadir / to
take his leue of him, aH armed as he was. The turke was at that
tyme out of his tente, acompanyed with many prynces / he sawe
his sone bryngyng his prisoner, & seide to theym / "se, my sone,
20 how grete desire he hath to delyuer this man / and he hath right /
but aH-wey my herte yeueth me ilt ther-of" / and some of theym
seide / "my lord, what may o man do by his delyueraunce / litle
harme may growe ther-of" / and at this wordes approached Orcays /
24 and seide vnto his fadir, aH smylyng / "my lorde, y haue brought
you this cristen to take his leue / thus abiled as ye se / & yif I
might haue bettir apoynted hym, y wolde with aH my herte." The
prisoner alight, & toke his leue at the Turke & alle the company
28 that was ther / & humbly thanked Orcays his maister / prayng god
to yeue him grace to do some seruise to his pleasir, sauynge his
feith / and thus departed he, acompayned with many herowdes of
armes purceuauntes, that brought hym to the barres where fferant
32 was, & desired to speke with him / & saide vnto hym in this wise,
"My lorde! Orcais, sone to the Turke, oure souerayn lord, at this
last auenture that befelle vpon the cristen by a vesseH that brake,
¹some of theym came to Londe, amonge whiche this was one / &
36 taken by the handes of the said Orcais; & mo was ther not saued /
And yn asmoche as this is his first prise, that by reason & for his
honour he wolt not withholde / he hath sende hym you hider yn
suche cas as ye se hym / certifyng you, that from hensforth he hath
40 done his deuoir / if any mo fal yn his handes." fferant, heryng

Prince Or-
cays is loth
to part with
Prince David.

The Sultan's
heart mis-
gives him.

But David
is taken to
Size, where
Ferant is.

[¹ leaf 48]

the heraudes speke, knewe wele that yn suche cas enery prynce or grete estate doth the same, and seide vnto the heraudes / "Orcais, your maister, hath done his deuoir / & hath right wele, and honorably aquyte hym. and now may ye withdrawe you whan it pleast 4 you"; and commaundid wyne, & made them drynke, and did them all the chere that he coude / and askid them whedir þey shold sone be biseged / the heraudes answerd / "ye may se grete liklihoodes." & more seide they not / for at that tyme they were *seruauntes com-* 8
mitted, aswele for on part as for othir, saue for their feith / Aftir the departyng of the heraudes, Athis entird yn-to the towne / ther was none acostomed so moche to honour and chere to straungers as Le Surnome; and he made him to be brought to his loggyng / & 12
made him to be vnarmed & wele loggid / & wente to se him / and whan he saw him vnarmed / he saw him so goodly a man & so personable, and yn alle his wordes so wele assured, that he had grete ioie of hym / thus eueri thinge sekith his semblable / for he that was 16
a kynges sone had grete fauour & loue to the kyng of Scottes sone / and suche loue felt bitwene them, that alwey aftir endured / and he loggid him *with* himself / and parted *with* him such goode as he had / and neur varied they yn wille or opinion / neurtheles Athys 20
alwey put hym to grete honour, & concludid verily yn his herte, that neur to no man wolde he discouere what he was, but tolde euery man that he was a pore gentilmannes sone of Scotlande. that night he was brought to fferaunt / whiche questioned him of the 24
manere of takyng of hym / and the fortune that was befallen them yn the see / & he tolde him all the trouthe / and he askid hym specialy of the knyghtes of Sizile that the kyng had sente / & he seide he knewe not what was befall of them / than were they 28
sore bemoned of fferaunt and all his company / for they were fult notable men / than praide they hym to telle them the trouthe of his takyng / and so he did / sauynge of his owne noblesse, he ¹spake not / but seide / "had not be the grace of god that he was taken by the 32
turkes sone, he had be put to dethe as alle othir were, for there was none that escape a lyue but he" / eueri man that herde him reherce his auenture, thought he had grete fortune / and thought he might not faile to be a man of right grete honour. fferaunt was right 36
ioifult of hym / and also that Surnome hadde takyne hym yn-to his company / wherof he coude him right goode thanke. the night came / and euery man drewe hym to reste aftir the Vacche was set / and yn the morowe betymes, euery man aroos, and herde masse / 40

Prince David
enters Siz,

and is wel-
comed by
Prince Phi-
lip:

like to like,
they become
fast friends.

[¹ If. 48, bk.]

Prince David
tells of his
capture, and
his fellows'
death.

- and armed hem / for they knewe wele / that day the sege sholde
 come / wherfore they were alle redy to abide suche fortune as sholde
 befall them / for they knewe wele that the Turke had sworne to
 4 take that place with assaute / and to do by them as the kynge of
 Siziles folkes did by his / but god of his grace had othirwise
 puruaide / for a grete parto of his pride was abated bifore that
 place. ¶ Now came the day, and the hoste of the turkes, with
 8 grete sowne & noise of taberynes & beaumes / they departed at
 sonne risyng in iij. bataills right wel ordeyned / and diuided theym
 selfe yn thre parties, and delyuered the charge of the tone *partie* to
 Orcais his sone / and the tothir to his Constable / and the iij^{de}. to
 12 him self / and thus alle raungid & set, euery to the place that he
 sholde abide yn for that day / for they durst not come ny for
 gunnes / but they thought, whan the night was derke, to come nere /
 & to establissh their sege / fferaunt, seyng the conduyte of his
 16 enemyes, had the yates shut, without suffryng any man to go oute,
 & made no semblaunt of warre, for this cause / that the turke & his
 hoste sholde haue more hardynes to come nere; and so did they /
 euery man came to his place apointed, & did their deuoir to dresse
 20 vp their loggynges, whiche were a good wey a-sundir / for eche of
 the iij. bataills were loggid by them self. The Turke, seyng no
 semblaunce of warre of them yn the towne / toke suche a company
 as pleasid hym, and went to his sone / to se the maner of his
 24 loggyng & of his gouernaunce. fferaunt, espiyng hym ther /
 whiche was a man of meruailous witte & prowesse, seide to his
 folkes / “ Me semeth / seyng the besynesse that oure enemyes haue to
 logge them / and that we be loggid at auantage, we ought to visite
 28 them, and to go se them a litle ner / for it semeth than that here is
 nobody / but they shalle haue knowlage that there is ” / euery ¹man
 that herde this seyng was anoon horsed. And fferaunt ordeyned /
 that ther shold go yn his company but .v. C. ; & an othir feliship
 32 sholde be redy to releue them, if nede were / and at that yate they
 roode oute, he ordeyned an othir feliship *with* grete ordenaunce of
 smale gownes / that if cas be / that they were dryuen to the yates
 ayen / as it might full wele happen them / *with* the grete company /
 36 that their enemyes had, that then they shold leuelle & shote alle at
 ones / lest their enemyes shold come to ny / And longe bifore was
 no towne bettir garnyssed than that was. This ordenaunce thus
 made / the yates were opende / and they wente out at that yate
 40 that was bifore Orcays / and the first that went oute was Surnome,

The Turks
advance in
3 battalions.

Ferant keeps
his men in
reserve.

The Sultan
goes to see
his son's en-
campment.

[1 leaf 49]

Ferant leaves
500 men at
the gate, with
cannon,

and sallies
out, with
Prince Philip

and Prince
David.

They kill
many Turkes.

More Turkish
troops come
up, and drive
the Chris-
tians back.

Prince David
takes Prince
Orcays pri-
soner.

[1 lf. 49, bk.]

The Turkes
press on to
the gates of
Siz,

and are
thrown into
disorder by
the Christian
fire, which
destroys
many of
them.

& Athys, that grete desire had to folowe hym, & to se the meruailes
yn Armes þat he hade herde speke of hym. so rode they forth as
fast as their horses might renne / tilt they came to their enemys /
at their first comyng, they slewe many / and mightly set vpon the 4
Turke, that was come thider to se his sone / but he and the moost
part of his company withdrewe them aswele as they might / whiche,
as ye knowe wele, might not be done without grete losse & damage
to the Turke & his company / for there were moo slayn of them by 8
double / than they were that assailed them / the crie aroos on alle
parties, and euery man assembled and drewe to the Turke & his
sone / & than were they so bigge, that by force they made oure
folkes to withdrawe to the remenaunt of their company that helde 12
them to-gedir / Orcays, that was yonge & corageous, came byfore
alle othir / and knewe anon his prisoner that was with Surnome,
whiche ij. were the laste that withdrewe them / he ranne so ny
that they ioyned to-gedir. Surnome, seying his felawe in daungre, 16
cam for to socoure hym / but there were so many folowyng Orcays /
that, had not their good maister fferant a bene, they had neur
retourned yn-to the towne / but he, seying his ij. seruautes in suche
daunger amonges so grete a nombre of the turkes, with alle his feli- 20
ship, at ones encountird them so vigorously, that he made them to
withdrawe more than the draught of an arowe. In this recountre
was takyn Orcays by the handes of Athis / and many moo prisoners
were ther takyne without nombre. The Turke sawe & knewe for 24
trouthe his sone to be takyn / with the handes of hym that the
night afore he had delyuered / the crie & the noise was so grete yn
the turkes hoste, that he might not haue herde a thondre, & they
resorted ayen ¹so fast / that by force they made the cristen to with- 28
drawe ayen yn-to the towne / that were folowed vnto the yatis,
which were sone closed / and anon alle the ordenaunce & Arthery
were shotte at ones amonges their enemyes / whiche were so thikke
assembled, þer might not faile to be hurte & slayne many of them / 32
whiche brought them alle out of aray / for there were so many slayne
& hurte, that it was meruaile / for they stynted not, but leide on
them with ordenaunce so sore / that the turkes wist not what to
do / fferant seying them alle out of aray, made the yates to be 36
opened ayen, & made a newe scarmysh on theym a foote / at whiche
tyme he did grete hurte to the turke and his folkes / that neur
sith were they so hardy to come so ny the towne. The cristen did
so moche that they retourned pesibly ayen to the towne. & there 40

were that day so many prisoners taken, þat men might not knowe
one fro an othir / But Athis knewe full wele his prisoner / and
what he had done for hym / and knewe wele also that it shold not
4 ly yn his power to delyuer hym / and he were ones knowen. wher-
fore, of fre and honorable corage, he brought hym oute of the towne
by an othir yate / and seide vnto hym, "Orcais! ye haue saued my Prince David
lif / and it is reason therfore that I deliuere you now, & soone, or
8 elles shaH it neur lye in my power. I can no bettir arme you than
ye be / nor bettir horse you / wherfore y gene your hors & your
harneys, that is myn be right. I pray god to conduyte you oute of
alle daungers / and now, saue your self, for it is tyme." Thus lete quietly lets
12 he his prisoner go so couertly, that noman perceyued it / and came Prince Orcays
ageyn yn-to the towne, where he founde his felawe Surnome, that
was full sory that he wist not where he was / and whan he sawe
hym come, he made him grete chere / and askid hym where his
16 prisoner was / and he seide, that at the last encountryng / he was and lies to
slayn. Surnome bileued hym wele y-nough / for there were many Prince Philip
slayn, aswele prisoners as othir. ¶ Now retourne y to the Turke, about it.
that, aftir this auenture that was full damageous vnto hym, he
20 lefte good gardes yn his sones hoste, and wente ayen hym self vnto
his tentes, where he was serued with many knyghtes & squyers /
that aH that while had kepte stille his loggyng / and at his comyng,
askid hym tidynges; & he tolde them the dolorous fortune that this
24 day was befallen hym / as to haue lost his sone, & grete part of his
people / and of the best / wherof he named grete nombre of hy and [1 leaf 50]
noble estates and valiaunt knyghtes / after this he seide to theym,
"ye sawe wele that my herte coude not assente to the delyueraunce
28 of my sones prisoner / and it was not without a resone, for y sawe
hym this day take my sone prisoner; and aftir he had ones con-
quered hym, he wold not leue hym nor fauour hym, for y sawe
hym lede hym towarde the towne / and yit y know not whedir at
32 the last encountre my sone were slayne or not / or if he be yn the
towne / nor how it is with hym." & amonge, thies wordes he seide
to them / that "there was neur houre sith y sawe this cristen man
first / but that my herte tolde me that by hym I sholde haue grete
36 damage; and so tolde y my sone alwey / and now hath he founde it."
As they were in this talkyng, euery man makyng doule, came
a mañ vnto the pauylion, and seide vnto the Turke / "sir, but then
my lorde your sone, ys sauf / for as me thought y sawe him hears tidings
40 come alone from the towne" / The turke went out / and by then of his safety.

his sone was almoost at him / whiche a-light assone as he sawe
 hym / & came to hym, & comforted hym aswele as he coude, aftir
 his grete daungere / the Turke seide, "my sone, this auenture that
 ye haue had to day, & y had ben bileued, had not befallen you / 4
 for yn this partie ye are cause of oure losse / for whan ye were
 takyne, to haue rescowed you, this grete hurte is befall me" /
 "truly, sir," quoth Orcays, "that y haue done, y holde for no grete
 dede / for the sone of a mighti kyng hath delyuerd a felaw that 8
 he knew not / which hath not ben sears, nor of so pore corage / but
 that he hath wele to his knowlage delyuerd the sone of the grettist
 kyng that leuyth" / Than tolde he his fadir the maner of Athis /
 and the wordes that he had seide / and how he had delyuerd hym 12
 frely / & had put him self in iubarde of his lif, if it were knowen ;
 "thus haue y do no thyng for hym, yn regarde to that he hath done
 for me" / the Turke, heryng his sone reherse the grete bounte of
 Athis, more & more in corage dredde hym, and seide / "yn a man of 16
 pore condicion ne might be so grete vertu ; and alwey more & more
 me thinketh he shold do vs^hharne. Nertheles, what-som-euir be-
 falle, he is a man of hy & noble corage" / than comforted he him
 aswele as he might / aftir this sharpe fortune & annoy, seyng the 20
 recouerir of his sone, he made to fortifie his sege, and made stronge
 wacche / for he sawe wele¹ that he had to do with valiaunt folkes.
 Nowe shal we leue to speke of the sege / and of alle the warres of
 Sizile, & retourne to speke of the kynges sone of Englonde, that 24
 conduyte thus, as ye sha^{ll} here.

Prince Or-
cays tells the
Sultan

how Prince
David set
him free.

The Sultan
fears Prince
David,

and strength-
ens his own
force.
[¹ If. 50, bk.]

Prince Hum-
phrey of
England

laments the
Allies' losses
in Sicily ;

but the King,
his father,
will not let
him go there.

IT is trouthe, that, as ye haue herde, the kyng of Englonde had
 a sone named Humfray, faire, wise, and right wele condicioned /
 for as y haue seide you here-to-fore / the kynges made their 28
 children yn youthe to be norissed by notable folkes & wele con-
 dicioned / This yonge Humfray, aftir the discomfiture and harde
 auenture that the cristen had vpon the see yn Sizile / helde the
 reaume as lost, wherof he had as grete sorowe yn parte, as alle his 32
 frendes had ben destroyed / and thought wele that the cristen put
 hem not yn suche deuoir as they shold / and many tymes he seide
 to his fadir / that "it was grete pite to se thus cristendome
 destroyed" / The kyng anon vndirstode wele for what entente he 36
 seide it / but for no thinge wolde he sende him forth / he toke
 ensauple of the kyng of Scottes, that was yn suche sorowe for
 his sone, of whom he coude here no worde, that noman might
 recomforte hym ; and therefore the pore Humfray lost his tyme to 40

- speke therof / and whan he sy he might haue non othir comfort of
his fadir / he remembred hou the kynge of ffrance had loste his
sone / & thought he wolde secretly breke with the feliship that
4 were aboute him / as the sones of grete prynces and othir grete
lordes / that in their youthe had be norissed with hym / and if he
might fynde any of his accorde / he wold departe from his fadir, &
drawe to Sizile; for he thought wele / and he were ones there / and
8 his fadir knewe ther-of, that for no thyng he wold leue hym yn
daunger / but rather sende thider folkes to acompany him / whiche
might be grete socour and helpe to the kyng of Sizile / and in this
thought was he longe tyme or he durst discouer it pleynty to any of
12 his seruantes. So fortunyd, vpon a day he stode at a wyndowe,
passyng trist & pensif / and the Erle of warwikes eldest sone was
there / that long tyme of youthe had be brought vp with hym / so
he came to him and seide, "my lorde! sauynge your displeasir, me
16 thinketh that now of late y haue sene you more pensif & malyn-
colious than euir ye were before / and as me ought yn this wise, y
shewe you the trouthe, that many folkes withdrawe them out of
this courte / and be right sorowfull to se you in this cas; ¹for by
20 youre Lustynes, & Liberalite & frendly manere, eueri man desired to
yeue you attendaunce, and to be acompanyed aboute your persone /
and now they se you of right mate & heuy chere / and if they
come aboute you, ye make vnto them full litle countenaunce, or
24 noon, whiche they haue not ben acostomed to; Wherefore they haue
the grettir meruaile / and thus departe they all abassed and sorow-
fulle, to remembre how ye ar turned so ferre from that they lefte
you / and there is noon that moost desire to do you seruise, but
28 that they are annoyed to se you so / ye knowe wele, my lorde, y say
trouthe / for here were many noble men that were right glad to do
you seruyse at their owne coste & charge that nowe be departed.
And this courte is sore amenysed of noble men / and alle by you / I
32 biseche you, my lorde, pardone me of thies thynges y haue shewed
you / for y can yn no wise hide fro you / that haue brought me vp /
any thinge that y se or here, that shold be to your charge, or
amenysyng of your grete loos & renome / that of your age hath
36 largely be spred thorough the worlde" / Thus yong Humfray / hering
thies wordes of this yong sone of warwik / knewe wele that of good
herte, & feithfull loue & seruise, he seide thies vnto hym / and
thought wele he seide trouthe; and forthwith the teres felle from
40 his yen / wherby this yonge gentelman perceyued wele that his

Prince Hum-
phrey re-
solves to start
for Sicily, if
he can find
friends to go
with him.

The Earl of
Warwick's
son re-
proaches
Prince Hum-
phrey for
his melan-
choly,
[1 leaf 51]

which has
driven young
nobles from
Court.

This makes
Humphrey
weep.

maister might not wele speke / the sorow strayned so sore his
 herte / than seide he / "my lorde! y se wele that there is som
 thinge yn your herte that sore annoieth you / or displeasith you /
 and .I. wote not whethir ye haue or wilt discouer it to any aboute 4
 you / but y sey for me, if y knewe any thyng that were to your
 annoy or displeasir / and it were possible my seruise to remedy it /
 y shal auenture my body and lif to accomplishe it / neuirtheles y
 desire to knowe of youre secretes no ferthir than pleasith you y 8
 sholde knowe / but whan my seruyse may please you ye shalt fynde
 it redy, *without* any Demaunde reseruyng / aȝ-only the kyng, & my
 pore lorde, my fadir." whan Humfray had herde his seruauȝt &
 kynnesman thus sey vnto hym / and offrid his body and goodes for 12
 him / thought wele yn him self that he might trust hym, & seide
 vnto him, "ye haue be norissht vp with me / and y trust certainly
 that my wele, myn honour, and preferment, ye wolde as moche as
 any man that longith to my fadir or me; and for this y am con- 16
 cluded yn my thought to ¹discouer vnto you myn entent / and
 notwithstandinge ye haue be brought vp *with* me of childehode /
 and that y haue alwey loued you wele, yit wolȝ y haue an othe of
 you / and what othe y shalt sey you / if that y shalt disclose vnto 20
 you, please you not / nor that ye wiȝ assente and agree ther-to /
 that neuir, daies of your lif, it shaȝ be opend or disclosed by you /
 and this shaȝ ye promyse me" / and he answerd him / "my lorde,
 y wolȝ wele / for y had leuir dy than euir y shold discouer thinge 24
 that ye commaunde me to kepe" / and here on yaue his trouthe /
 and then he shewid his sorowe in this wise / ¶ "It is so that ye
 haue, dyuerse tymes & many, herde speke of the right grete pite &
 destruccïon / that euery day befalleth to the kyng of Sizile / that 28
 is a kyng of full grete honour, whiche is a grete amenysshment to
 aȝ cristendome, & shame to alle cristen kynges that haue their
 reaumes in pees / and he hath a doughter, of whom the renome of
 al honour is spred through aȝ the worlde / and the kyng, hir 32
 fadir, might haue pees / if he wolde mary hir among the mys-
 creauntes / but he had leuer dy / and þe destruccïon of hym & of
 his doughtir bothe / than euir, daies of his lif, he wold consent
 ther-to / ye may wele se that this cometh of a stable herte / grete 36
 drede & loue of god / ye knowe the socours that by the kyng of
 ffrance / my lorde,² my fadir / and the kyng of Scottes, hath be
 done to him / whiche no thing hath profite him / but to him a grete

Lord War-
 wick's son
 says he'll risk
 his life to
 help Prince
 Humphrey.

Humphrey
 then tells him

[11. 51, bk.]

that the peril
 of the King of
 Sicily

and his lovely
 daughter,

which danger
 his Allies
 have not
 relieved him
 from,

² MS. my lorde my lorde.

hurte / for his folkes are gretly discouraged ther-by / for, as y vnder-
 stonde, bfore this comyng, one of them was worth .vj. turkes / and
 nowe y se noman that dressith to any socours of the seide kynge /
 4 but they thinke they haue done y-nough. I haue many tymes I've talkt to
my Father,
 moued my lorde my fadir, heryn, that litle hede takith to my
 wordes, but rathir thinkith my speche ys chyldissh & folie / and he thinks
me silly.
 thus for certayn y holde this good kynge / his fair doughtir and his
 8 reame, lost / and for that me thinkith that euery noble man sholde
 be sorowfuH of so grete a losse / y can in no wise make good chere /
 and this is the principaH cause of my sorowe / And y thynke werrily
 if y might gete thider / the noble suggettes & seruantes of this
 12 reame shold can me no maugre / and wolde god that euery man
 wold employ hym therto / and that the kynge were agreable to
 sende me yn this viage / but that wol he not, for no thyng, y knowe
 for certayne / notwithstanding aH my speche vnto hym / & also [1 leaf 52]
 16 the grete losse that but late is fallen to them that were sent to the
 socours / But y shaH telle you more playnly myn entente, suche But I mean
 promyse as ye haue made me / for ye be one of them that y haue
 most affiaunce yn / and also y knowe you wele assured, and wise y-
 20 nough to conduyte an² hy matier, if it please you / wherfore y pray
 with aH my herte in especiaH, that ye wiH assente to my desire
 with-oute breking it / and helpe me to execute it / and here nowe
 what y haue thought / I knowe wele, as y haue seide, that for
 24 no thinge, my lorde, nor alle they of his reame, fro the grettist
 estate to the porest degre, ne wol not consente that y shold departe
 so ferre fro them / but aH that shaH not restrayne me / if y may
 haue the power, & any that will helpe to conduyte me in this
 28 werke, y shaH departe oute of this reame right honestly accom-
 payned, not as a kynge, but as a knyght / and for this y haue goode
 y-nough, & garnyssht wele y-nough / And y wold that "yn the name
 of som othir than of me, at som port in this reame, fer fro this I want some
one to engage
a Ship,
 32 towne, a good ship were ordeyned, wele tak-lee & vitailed, whiche
 sholde alwey be redy to departe / without houre or tyme apoynted /
 and abide there oure comyng; and yn the meane tyme, to ij. or iij.
 of my specialle seruantes & kynnesmen, & othir that haue be
 36 norisshed vp with me / vpon an othe y shaH discouer myn entente /
 & y trust that at leste y shaH be accompayned with xvj. or a xxth. and then I,
with 16 or 20
noblemen,
 noble men / and euery man, one seruaunt with him / and at suche
 tyme as aH shall be redy / y shaH depart at euen out of this towne,

² MS. and

will some day
go aboard and
sail to Sicily,

which I hope
to aid, and
also win
honour.

Will you
help?

[1 lf. 52, bk.]

Lord War-
wick's son
advises
Prince Hum-
phrey

to get 3 or 4
friends to
manage the
matter,

and he will
help.

The Prince's
friends

object at first,

that by the mornynge, if y be myssed / y shalbe to fer to be ouirtaken
or we come to the port / and then wolȝ y streight to shipe / and
go vnto the Reaume of Sizile / and whan y am onys ther / y shalt
lete my lorde, my fadir, haue knowlage therof / and what causes haue 4
meued me / and y am sure whan thoos tidynge come to his know-
lage / he, and alle they of his reame, wol be right wele content to
sende suche company vnto me as may be for his honour / whiche
shalbe a grete recomforte to the reaume of Sizile / and pis be cause 8
of my goyng ; & by pis may I trust to wynne the loue of god, and
honour / without hauyng shame ; but this can y, nor may, do with-
out helpe / wherfore, myn owne cousyn & frende, I pray you teH
me, heryn as ye thinke" / This yong sone of ¹warwik heryng his 12
maister thus speke, was not so yong / but that he thought yn his
corage, that this mocion came of grete honour and gentilnes of herte.
and thus he answerd hym / "my lorde, this matier that ye meue,
procedith of an hy & noble corage / a[n]d also the mater is right grete / 16
and y alone, & but yonge / & notwithstandyng, your wordes gretly
reioise me / yit dare y geue you noon other counseH than this that
y shall sey / ye haue of yong men, thankid be god, that of their
age be right wise & discrete, & that wiH be trewe vnto you as longe 20
as god wolȝ geue them lif / ye may calle vn-to you iij. or iiij. of
them that ye thinke be moost propre to guyde this mater / and if
it please you, y wolbe with them / and what-so-euer shalt then be
concluded / and ye commaunde me to execute it, y shalt do my 24
deuoir to the vtterist of my power / and thinke neuir, sir / that,
daies of my lif, this that it hath pleased you to seye to me, shaH be
opende by me to no lyuyng creature / for y knowe wele the grete
affectione, trust, and fauour, that ye shewede me, discoueryng this 28
matier that is most secrete in your herte / wherof, right humbly y
thanke your good grace / and as for my body, & alle the goodes that
y haue, if my pore company may plesse you, affir ye haue takyn a
ferme conclusion, [I] shall be redy to do you seruise as long as my 32
lif may endure" / his maister thankid him right hertily / & thought
his auise good / and on the morow full erly was steryng, sent for
suche as he wold haue / to whom he had grettist affiaunce / and
without long taryng, to abregge the matier / yn like wise as he had 36
broken to the erle of warrewikes sone, of his entente / so did he to
them that he had sent for / whiche, anoon as they herde his pleasir,
thought the matier right straunge / and seide vnto him / "that yf
they shold acompany hym yn this matier, they knewe for certayne 40

that they durst neur retourne to this reaume ayen / for the kynge
his fadir / and that their owne fadirs wolde be the first that sholde
destroie them" / and also they seide, "my lorde, whan ye come to
4 the age of more knowlage, & haue children, as my lorde your fadir
hath / ye wolde neur haue loue ne fauour vnto vs / but thinke
that we shold be as agreable to beguyle you of your children, as we
sholde be nowe agreable to beguyle my lord your fadir, of you,
8 where-thorough ye shold haue vs alwey yn hate / & mystrust" /
But no[t]withstandyng alle thies wordes, he seide to them / "my
frendes, doute ^[1 leaf 53] not but, in conclusion, this matier shalbe reputed to ^{but he}
youre Honour and preise / bothe of my lorde my fadir, and of alle ^{answers their}
12 your frendes / for whan they here where we shall be, there shall be
fewe yn this londe, ~~pat~~ haue any sone of age to bere armes / but
that they shaft wille they were ~~with~~ vs / and as for me, y shold be
the moost wrecche yn erthe / if ye that haue fadirs & modirs, kynne
16 & frendes / and grete possessions yn this reaume / which ye shold
leue for the loue of me, if y sholde hate you / god neur be pleased
to geue me lif so longe / but shortly to ende it / ffor if god geue vs
grace to acheue & brynge our entirprise to good conclusion / y
20 shold be fult vntrewe & right vnkynde / if euer y failed any of you,
daies of my lif" / many wordes were amonges them / but at last alle ^{and at last}
to-gedir concludid to do & accomplissh the pleasir of their maister / ^{all agree to}
not yn so grete nombre as they wolde haue had, for fere it sholde ^{do as he}
24 be knowen and discouerd / But now euery man toke his charge,
some to ordeyne a ship & the vitailyng / some to puruay good ^{Some get the}
horsis / and to brynge them to suche secrete places where as they ^{ship, others}
might be dayly coursed & renne ; som puruaide for gold & siluer & ^{procure}
28 for harneys, and som for aray / so that ther lakked no thyng to ^{money,}
noon of them / but that they were alle puruaide of euery thyng
longing vnto them for a grete while / Aftir this, was eueri thing
puruaide and so wele guyded / that by the day they apoynted / alle ^{and by the}
32 thyng was redy ther, without knowyng of any persone saue of ^{day appointed}
them that delt ther-with. ¶ Now fro this day forth was Humfray ^{all is ready.}
of bettir chere then he had ben longe before, wherof eueri man had
grete ioie, for they had ben yn sore discomfort for his sadnes / but
36 no man durst make no questione. The tyme approched of his
departyng ; he made iustis & turneys, and assembled his ladies and
gentilwomen / & did so moche, that alle folkes than had more ioie of
him than euir they had / thus beloued of the kynge & of alle the
40 iij. estates of the reaume, departid this yonge gentilman out of his

84 *Prince Humphrey starts. The King and Queen of England sorrow.*

One mid- fadirs house aboute midnight / so secretly that he was vnperceyued /
 night Prince and rode so that night, that it was not possible to ouirtake him /
 Humphrey leaves his thus, *withoute* makyng lenger tale, he came to the port ther as the
 Father's house, and ship abode him / and they that had the charge therof / and assone 4
 goes to his ship.
 [1 lf. 53, bk.] as he came ther / he & his fe^lLiship in alle Haste possible entrid
 ther-yn, which, whan they were there, were yn nombre xvij.
 They set sail. persones / of gentilmen and other. then made they to pulle vp the
 saile, & were *withyn* litle while *withoute* sight of the londe. 8
 ¶ Now goth Humfray and his company / god by his grace con-
 duyte them / for they be full ferre from their entent. The kyng
 The King of England is of England, on the morowe that his sone was departed, herde thorough
 his court grete noise & murmour, & askid what it might be; but 12
 noon ther was that wold or durst telle it hym / *neurtheles* at laste
 he most knowe it / and so came his counse^l to enfourme hym ther-
 of, and seide vnto him / “sir, it behoueth that ye knowe wherfore
 we are come to you / to-day be comen vnto vs many of the *seruauntes* 16
 of my lordes youre sone / that for certayn knowe not where he is /
 for they haue ben at his chambre, & founde it open / and he not
 ther-yn / his chambrelayn yn like wise, & suche as were moost a-
 boute hym / nor wote not where they are / for the *seruauntes* of 20
 diuerse of them be come to vs & sey that they haue lost their
 maistres / thus for drede that it shold falle vnto you as it did to
 the kyng of ffrance, we be come to enforme you ther-of / assone as
 we mysse hym / for we wote not yif ye knowe where he is or no.” 24
 The kyng of England, heryng this, kewe anon for certayne that
 his sone was goon / and thought wele that he had takyn the wey
 to Sizile / consideryng the wordes that he at diuerse tymes had
 seide vnto him / and then he made diligently to seche thorough all 28
 his reame / and whan he sawe that he might haue no tidynges of
 hym / he determyned to sende notable folkes yn-to Sizile / for to
 knowe and enquire if any tidynges might be had ther of hym / It
 is to thinke / that the kyng was yn grete sorowe / & not *without* 32
 cause / for he had no moo sonys; and if he had sorowe, ye may wele
 thinke *pat* be quene & hir ij. doughters were not *withoute* / for they
 had suche sorow that alle folke had grete pite of them / this sorowe
 was not alone yn the kynges court / but the fadirs & moders, kynne 36
 & frendes of the yonge lordes that were gone with hym had their
 parte yn like wise / & so had the surplus of alle the reame, & had
 grete drede lest the losse were *without* recouerir / as that of ffrance
 had ben. ¶ Now sha^ll we leue of this grete sorowe that they made, 40

One mid-
 night Prince
 Humphrey
 leaves his
 Father's
 house, and
 goes to his
 ship.

[1 lf. 53, bk.]

They set sail.

The King of
 England is

told that the
 Prince's
 room is
 empty:

so he knows
 his son has
 gone to
 Sicily.

The King
 grieves
 greatly.

- & not withoute cause / for moche trouble had they that thus¹ were [1 leaf 54]
 departid / and ye shall here the manere Howe. ¶ Whan Humfray
 and his folkes were in the see withoute the sight of any Londe of
 4 the reauume of Englonde, they toke their wey towarde Sizile / and Prince Hum-
phrey sails
towards
Sicily.
 had connyng maryners to conduyte them, & faire wedir at wille /
 so that *withyn* litle while they might haue aryued in Sizile, ne had
 ben the fortune & tempest of the see, that neuir is sure / ffor on a A tempest
rises;
 8 day bifelle grete tempest in the see / so that the vessell that they
 were yn was many tymes yn daunger to be perished / yn-so-moche
 that the maryners coude no remedy, but all only yn the handes of
 god, & lete the vessell dryue *with* the wawes and the wynde,
 12 whedir as god wold conduyte it. Humfray and alle his company
 were in orisons and praier *with* grete deuocion, hauyng no hope but
 of dethe / and yn the meane while one of the maryners perceyued
 londe that they were ny vnto / but he knewe not the contre, for he
 16 had neuir be ther / so he wente to Humfray / and to the maister
 maryner / and tolde it theym / whiche made grete ioie / for when
 they were so ny the londe, the tempest was not so rageous as it had
 ben in the playne see / sone aftir they aryued at londe *without* any they land at
a Turkish
town, are
robd,
 20 hurte / and it was nye a grete towne that helde of the turke that
 was in Sizile / and they went oute yn vessells & botes, & came to
 this shipe / and founde it garnysht *with* cristen men / and when
 they sawe thies yonge folkes, and the good that was *with* them, they
 24 were right ioiefult, and brought their prise to the towne, and departed
 their botte / and for it thought them a cas of nouelte / they sente and given
away as
prisoners.
 presentes to their neighbors of the cristen prisoners, so that they
 lefte *with* them but ij., wherof that one was Humfray / and thus
 28 was thys company disseuerd / Humfray was put yn a derke prisone, Prince Hum-
phrey is put
in a dungeon.
 and his felawe *with* hym / whiche sone aftir died / and he abode
 ther all alone, where he endured moche payne & trouble / alle othir
 than he wende to fynde whan he departed oute of Englonde / and
 32 pitously he complayned him to god / besechyng hym humbly that
 this payne & prison that he was yn / might stande for part of his
 purgatory / for he wende neuir to escaped thens / but oure lorde,
 that knewe the cause of his departyng / and that he was abandoned
 36 for his seruise, put him not yn foryetyng / but sone aftir holpe to
 his delyueraunce / ²as ye shall here / but now he was stille keppe [2 lf. 54, bk.]
 there, to thentent to presente the turke with, at his retourne. The
 kynge, his fadir, had sente yn-to Sizile vij. or viij. of his folkes
 40 aftir his departyng / & whan they were returned / and tolde that

The King of
England's
envoys can
hear no
tidings of
Humphrey
in Sicily.

The King of
England
mourns the
loss of his
Son.

The King of
France, be-
fore dying of
grief for the
loss of his
son, Prince
Philip,

appoints his
brother,

[1 leaf 55]
the Duke of
Burgundy,
Regent of
France, and
King after 9
years.

thorough alle the reaume of Sizile they had enquired & sought / but
for certayne, yn that region had not be seyne no ship / sith the losse
of the cristen armee, that was sent for their socours. & they certified
for trouthe, that ther Humfray nor his company was not / The 4
kynge of Englonde, heryng thies tidynges, helde his sone as loste /
and than his sorow redoubled, but it might not be amendid / and
aH his lif he contynued wepyng & teeres / and seide to suche as
were a-boute hym / "Alas! ye may se ij. reaumes full desolate! 8
the kyng of ffrance & y haue loste oure ij. sones / and wote not
how the kyng of Scottes hath lost his also / but he hath more
recomforte than we two / for his sone died knyghtly yn the
seruise of god / and yet hath his fadir ij. sones alyue, which is a 12
grete recouerir to his reaume / & noon of vs two haue noon heire
male / and y here sey the kyng of ffrance lith seke in his bedde;
without any remedy of his lif / whiche is comen to hym of sorow / of
which is grete pite, and withoute faile he seide trouthe / for aftir 16
the departyng of his sone, hadde he neur ioie."

As the kyng of Englonde seide / and as ye haue rehersed here
tofore, The kyng of ffrance, sith the departyng of his
seide sone, enioied neur day of helthe / in so moche that 20
withyn ij. yere aftir, he departed oute of this worlde / and bfore
his dethe, made to come bfore him his wif and his brother, the
Duc of Burgoigne / and seide vnto them in this wise / "My wif
and my brother / y perceyue wele y most dye / whiche is the 24
thyng y haue moche desired / and as ye knowe wele y had a sone
a ij. yere syne, and wote not yet / whethir he be a-lyue or not / to
whom ye, my wif, be moder / and ye, my brother, be vnele / y
haue loued you naturally as my brother / and ye haue done me 28
grete seruyse and honour, wherof y thonke you, and pray you to
contynue your kinde and naturaH lone vnto me aftir my dethe /
and to my sone, if he be a-lyue / and if he be not / y may haue no
grettir ioie than to wite you kyng aftir my dethe / for to you 32
sholde the reaume falle as rightfull enheritoure / wherfore y wolde
that ye shold be regent and gouernour of this reaume by the space
of vij. yere / and yn caas be that my sone come not / and that terme
passed / I wol that ye be crowned and sacred kyng / for the abidyng 36
is long y-nough of ix yere / and y trust that ye wiH thus do / and
so y pray you promyse me / for the goodes of the reaume be as wele
yours, as Regent / as if ye were crowned kyng; and so shaH ye
leese nomore for the tyme, but only the name of the kyng." The 40

- Duc of Burgoigne, that was fult wyse, worthy, and a passing good man, was knelyng afore the kynge his brother, heryng him thus speke, of right feruent loue, and of right stronge and soroufult
- 4 herte, wepte so sore / that he might vnethe speke a worde / but as he might speke, he promysed him trewly to *perfourme* his desire & *commaundement* / Aftir alle this, and that the goode kynge of ffrance had serchid his conscience wisely and deuoutly, he yelde
- 8 his soule to god, and was entered as to a kynge *perteyneth*, and his ordynaunce doone & accomplisshed, as he had diuised. And his Brothir, the Duc of Bourgoigne, was made Regent of ffrance / and helde entierly, and accomplissid, alle that he had promysed his
- 12 brother, withoute contraryyng of any thinge / and had noon othir wille ne desire, but that his Nevewe sholde come ayen / for he hadde neither wif ne childe, and he was noon of the moost yonge, wherefore he was determyned yn himself neuir to marye. He helde the
- 16 reaume, as long as he had the gouernaunce, yn good Iustice, pees & tranquillite. ¶ It is tyme to be stille a litle of this matier, and retourne to the sege that the Turke had set bifore fferaunt and his company.
- 20 **L**onge tyme endured they bifore the Towne *without* any wynnyng / & euery day there was som sawte or scarmysssh, and alwey profitable for them *withyn* / and so moche yn armes did Le Surnome and Athis / that of alle othir they bare the
- 24 name / for their dedes were, as who seith, yncredible; and so wele did Athis / that sawe Le Surnome, ther was noon to compare with hym / wherof le Surnome was as glad as he might be / and loued his honour asmoche as his owne / and he shewed wele he was not
- 28 enuyous / for whan they were *withdrawen* from any scarmysssh, he wolde so ioifully reherce of Athis, his felawe / that alle men ¹Had grete pleasir to here him / whiche alway passed hym, & was werry mirrour and ensample to alle othir / Thes sege dured fulle longe / and
- 32 many tymes sent fferaunt to the kynge of Sizile, that he sholde haue no drede for them / nor put himself yn noon auenture / for it neded not / for they had gret plente of vitaille for more than a yere / and whan they most nedes leue the place / they wolde departe to
- 36 the a nother of their enemyes, mangre them alle / and thus the kynge of Sizile, in trust of fferaunt, abode the auenture that god wolde sende / and often made his folkes to ride to the Turkys hoste / to distourbe their vitaille / whiche aquytte them right wele / and
- 40 did grete damage to the Turkes, and made them right wery /

The King of France dies,

and the Duke of Burgundy becomes Regent.

Ferant and the Christians make daily sallies against the Turks,

[1 If. 55, bk.]

and tell the King of Sicily that they are all right.

A letter of
Ferant's,

and his mes-
senger, are
taken to the
Sultan,

who is told
that they
don't at all
fear him.

[1 leaf 56]

The Sultan
calls a Coun-
cil to discuss
the slow pro-
gress of the
siege,

and the
damage that
Prince Philip
and Prince
David do
the Turks.

ffynally they loste moo of their folkes before that place then they
had done of all the while that they were yn Sizile / and yit were
they neur the nere of the place / On a day befelle that fferaunt had
sent a letter to the kyng his maister / yn suche wise as ye haue 4
herde before / the messenger was not so wise as othir had be, nor
coude not þe weies so wele / so was he taken with the Turkes
meyne / & brought bfore him yn-to his Tente. the Turke toke
him aparte, & suche of his counseil as pleased him / and made to 8
woide the remenaunt / for that he wold not the messangere shold
be openly herde / lest he shold sey any thing / that shold discourage
them / & whan all folkes were wided, the Turke asked hym cer-
teinly of his tydynges / And he tolde hym suche as he knewe, with- 12
out hidyng of any thyng / yn embandonyng his lif, if it were founde
othir wise / he seide that they withyn dred not the Turke and alle
his power / but were rathir glad than sory of his beyng ther / for
they wist for trouthe, that it was grete charge to hym / and that he 16
shold alwey lese more than wyne / and yn the meane tyme the
kyng of Sizile shold fortifie his Reaume, and be daily releued with
newe folkes / so that his puissaunce shalle alwey encresse. The
Turke asked the messenger if he had any letters / and he seide 20
“ye” / as he that durst not deny it / and forthwith toke theym
hym / the Turke opend them, and founde them aftir suche forme
as ye haue herde before this. whan the messangere had be wele
enquered / and answerde and seide like as he knewe / whiche was 24
alwey to the honoure¹ of the cristen: then was He delyuerd to one
that shold kepe him wele and surely / the Turke abode stille with
his counseil / and they diuised many thinges to-gedre of thies
matier / & they thought wele they loste tyme / and therfore toke 28
they this conclusion / that on the morowe the Turke sholde
assemble alle his counselle / and the Capteynes / and seid to them
that were there with hym / that they shold auisse them wele that
night of this grete matier, & on the morow to shewe him their best 32
aduisse & counselle / Thus departed they, and euery man to his
loggyng / til on the morow the Turke sende for them / many tymes
and often were they awakid by them withyn / whiche had noon
othir delite nor pleasir but to trauaile them, to the annoie of the 36
turkes / and that shewde wele Le Surnome, and Athis his felowe,
pat, alle the while he was withyn the place, chaungid not his harneys
that Orcais had yeuen him / wherby he was wele knowen; and
also he shewde it full ny them many tymes, to their grete damage / 40

- for the Turke wolde often tyme sey / "se there my sonnes prisonere !
 here may ye se the profit of his delyueraunce / my herte gaf me
 neur othir wise / he is the flour & choise of alle them *withyn* / one
 4 reserued / that dothe vs meruailous grete hurt / by them ij. is alle
 the losse we haue." Now this night passid / on the morowe came
 the Turkes counselle to hym, and alle the Capteynes he had sent for,
 and the Turke declared the matier him self / yn this wise, seying
 8 vnto them / "ffaire lordes, it is nigh the space of a yere sith we
 leide the sege before this place / wheryn it semeth me to be as ferre
 from hawying it as the first day we came here / the damages that we
 haue had, aswele of them *without* the place, as of them *withyn* / be
 12 *without* nombre / for we haue lost here, of the best of oure
 company / & yit if it appered that we might haue it be length of
 tyme, y sholde holde my peyne wele employed ; but we cannot, as
 fer as y se / this night passed, was taken by my folkes one of their
 16 messangers, beryng letters to their kynge / whiche, yn the *presence*
 of diuerse suche as be here *present*, y haue examyned, & founde
 him trewe, seying aftir the content of his letters / whiche letters, se
 here yn my hande / & y wolle they be redde yn *presence* of you
 20 *alle*, because ye may auise what is to do / and that ye may counselle
 me to my honour / and so y pray you do" / thies letters, were
 opende and redde by a Secretary of the Turkes / and were of such
 matier as ye haue herd to-fore / and aftir they were redde, he seide
 24 ayen vnto them / "ye se the termys, and how the matier stondes ;
 I perceyue that, sethe oure comyng yn-to this reaume, oure tyme
 hath not gretly emploied / neurtheles, or y sholde departe with
 shame / y had leuer dye / and if we wolle any moo folkes, we nede
 28 but to sende for them / but me semeth that we be y-nough, bothe
 for theym *withyn* & for them *without*, In-asmoche as we haue ben
 so long vnfoughtē *with* / Also the harde ceason of wynter ap-
 procheth / and it shold be full ill for any oure folkes to labor in-to
 32 this cuntre frome so fer, and also it shold be fulle grete charge &
 dispence / and fulle harde for vs to gete vitaille / for the kynge of
 Sizile diffendith it vs daily yn alle that he may / Now, alle thies
 thinges considered, I haue assembled you alle, to haue your good
 36 aduise and counselle, whether it be behofuH for vs to sende for moo
 people or not / So I pray you that eche of you counselle me aswele
 as ye can." Aftir that he had seide thies wordes / there were
 many of theym that eche behelde othir / and thought wele yn their
 40 mynde that the Turke was wery that the sege endured so longe /

The Sultan
tells his
Council that
their year's
siege has
been of no
use.

[1f. 56, bk. j

He has
Ferant's
letter read
to them,

says Winter
is coming on,

and asks their
advice.

wherof they were glad, for it sore annoied them, their beyng there
 so longe / In asmoche as they sawe be no meane to be nerre the
 wynnynge of the place than thei were the first day they came ther /
 and daily sith had they hadde grete losse and damage, aswell doon 4
 by theym *withyn* the place as by theym *without* / they had lost
 many of their next frendes and of the moost worthy of their com-
 pany / Some other preised moche the Turke their maister / and
 thought if he reised the sege / it shold be to his shame / and yet 8
 they sawe wele he lost his tyme, and had grete charge aboute
 nought / wherof they abassht theym moche / And in especialt, how
 the kynge of Sizile but litle a-fore had wonne that towne with
 assaute / and hou they had biden there so longe space / & coude 12
 not gete it; but moche preysed they them of *withyn*, of wisdom &
 worthynesse, thinkyng that they passed alle other that they had
 seen in their tyme. Thus euery man thought of the be'synesse
 that belonged to the Tourke, that sawe this company alle sadde and 16
 pensif / knewe wele that there was cause / and thought that he had
 our lightly leide sege there / seyng the puissaunce that his enemyes
 had / that night & day aboute the Sege, were in suche diligence and
 trauaile, that they vnnethe of the host mighte haue any slepe / for 20
 they were nightly distourbed of their reste, either by them *withyn*
 or by them *without*; so seid he to his folkes: "I pray you remembre
 wele thies matiers, for it nedith to take good aduise; for our abidyng
 here is fulle noious and dangerous / & oure departyng shold be 24
 shamefult / Neuirtheles, it semeth me one of thies ij. we most nedes
 take; but it behoueth vs to thinke what were the best meane we
 coude fynde / yestir even, aftir the takyng of fferauntes messanger,
 some of you were here *with* me / and I pray to bethinke you what 28
 were best / I was not aduised than to assemble you alle, as y haue
 now done / and for this cause y shalt aske first of them that were
 than with me / for that y know wele they haue had bettir leiser of
 remembraunce than the remenaunt that be here" / Than asked he 32
 the aduise of one of his moost preuy counsellours / and that, as he
 trusted, toke his matiers moost to herte / And was, as aftir his lawe,
 a right a notable and a wise knyght / the whiche, by the com-
 maundement of his maister, refused not to sey his aduise, whiche 36
 was this / "Sir, it is trouthe that yestir euen ye commaundid
 diuers of vs to remembre on this matier, & so y suppose we haue,
 euery man on his party / and as for me, y haue so thought on it
 that y slepte no slepe this night / and the more y thinke on it / the 40

Some think
 the siege
 shouldn't
 be raisd.

[1 leaf 57]
 All are sad.

The Sultan
 calls on one
 of his most
 trusted
 Councillors.

- more me semeth it is harde and doutefull / Also your self haue
 opened the difficultees any man may sey in this matier, aswele of
 thabidyng as of goyng, and haue seide wele, as me semeth, that in
 4 noon of those ij. is neither honour nor profit / and it behoueth to
 auise som meane, as ye seide, to kepe your honour, and to eschewe
 the contrary / fforsothe my thought hath ben this night, and is yet /
 Vpon this meane with correccion / biseching you humbly, if y say
 8 not wele, to pardone me. And this is the meane that moost may
 be with your honour, as me semeth / if any meane may be founde
 to take trews for a yere bitwene your Enemy and you / <sup>This Coun-
cillor advises
[1 lf. 57, bk.]
a Truce for a
year with the
Christians;</sup> ¹ And than
 by honour may ye reise the seege / And this tyme hangyng, ye may
 12 leue garrisons in this Reaume / and retourne your self this wynter
 in-to your owne Reaume, for it is long sith ye were there / and
 than may ye make a newe reise, bothe of people & tresour, and
 than in the newe ceason, whan the grounde is replenyssed with
 16 corne & gresse, than may ye come with grettir power than euir ye
 did / for it is no doute of / whan your people and sogettes se your <sup>and then a
fresh attack
with more
men;</sup>
 grete desire and good entent, they wille helpe you more than euir
 they did / ye haue sene wele the deuoir that your Enemyes haue
 20 made to haue socoure / and yet haue noon had / ner noon, y beleue,
 shalle haue, for if any they shold haue had, ye may thinke weel,
 seyng the long seege that ye haue holden, they shold haue had it
 by this / wherfore it is to be thought that, if they be weel re-
 24 mended heron, they wol be right glad of this trews / ffor they
 wille thinke that, in that meane ceason, they shalle mowe haue some
 helpe of the cristen / and at the last assemble, his estates to take
 aduise of the guiding of his reaume. The maner hou men might <sup>the way to
get the Truce
should be
further
discust.</sup>
 28 come to this trews, is not yet by me wel aduised / but if it please
 you to conclud to this aduise, men may remembre the maner how /
 and come hider to you ageyn aftir dyner / euery man to sey his
 aduise / Sir, suche is myn aduise at this tyme. I knowe no bettir,
 32 albeit that I am redy to be confourmed to theym that y shalt here,
 yif bettir counsell which right lightly may be done" / The Turke,
 hering his knight and right trusty Counsellor thus speke, toke his
 wordes right agreeably / for he sawe wele that by, other meanes, with
 36 his honour might he not departe / a[n]d his abidyng was right
 damageable / He asked than of many other their aduise / and, for
 to aberge [so] the matier, euerichon folowed the same that the knyght
 had seide / And saide that he was fulle wise / for the departyng of <sup>The rest of
the Council
agree.</sup>
 40 the Turke was not possible by noon othir meane without dishonour /

and dred moche that they might not gete the trews *with* their honour & pleasir. The Turke, that saw this conclusion yn nombre of opinions, & alle one / saide to them / “yet of the maner hou this trews might be / we nor noon of you haue spoken / wherfore y wold 4 that, at iij. after non, eechie of you be here present / and that the meane while ye remembre eche one his party, how y may entre yn this matier to my honour, *without* shewing of any semblaunt of drede; and if the ¹meane might be founde, that it might be half by 8 their Request.” Thus eueri man departed til after dyner / and at the houre of iij. assembled there agein / and there shewed many resons and opinions / but hard it was, as they thought, to fynde hou this matier shold not come of the Turke, for they coude espie no 12 drede yn their Enemyes. whan the Turke, that moche desired to haue this thinge accomplisht, entred in-to his Tente / where as they alle were, & vnto hym did their dewte; & whan he was set in his chaier, he made them alle to sitte downe / & than he asked of 16 him that most pleased him, thanise of how he was remembred of this matier / that they were departed on / And this was one of his Capteynes, a passing wise man of werre / whiche answerd him in this maner / “Sir, ye shal ful porely be aduertised by me / for that 20 y haue litle knowlage in so high thinges / but sith that it pleasith you that y say in this matier what y haue thought and diuised, whiche is to litle effecte in regarde of that / that thies notable knyghtes herby shalle say / Natherles, y shalt shewe as y haue 24 thought, sith that ye be concluded to the trews, if ye may haue it / & wolde it were by the desire of your Enemyes, or at the lest half by their Request, whiche is an hard thinge to be done / for ye se not yn them no maner liklyhood touching this matier / If we had 28 any prisoners, notable folkes, outler of them *without* or of them *withyn* / then were it litle maistrie to fynde the meanes by their oune request & labour / but that wiH not be / for we haue no suche. A nothir wey there is / *withyn* the place there is many noble and 32 wise lordes, knyghtes and squiers of those whiche be prisoners ther / And y can thinke they haue so many prisoners there, that they wold *with* good wiH be delyuerd of som of them, for spendyng of their vitaille. Thus may ye sende vnto them for delyueraunce 36 of som of them, And in suche wise may the prisoners them self entre in langage *with* their maistirs, as it were of their owne mocione, for their delyueraunce / And thus, me thinketh, they may playnly touche of this matier to fieraunt, whiche, if he wiH, may 40

[1 leaf 58]

After dinner
the Turkish
Council
reassemble,

and one of
them

advises that,

In order
to make the
proposal of
the Truce
come from
the Chris-
tians,

they be askt
to set free
some of their
Turkish
prisoners,
who can
suggest a
Truce.

- surely breke this matier, and bring it to conclusion with the kynge
his maister / And y can thinke, seyng the grete reason that they
haue, & be closed yn this towne, they haue not had ¹their ease in [1 f. 58, bk.]
- 4 alle thinge; and whan the saide fferaunt shall se a meane of youre
departyng, to his honour, he wold be right glad to brynge it to that
conclusion / for his honour shall be wele saued by this meane. An
other way also, vnder your correccion: It is longe sith that kynge
- 8 fferabrace of Perce, that hath ben prisoner yn the handes of the
kynge of Sizile, your enemy / and yet hath there ben no speche of
his raunsome / ffor that ye trusted alway to recouer hym by
strength, whiche, as me semeth, ye are fulle fer fro / ye may sende,
- 12 if it please you, to the kynge of Sizile, desiryng him to put him to
finaunce / and if he wille entende ther-to / than shalle ye haue a
good colour to sende of your folkes vnto the kynge your brother,
whiche may be aduertised by them to breke this matier vnto the
- 16 kynge of Sizile, for a meane of his delyueraunce; and if he wille
entende therto, ye may make a desire vnto him to haue a sauf-
condite, for ij. or iij. notable knyghtes of youre house to go speke
with youre brother for his delyueraunce / And by them may your
- 20 brother be weel aduertised in euery thinge touchyng this matier /
And thus semeth me, by one of thies two weies ye may not faile /
but this mocion may be made as though ye knewe no thing therof /
And that for the loue of youre brothir and of othir prisoners / and
- 24 at their grete request, ye shalle be enclynable to this trews, whiche
is, as ye shalle make semblaunt, right contrary to your pleasir. I can,
as for my parte, noon othir thing deuise / yf y bettir coude, y
wolde right gladly shewe it vnto you, and to my lordes that here be /
- 28 yn whom y wote wele ye shalle fynde sadder aduise than yn me / I
durst not refuse to sey myn opinion, sith that it pleased you so to
ordeyne and commaunde me." Thus endid he his aduise. And
the Turke asked forth of the remenaunt of his counselle that were /
- 32 hou it thought them of this matier / so were there many other
meanes & mocions made amonges them / but, in conclusion, the
Turke liked best the two first waies that his knight had meued /
and saide that he coude not thinke by that / that he knewe yn
- 36 fferaunt, that he wold, be any cause or meane, haue a trews bitwene
hym and the kynge his maister, without that he might se it more
the profit & honour of his maister / than for his owne allegeaunce
and ease / And ther²fore toke he this conclusion, to sende for a
- 40 sauffcondite, that his folkes might speke with fferabras his brother /

Or, as King
Ferabras of
Persia is
prisoner in
Sicily, the

Sultan can
propose to
ransom him,

and ask for a
safe conduct
for Envoys
to see him,

and let him
branch the
Truce.

The Sultan
resolves to

[2 leaf 59]
ask for a
safe-conduct,

94 *The Turks' Proposal to ransom King Ferabras is laid before the King.*

and by hym this matier to be opende / This conclusion was taken,
 and letters sent to the kyng of Sizile by two kynges of armes / In
 and sends a
 proposal to
 the King of
 Sicily,
 whiche letters was conteyned the loun that by naturall reason that
 he aught to his brother, the kyng of Perce, whiche at that tyme 4
 was his prisoner / and had ben a grete while / and right fayn wolde
 he haue hym ageyn / if by any fynaunce he might haue him / And
 to ransom
 his brother,
 the King of
 Persia.
 for this, if his wille were to put him to fynaunce, the Turke his
 brother wolde sone purvey for his delyueraunce, In asmoche as he 8
 was taken in his quarelle & seruise / And for to procede in this
 matier, the Turke requyred to haue sauffcondite for iij. or iiij.
 notable knyghtes, of whom he sent the names yn his letters / Thus
 were the letters delyuerd forth / and they sped them so weel that 12
 in litle while they came to Naples, where as the kyng of Sizile
 The Turkish
 messengers
 reach Naples.
 was / and some were they condited by noble folkes yn to the place
 where the kyng was / and anoone was it tolde the kyng that
 suche folkes were comen vnto hym from the Turke. the kyng 16
 made them be brought vnto him, where they founde him wele
 accompanied. the kynges of armes presented their letteres / and
 The King of
 Sicily
 the kyng of Sizile resceyued them, and redde theim, and sith
 asked thofficers of armes if they had any othir thing in charge / 20
 and they tolde their charge / whiche was suche yn substaunce as the
 letters specified. & whan he hadde hird alle their message, the
 kyng made them to be condite to their loggyng, and ther to be
 wele acompanyed with alle the chere that men might make them. 24
 on the morow aftir, he assembled his folkes of counselle, and many
 of his Capteynes that were there with them, to whom he shewed
 the letters that the Turke had sent hym / and the credence of the
 letters / wherupone he asked their counsell & aduise yn this matier / 28
 and wold here it debated and concluded before him self / So there
 were ij. notable men bifore him to do this / that one ordeyned to
 susteyne the delyueraunce of his prisoner / and the tothir to con-
 trary it / He that susteyneth the deliuerance, shewed to the kyng 32
 that this deliuerance was profitable for hym, and the reasons why /
 assembles
 his Council,
 and shows
 them the
 Sultan's
 letters.
 saying that his body was not ofte ¹in daunger / the delyueraunce of
 kyng firabrace not helpe but to him / for ther was noon othir like
 vnto him / also he was surely acompanyed / and of a long tyme 36
 had not ben gretly annoied / and of liklyhood his strength sholde
 rather encre[se] than empeyre. And the Turkes might was daily
 dymnysshed and gretly damaged / wherfore him thought this
 deliuerance was moost profitable to the kyng / for with his 40

[¹ lf. 59, bk.]

- raunsone sholde he be of more power to damage his enemyes / The
 tothir knyght, hering what he had purposed, answerd to the con-
 trary, shewyng that at that tyme the Turke, whiche was brother to
 4 kynge ffrabrace, helde seege before the place that the kynge had
 conquered vnder him / yn the whiche was enclosed the flour of
 knyghthode of that Reaume, and in especialle they to whom he is
 prisoner / whoos, of right, the prisoner is, and noon others / and if
 8 it so fortune that the Towne were taken by strength, whiche god, of
 his mercy diffende / if it were so / by the kynge of Perce, alle they
 that were withyn shold be rescowed, whiche is more worth than
 iij. suche fynauces as he is able to pay / "And for to answer to
 12 this that ye haue seide, that none suffiseth to the deliuerance of
 the saide prisoner, but the only body of the kyng; by that meane
 that y say, ij. thousand noble men may be saue & brought agein by
 hym. And to come to reason / who ought so weel to be bought
 16 agein by hym, as they that toke hym, whos propre prisoner he is /
 forsoothe noon, as me thinketh. Also remembre weel in what
 perells and in what fortunes ye haue seen the kyng here present, &
 souverayn lord, be in his tyme, whiche, if he were prisoner, shold
 20 be in auenture cuir to be had agein, if this kynge were deliuerd /
 Thies thinges considered, if y were as the kyng, for no thing shold
 he be delyuered / And whan it shalle please the kyng / vpon the
 debates of vs two, that be but of litle effecte to the reasons of my
 24 lordes that here be, he shalle here there aduise, and to do then
 as him thinkith moost to his wele" / The kynge of Sizile, heryng
 thise debates that were made, of good wille, and by noon hate, asked
 of him that spake last his aduise, whiche seide vnto him / that
 28 gladly he wolde say it / sith it pleased him so to commaunde him,
 whiche was this / that in no wise men ought not, nor might not
 entre in-to this matier without thauise and counselle of fferaunt,
 whiche ¹was biseeged withyn the towne and hym, that now men
 32 lightly might speke with hym, for the kyng might write vnto the
 Turke, that without the aduise & counselle of fferaunt & Surnome,
 to whom his brother was prisoner, he wold not procede in that
 matier / and he thought be thise meanes the Turke shold be weel
 36 content that the kynges folkes might go speke with fferaunt. And
 ij. reasons he shewed / that meued him to gif this counselle / that
 one is / that fferaunt is one of the wisist knightes of this Reaume,
 whiche appereth weel by his werkes / And by this meane, if the
 40 kyng sende vnto him of his folkes, he shalle trewly be asserteyned

The advocate
against the
ransom

urges that
Ferant's man
took K. Fera-
bras,

and that
his release
would en-
danger the
King of
Sicily.

The King
of Sicily
resolves

that Ferant
must be con-
sulted;

[1 leaf 60]

and Prince
Philip,
who took
Ferabras
prisoner.

of the demeanyng of fferaunt and of the Towne / and therafter
 may he take counselle outhur of the deliuerance of his prisoner or
 of the contrary / And the tothir reason that he shewed, was this /
 that the seid prisoner had be taken twies by the handes of Surnome, 4
 in the presence of fferaunt his maister / *without* whom, by reason to
 holde trewly the right of armes, the seide prisoner might not be de-
 lyuered : "suche is the ordre of right and Iustice in dedes of armes /
 as y haue alway vnderstande / And as yet y can thinke of the saide 8
 prisoner, there hath be made no departyng bitwene them, nor noon
 accorde nor apoyntement / and therefore, shortly to conclude my
 matier / me thinkith, *without* their aduise it [were best] to procede
 no farther." Thus endid he / & it thought vnto the kynge and his 12
 counselle that his aduise was right good & Resonable / And then
 were letters writen and sent vnto the Turke, vnder suche fourme as
 thei were concluded by the counselle / as ye haue herde. Thus were
 the messangers delyuered, and had grete giftes, and were surely con- 16
 dited, vnto the kynges power / and at their retourne agein vnto the
 Turke, they founde the hoste gretly troubed / for greuously had
 they ben assailed by them with-yn the Towne / and in especialle
 toward the Turkes loggyng / for there were made alway the grettist 20
 assawtes ; and trouthe it was, that they had ben so hourelly assailed
 sith the departing of the messangers, that they neuir might be at
 leiser to assemble in no counselle to-gidir / and diuers tymes wolde
 they haue short termes of trews & comunicacione with fferaunt / 24
 but he wold neuir answeere hem to any suche matier, for he had no
 [1 If. 60, bk.] desire to dele nor trete with hem / wherof thei were full¹ soroufull.
 So long contynued this maner of demeanyng, that the Turkes
 folkes were right very / and endured grete payne & labour / 28
 fferaunt, that was fulle wise, remembred weel this, & thought weel
 it were litle maistry to annoy them / and thought he had ben idle
 a gret while, and not mette with his enemyes / and so he saide to
 his folkes, with a merry contenance / "I se weel we be so presed 32
 on with oure enemyes to haue a trette, whiche lettith not but yn vs,
 for we may haue alle that we can resonably aske / And it is longe
 sith oure neighbours & frendes herde any thing of vs, that knowe not
 weel where we are / therfore it is good that to-morowe we make vs 36
 to be knowen" / Alle they that were yn the place were ioyfulle of
 these wordes, and in especialle Le Surnome and Athis / for in dedes
 of armes were thei neuir satisfied / and so answerd they vnto their
 maister, it shold be right wele done. "so helpe me god," seide 40

Letters to
 this effect are
 sent to the
 Sultan,

who has in
 the mean-
 time been
 harast by
 after attacks
 from Sizé.

Ferant says
 he will make
 a grand sally
 next day.
 Prince Phillip
 and Prince
 David re-
 joice.

- fferaunt, "I thinke to-morowe, with the helpe of god, to take suche
 acqueyntaunce amonges them, that they shalle not alle be pleased /
 for it is longe sith we made theim any grete assaute / and therefore
 4 go eueri man to his reste / and be vp to-morowe vpon the point of
 the day / and eueri man serue god / and we shall do aftir as weel as
 we may" / Thus eueri man went to reste him. And that night
 made fferaunt al his smaft ordenaunce to be brought toward the Ferant
 8 Turkes loggynge / and on that side of the Towne made he to lay his
 grete Bombardes, ageinst the comynge of his enemyes / and there
 made he to be kepte moo fayrer & sure watche. In the mornynge / musters his
 toward the poynt of day, were his folkes assembled about him / so men early,
 12 ordeyned he a good company, as him thought sufficiant y nough
 to discomfite the wacche that was bifore / for to wyne the Turkes
 Bombardes, for they thought it was light y-nough to do / and of the and makes
 first company he made Capteynes, Le Surnome & Athis / for wel Princes
 16 knewe he that corageously they wolde do this entirprise / And the Phillip and
 remenaunt of his folkes he guyded him self, for he thought the David cap-
 first company shold haue nede of releef: thus ordeyned he the tains of the
 assawte / And whan it was purueide, Le Surnome & Athis ordeyned first Batta-
 20 their folkes redy at the gate that was assigned vnto them / than lion.
 made fferaunt the yate ¹to be opende, and went out / and ascried [¹ leaf 61]
 the Turkes wacche, and they wende fult weel to haue diffendid
 them / but their diffence litle auailed / for Surnomes company and
 24 Athis put as many to the swerde as they might gete, without They kill
 takynge of any prisoners. This first company passith forth with so all the Turks
 grete corage & hardinesse that, er the Turke and his folkes might they take,
 be armed, thei came to his logging, killyng and sleynge alle that
 28 euir mette with them / and ouirthrowe Tentres and Pavilions; and
 did so moche in armes that eueri man fled fro them / whan fferaunt
 sawe them passe so fer / he knewe it shold be grete auenture of and go so
 their retourne / and therefore toke he his feliship, & went aftir them / far forward
 32 and passed by the place where the wacche had ben, and where that Ferant
 moche of the Turkes ordenaunce lay, whiche he made labores, bothe has to march
 men & wommen, hane in to the Towne / whil he went to releef his in support.
 first company. and this assaute dured til the sonne risynge / and
 36 there was the noise and the crie so grete / that men might not haue
 herde the thondre / and the Turkes drewe them alle to the Turke,
 so grete a multitude that fferaunt saw wele his folkes might not
 long endure there / wherfore he made to blowe reetrete; and by
 40 than had his first company taken so many prisoners, that they were
 He blows the
 retreat.

almoost as many as them self / and ther were many of theim noble
 men / and of the Turkes counseil, suche as had ben at the communica-
 cion of the trews / whan they withdrewē them / Surnome & Athis
 were the last / and put their folkes & their prisoners bfore them / 4
 and so moche endured they than, that it was meruaile; and had
 not fferauent their good maister than releued them, they had neuir
 retourned agein in-to the Town / and it was meruaile to wite hou
 many Surnome & Athis slowe at their retrayte / thus entred they 8
 in-to the Towne with alle their prisoners, to the grete damage and
 losse of the Turke, & litle vnto theim. In this grete brewte and
 trouble, came agein the heraldes, that had ben messangers from the
 Turke vnto the kyng of Sizile / and sawe the feeldes fulle of men of 12
 armes, & had herde the noise and the crie more than ij. myle
 thens / This auenture turned to grete damage & displeasir to the
 Turke & his company / for thei sawe weel at length, by litle & litle
 their power sholde empaire / for whan they with-drewē them they 16
 knewe wele what Losse they had / for they founde of their folkes
 moo then xv C. dede, and moo then ij C. prisoners taken. If the
 Turke had grete sorowe, it is no question, for the losse was turned
 vpon a grete party of the best of his hous / He coude not thinke 20
 that Le Surnome nor Athis were any mortalle men, but ij. thinges
 sente doune by the god of the cristen / for his destruction / for him
 semed, and alle othir, that there might not be so moche worthynesse
 yn the body of any erthely man, as he founde in theim that day / 24
 thus ranne² the renomee of them thorough alle the hoste / Thus
 whan the Turke was withdrawn, the heraldes, that y haue tolde
 you of bfore / entred in-to his Tente / and deliuerd him their
 lettres, whiche he redde / and then made alle theim to come vnto 28
 him, that were of his counselle / at that tyme beyng present / than
 made he to come afore him agein the messangers / and commaundid
 theim to telle suche credence as they had from the kynge of Sizile /
 and they made their report weel and wisely, as they that were 32
 of grete discrecion / whiche was suche as ye haue herde before,
 accordyng to thentent of the lettres / And to make shorte tale, the
 Turke agreed to the request of the kyng of Sizile right gladly / and
 hadde good cause / for eueri day he sawe his strenght empayre / So 36
 he made the Saufconditz to be made vp for suche names as the
 heraldes had brought / and in alle haste the Saufconditz, made and
 sealed, were sent agein vnto the kynge of Sizile. Ye may weel

They re-enter
Sizile, with all
their prison-
ers,

[1 lf. 61, bk.]
200, and have
slain 1500
Turks.

The Heralds
from the
King of Sicily
reach the
Sultan,

who agrees
to the King's
request,

and gives the
safeconducts
he want.

thinke, that whan fferaunt and his company were entred agein in-to
the Towne, they made grete ioy of the goode auenture that god had
youden them that day. And whan he shold go to dyner, he made
4 as many knyghtes and noble men sitt at his boorde as might haue
Rome / and ij. boordes beside / aminges whiche company, Surnome
and Athis were not forgotten, of whom he had more ioie than of
any ertly men / and not without cause / for he had seen hem do
8 in armes that day yncredibly / for they had taken with their awne
handes vpone a iij.^{xx} prisoners / and alwey deliuerd hem to othir
for to kepe / while they contynued in bataile, without hauyng any
regarde or remembraunce to couetise / as they that desired no
12 thinge but to gete worship / and to do seruice to god in their
cristen feith / for euerich thought in his owne mynde that they
had y-nough in their owne contrees. hou be it, their ma'ners re-
sembled no thinge kynges sones; they demeaned them liker pouere
16 gentilmen / ffor albe-it there was noon so honorable as they two /
yet for no fortune or auenture that couth befall them / they wolde
neur take on them to be knyghtes, excusyng them alway by the
symplenesse of their birthe / and they hadde reason not to take on
20 them the ordre of knyghthode / for they were knyghtes long before /
hou be it, nouthor of them vndirstode of other / what birthe they
were of / And fferaunt their maister, at his dyner, reported to them
their outrageous hardinesse, in maner blamyng them of that they
24 had done that day / for in abidyng them had he almoost lost grete
part of his people / and if he coude haue thought that they wolde
thus haue be rewled, he wold rather haue lefte them keepyng the
Towne / than haue had them forth to the assaute. thei answerde
28 no thinge vnto their maister / but were al shamefast of his wordes,
and thought that a nothir tyme they wolde not do so / but when
they were in like caas agein / that purpose was alle lost and for-
gotten / Aftir dyner, fferaunt made to visite his prisoners / and
32 founde that he had a party of the grettist & moost prevy of the
Turkes counselle, wherof he was right ioifulle, as reason was, and
made them to be kepte, eueri man aftir his worship / and thus
abideth he in his place, all ioyfulle & assured of his enemyes / til
36 that he herde tidinges of the kyng of Sizile / as ye shalle here / ye
haue here before weel vndirstande hou the Turke sent vnto the
kyng of Sizile saufecondite for iij. of his knyghtes to come to
fferaunt / This saufecondite was borne vnto the kyng by the same
40 heraldes that late had ben with him fro the Turke, which Sauf-

Prince Philip
and Prince
David, single-
handed, took
above 60
prisoners.

[1 leaf 62]

But Ferant
reproaches
them for their
dangerous
hardihood.

The Turkish
safeconducts
are given to
the King of
Sicily,

who sends 4
knights to
Ferant.

[1 lf. 62, bk.]
These 4 Sicilian
knights

tell Ferant of
the Sultan's
wish to ransom
K. Ferras,
bras,

and the
King's wish
for Ferant's
advice.

Ferant tells
the Sicilian
knights of
the prowess
of Princes
Philip and
David.

condite the kynge reseeyued, and made it to be redde / & founde
that it was good & sure / Than purvaide he the iiij. knightes to go
to fferaunt / and they toke leue of the kynge & the quene, & of their
faire daughter, & of alle the ladies & gentilwomen / & tolde them 4
whider they wente / and eche of theim made their recommeda-
cions / And faire Iolante forgate not to recommaunde hir to
Surnome; and she and alle the ladies seide amonges them / that
fferaunt was a notable knyght, and honorably had borne him, and 8
was worthy to be renommed of alle othir that they knewe / On the
morow erly the knightes departid, and spede them so, that withyn
litol while they came to fferaunt, of whos comyng he ¹was right
ioyfuH / for they were his special frendes / & thought wele that 12
they had brought some grete tidynges / he brought them to their
loggynges / and made them all the chere that was in his power /
& when they were rested a litil while, fferaunt and they went to
counselle in-to a chambr / and there tolde they him eueri worde, 16
hou the Turke had sent vnto the kynge of Sizile / and hou the
matier was debated before the kynge, for the delyueraunce of kynge
fferabrace / and the causes that bothe thies knyghtes shewed / and
hou it was determined by the kynge and alle his counselle that, 20
without thavice and agrement of him, the kynge wolde answeere to
no thyng of this matier, for suche causes as had ben elegged before /
whiche thei declared and shewed vnto fferaunt / And whan he had
herde thise tidynges, he thought the matier was of grete peyce / 24
wherfore he wolde make no sodeyn answeere, but made his delay
vpone Surnome, sayng that the matier touched him, and that he
ought to be called to this counselle / And this they apointed an
houre, at whiche tyme Le Surnome shold be ther / and fferaunt 28
seide that he was right wise, & might wele be called to counsell in
eueri matier aswele as in that / bothe for his hie wisdome & grete
vertu / and than tolde he vnto the knightes of Sizile of the grete
worthinesse of Surnome and Athis, & hou he sawe neur noon 32
comparable vnto them, but that Surnome passed alle other / hou be
it, Athis folowed moche the condicions of Surnome, bothe in honour
& largesse / and in habilitie of his persone; and fferaunt saide there
was no knight in the world might avaunte him of the company of 36
Such two as he was serued with. Than he told hem hou le Sur-
nome receyued Athis vnto his company / and in what maner he
came / and hou ther was in Surnome noon envie / for he wold so
gladly reporte the worthinesse and prowes of his felawe, that by his 40

maner and speche it semed he thought him self, nor noon othre,
comparable vnto him / and reputed him self right ewrous that god
had sent him suche a felawe / and than reherced he grete armes that
4 the two felawes had done duryng the sege / and the drede that
their enemyes had of theim, and of the grete comfort and hardinesse
that his company toke in theim : and thorough their grete worthi-
nesse the Towne was double encoraged / Thies tidynges tolde he to
8 þe knyghtes of Sizile, ¹wherof they thought grete meruaile, and
Iuged for trouthe that god had sente them this meruailous fortune,
for sauacion of the realme / And so shewed it weel ; “ for they that
no thinge were worth / thorough theim be at this day as valiaunt as
12 men can fynde / and they that no thinge dred vs, be at this day
the moost failyng and wrecchid nacion that lyueth ; and parde this
werke may not be without miracle.” with suche language passed
forth the day til the houre that they had taken to assemble agein
16 in counselle, at whiche tyme Le Sournome was sent for to come
amonges them / and at his comyng was the matier alle newly
reherced / like as ye herde before, seyng vnto Le Surnome, that the
kyng had gyuen them in charge to haue his aduise & agrement
20 theryn. fferaunt had weel remembred the matier / and seid ther
vnto the knyghtes, “ ye se weele in what caas we be / and the
greatest harme that we endure, is the prisoners that ben here, þat
gretely dispende our vitaille / hou be it, y thanke god we be yet
24 resonably weel purvaide / wherfore it shalle not nede the kyng to
haue no drede of vs / but that we shalle be able to abide them
lenger than shal be their ease to lye aboute vs / & y purpose to put
those that be noble men to fynaunce / and to put the tothir to
28 dethe ; and by this meane shalle oure vitaille endure vs lenger. And
as touchyng your charge of puttyng kynges fforabrace to fynaunce /
y shal sone say as y thinke / suche thinge may befall that the
kyng wold for no thing had put him to ffynaunce. It is a faire
32 thinge whan he hath in his hande the same that is sufficient to
delyuere him / if the caas so fortune. But if it were the kynges
pleisir, vpon good apointment and good hostages, to enlarge him
for a terme / perauenture for his deliuerance may be founde peas
36 bitwene the kyng & the Turke / The visage of man makith vertu /
for if he be present, he may more lightly fynde frenship in his
brother and other frendes / than if he be stille in prison ; for his
brother, seyng him in that daunger, shalle haue gretter pite and
40 compassion of him / than he hath now / wherfore me thinketh his

[1 leaf 63]
The Knights
of Sicily
recognize
God's hand
in the help
sent.

Prince Philip
attends Fer-
ant's Council.

Ferant pro-
poses to let
his noble
prisoners be
ransomed, and
the others
kild.

Ferabras
must be only
enlarged for
a time.

enlargissing, surely made, shalle do but profit vnto the Realme."

After that fferaunt had thus seide / the knyghtes wolde wite the
 [1 ff. 63, bk.] opinion of Surnome, whiche saide: "my lorde my ¹maister, that
 here is, me thinkith hath taken the best way / & be thus doying / 4
 the kyng shalt not be differred from his prisoner, but haue him
 alway stille in daunger / and if it please the kyng of his grace, I
 Prince Philip wolde of one thinge beseche him / that if king ffrabras be enlarged
 thinks King ffrabras should be
 sworn to free
 all Christian
 prisoners in
 Turkish
 hands,
 and to stop
 all oppression
 of the poor.
 Some of
 Ferant's pri-
 soners
 ask to be
 allowed to
 talk with
 K. Ferabras
 about his
 ransom and
 their own.
 [2 leaf 64] them to reherce agein in their presence like as ²they had seide vnto
 him. And whan the knyghtes of Sizile had herde them / they
 withdrewen them, & counseled a litil to-gedre / and thought, seyng 40

- what they had saide, there coude no thinge but weel falle of their spekyng with kyng firabrace / than called they agein the prisoners vnto them / and asked them what hostage they wold lay for them /
4 and they saide it sholde be harde for them to lay suche hostages as fferaunt shold be content with / but, and it pleasid him, that one of them might go to the Turke, and that othir abide in hostage, on his lif / he thought it sholde suffice / fferaunt and the knyghtes
8 accorded herto / And thus that one of theim is departed vnto the Turke, whiche was right fer thens / and tolde the Turke alle the maner how his felawe and he had done with fferaunt and with the tothir knyghtes of Sizile, that were sent to fferaunt from the kynge,
12 whiche were accorded vpon good hostages, to lete his felawe and him go to kynge firabrace / whan the Turke herde this, he was right glad / and thought the matier was weel bigonne to breke to his honour / for eueri man might weel thinke, that what so euir
16 his brother or the tothir prisoners did / was for their owne deliuer-ance / and not for the profit of the Turke, nor at his request / so alle thinge was concluded to the pleasir of þe knyghtes prisoners / and suche hostage delynered as fferaunt was content with / The
20 Turke charged his knyghtes, and praied them to employe wele this matier / and to shewe his brother playnly what case he stode yn / for he wende neuir to haue seen the Houre of his departyng, with his honour and lif / Thus departed the knyghtes, and came agein
24 to fferaunt / and in alle haste were their promyses accomplisshed / and they redy to departe and go with the knyghtes of Sizile / On the morow erly, the knyghtes of Sizile toke leue of fferaunt and of alle the company, to whom they seide a lowde / that it was the
28 moost honorable company that was that day vpone the erthe / & aught moost to be renomed in alle honour / sayng that the kyng thanked them alle, as them that he was asmoche biholden vnto, as euir was prince vnto his suggesttes, praing them alle way to contynue
32 their high & good corage / Than seide there many, with an high voice, “say vnto the kynge, oure soueray[n] lord / that for vs he
1 make no trettee nor apointment to his preiudice / for, bettir
pleasith vs this lif, with suche payne as we haue, than euir did any
36 dauncyng Iustes or any, othir disporte.” The knyghtes answerd / “ye may be sure that god wolle gif you grace to departe out of this place with honour, and then shalle ye se the ladies, where as ye shalle be welcome / and right wele recomforted / & so haue they
40 grete cause / and wele y wote, whan ye come / we that no thing haue

They propose
as hostages
half their
number.

One Turkish
party goes to
the Sultan,
and reports
proceedings.

They return
to Ferant,

and start with
the Sicilian
messengers,

[1 ff. 64, bk.]

done in armes, shal be litil set by / but alle out cast" / Aftir thise
wordes, they toke leue and departed, seyng to alle the company /
that they trusted within litil while they shold here good tidinges.
Than spedde they so wele their iourney, that they came sone vnto 4
the kyng, which grete desire had to here tidynges of fferaunt, & of
this Towne, and of alle the company therin, & also to knowe what
opinions fferaunt helde in such message as he sent hem, touchyng
the delyueraunce of the Turkes Brother. It was not long aftir 8
their comyng, but the kyng made them come vnto hym / whiche
tolde hym hou they had sped in alle thinges like as is a-boue
rehered / and howe they had by thauice of fferaunte / brought ij.
knightes prisoners in their company / for they thought that the 12
kyng, by heryng of their entent, might no thinge lese / And also
shewed the kyng ferther of the opinion of fferaunt and of Sur-
nome, whiche the kyng toke right wele in gre, & thought the
enlargyng of kyng fferabrace bettir and more prope[r] for him than 16
his clere deliueraunce / Than sent he forthe knightes prisoners, and
asked them what their entent was / & they seide / that if it pleased
him, they wolde speke with kyng fferabras. Than sent the kyng for
alle his counselle / and shewed them the message of his knightes 20
prisoners / and it thought them alle, that it was best to lete them
speke with kyng fferabrace a-part, or yn what wise thei wolde / for
thei thought their speche might litil hurte the kyng / but rather
of lyklyhode be to his pleasir & profit, seyng the cas they were yn / 24
And assone as this counselle was thus concluded, kinge fferabrace
was enformed how thies folkes were come to speke with hym / and
hou the king was wele content that they shold speke with him alle
at their pleasir / and that they shold abide a day or ij., or as longe 28
as it pleased him to telle him of their tidynges / and wherfore
^[1 leaf 65] they desired to speke with hym. kyng fferabrace, that sith his
takyng had herde no tidynges of his Brothir, nor of noon othir
frende of his / was right ioyfulle to here tidinges of them; & yet 32
the more, that the kyng was pleased that he shold speke with them
a-part / for he wist weel he shold be the bettir, assertheyned of alle
tidynges / than were thei sone brought vnto him. when they sawe
him, they salowed him, accordyng to their dewte, the teeres falling 36
downe from their visages, for pite of his longe enprisonment / And
whan he espied that / he was in grete drede to here som euyl
tidynges of his brothir or of his Nevewe; & anone as they that
brought them were departed / he called them vnto hym / & asked 40

and soon
reach the
King of
Sicily.

The Sicilian
Knights tell
their King of
Ferant,

and his pro-
posal that
K. Ferabras
shall be only
enlarged.

The Turkish
Messengers

are allowed
to see K.
Ferabras.

- them of alle their tidynges / for seth he was first prisoner, herde he
 neuir tidynges / ffor the kynge of Sizile had so ordeyned / ffor him
 thought / that if men shold telle him good tidynges, for his partie it
 4 was not couenable / & what so euir any man tolde him of the wele
 of the cristen partie, he wold not haue bileued it / but thought it
 had ben rather seide yn maner of avaunt / and therfore the kynge
 had ordeyned that no man shold telle him no tidynges / wherfore
 8 he was now the more desirous to here of their tidynges, & askede
 theim of his brothir, & of his nevewe, & of alle their armee. and
 they tolde him of alle the certaynte / & of the cristen flete / hou it
 fortunéd amonges theim by tempest; hou they were scaterd / &
 12 many of them drowned, & a vesselle of theirs brake vpon the ryvage,
 even aforne the Turkes Tentés, and many of them came to londe on
 lyue, whiche were slayn alle at their landyng, sauf one, that Orkays,
 the Soudans sone, toke with his owne handes, and of his delyner-
 16 aunce / and how Orkays was takyn by him aftirward, & deliuered,
 as is a-foré reherced / and than they tolde him of alle the worthy-
 nesse of them withyn the towne / and in especial of him þat was
 taken by Orkays, and of his felawe, Le Surnome, whiche passeth
 20 alle othre; & tolde him of the losse that his brothir had had sith he
 lay aboute the Towne / aswelle by them of the cuntre, as of them
 withyn þe Towne, wherthorough his folkes might neuir be out of
 harneys, nor alt-moost had neuir rest / and yet were they neuer the
 24 nerre, by ought they coude se, of their conquest, but rather ferther
 & ferther / than ¹they tolde him what direccíon had ben taken [1 lf. 65, bk.]
 bothe by the Turke and by his counselle / and hou, if he might haue
 departid bifore this tyme with his honour, he had be gone long or
 28 this / but he coude fynde noon othir meane but this / Than tolde
 they him alle the charge that they had from the Turk vnto hym
 self, & of hem alle. king fforabrace, hering thies tidynges, was
 gretly abasshed, seying that in so litel while the worlde was
 32 chaunged with them / for a-boute the tyme of his takyng, their
 enemyes were in suche discorage that thei durst not wele be seen
 at no scarmyssh / yet neuertheles thies tidynges moche displeased
 him not / for he sawe wele therby som profit might growe to his
 36 delyueraunce / whiche he desired ouir alle thing; so toke they
 amonges them the best conclusion that they coude, to conduyte this
 matier to the pleasir of his brothir and to the honour of him self,
 and desired to haue certaine of the kynge of Siziles seruantes, and
 40 Counselle to speke with him / and with suche as had be sent vnto

He asks for
their tidings.

The Turkish
Messengers
tell K. Fer-
abras how
Prince Or-
kays captured
Prince David,

and was then
taken by
him;

and what
losses the
Sultan has
sufferd,

[1 lf. 65, bk.]

and how he
wants to get
out of the
war.

K. Ferabras
is abashd,

but sees that
things may
work to set
him free.

He asks for
Sicilians to
confer with
him.

K. Ferabras
tells the Sici-
lian Knights

that his
brother, the
Sultan, pro-
poses to
ransom him,
and make a
Truce with
the King of
Sicily.

The Sicilians
say the King

will only
enlarge him
for a time,

him from his brothir / This came to the knowlage of the kynge of
Sizile, and he assigned those same that he had sent before to
fferaunt, to knowe his aduise and counselle / and whan thei were
comen to kinge ffrabrace, he seide vnto them yn this manere / 4
"ffaire lordes, the cause that I haue sente vnto the kynge to speke
with some of his counselle is this / ye knowe wele that y haue ben,
as me thinkith, right long a prisoner, to my grete annoy / ye se here
also thies two knyghtes, that be prisoners aswel as y / hou be it, 8
they haue not contynued so long, yet are they gretly annoyed, as it
shewith wele by that y shalle shewe vnto you / they haue remembrid
for their deliuerance, and haue ioyned me yn the matier with
them / for this that they thinke the Turke wille be sonner con- 12
fourmable to any resonable apointment for my wele, than for
theires, by cause y am his brothir; and y shal telle you what they
haue aduised me: It is, that y shold make a request to be put to
ffynauce, and by meane therof the Turke shold be content to take 16
trewes for half a yere, or a yere, with the kyng of Sizile & alle his /
wherby the sege shold be reised, and prisoners delyuerd, aswele of
one part as of othir / and by this meane bothe parties sholde ease
them for that ceason / whiche, as me thinketh, sholde be a speciaH 20
wele and comfort vnto this Reaume, that hath so long contynued
yn werre. ¹This are the mocions that they made vnto me, whiche
is to me right pleasaunt, if they coude haue the power to bring it to
the same conclusion with my lord, my Brother / wherof y haue 24
grete doute, seyng that he lith at the sege before his Towne, that
but late was wonne from hym / Neuirtheles, if it please the kynge
of Sizile to entende this matier, I wold employ me to the same
entent / and require alle my frendes to giff the Turke counselle to 28
the same" / whan the knyghtes of Sizile had herd this mocione of
kyng ffrabras, they seide vnto hym / "fforsothe, sir, or this tyme
we haue herde the kyng, oure souuerayn Lord, say / that his entent
was neuir to deliuer you till the warres were ended bitwene the 32
Turke, your brother and him, without ye were rescowed by force /
hou be it, we knowe not whether he wold be content, vpon good
hostages, to enlarge you at your request, for to fynde some trefy of
peas betwene your Brother and him, whiche thinge we alle, his com- 36
pany, [desire]. And if vpon this wele ye wille speke and charge vs,
therwith, we wol make report vnto the kynge therof, and othirwise
not" / Kynge ffrabrace helde longe vpon his vttir delyuerance /
But the knyghtes of Sizile wold in no wise agree therto, seyng that 40

- they were, alle be it they were not worthy, of the kynges counselle /
 "and if we shold gif him avise of youre delyueraunce, and not
 assured of peas, we were not trewe vnto him ; wherfore be sure we
 4 wille neurir speke therof as long as we lyue, without the warres be and then only
if the war is
stopt.
 ended / But if that were so, we wold right gladly employ vs to your
 request / and now wille for your enlargyng, vndir suche fourme as
 we haue seide you / trustyng the sonner to come therby to the weel
 8 of peas / ffor we be sure ye wille more largely employ you therto, ye
 beyng in daunger, than if ye were at your liberte." ¶ Aftir alle
 thies wordes, he trusted to come to his delyueraunce. Natheles,
 kyng fforabrace was content that they shold speke to the kyng
 12 for his enlargyng. The knyghtes seide, that with right god wille
 they wold so do / And thus departed and came vnto the kyng of
 Sizile, and made their report, as ye haue herde / and founde the The Sicilian
Knights re-
port to their
King.
 kyng enclynable y-nough to entende to thise matiers, seyng the
 16 counselle that he had hadde / and in abregging this matier without
 moo wordes, they were concluded that, vpon good hostages, suche as
 the kyng of Sizile was pleased with / that kyng fforabrace was K. Ferabras
is set free
for a time,
 enlarged and departed from the kyng of Sizile / of whom he toke [1f. 66, bk.]
 20 his leue, and of the quene and of their fair doughtir / & of alle the
 ladies & gentilwommen. The kyng made him honourably to be
 condyte / And so wele sped he him / that in litil while he came to and goes to
his brother,
the Sultan.
 the Turke / whiche made him right grete chere / and so did alle
 24 they that were there with him / this night was he gretly fested and
 welcomed of his Brothir, and had moche talkyng to-gedir / for he
 was a worthy knight, a passing wise man in grete matiers. So
 founde he his Brother alle of othir opinion than he lefte him /
 28 a[n]d so did he alle them that he spake with ; wherof he had grete
 mervaille. In litil while knewe he alle the pleasir of his brothir /
 and sawe the maner of the sege / whiche thought him right
 32 straunge. He sawe the fersnesse of them withyn the Towne / and
 herd reported the grete damagis that they had done to the Turke
 and to alle his company : the prowesse of Surnome, and Athis his
 felawe, was often rehersed vnto him. Thus many tidynges herd
 he / but noon to the honour of his brothir, nor of his partie, wherof
 36 he was right sorowfull, and thought wele in him self that it was
 nedefult to haue a longe trews / for those folkes were discouraged in
 alle pointes. Than put he him in diligence to this trews / and othir
 notable folkes, and laboured it as shortly as they coude, so that the
 40 trews was taken bytwene them for a yere / and whan the surtees He works
for a Truce ;
and one is
arranged
for a year.

were made, sworne, and ensealed, the Turke departed from the
 seege / & made alle prisoners to be yolden agein, aswele of one
 party as of othir, saving kyng fforbrace, whiche was but enlarged.
 And for asmoche as fforaunt and his company hadde moo prisoners 4
 than the Turke had / he had in recompense a C. thousand bes-
 aunes / and eueri besaunt worth a Duket / and, beside that, the
 Turke deliuered agein ij. Townes / and deliuerd to the pouere folkes
 of those Townes alle that they had lost / ¶ Now hath the Reaume 8
 of Sizile endured this ij. yere yn grete payne and mysery / But sith
 the comyng of Surnome it began alle othirwise to turne. ¶ Thus
 departed the seege from byfore the Towne, to the grete honour of
 the kyng of Sizile, and of them *withyn*. thorough alle the Reaume 12
 This trews was cried & pub[li]ssed / wherof Surnome & Athis were
 right sory / for they thought a long terme to be a yere in peas /
 seyng the warres be not ended; and they purposed not to departe
 before the ende of the warres. The kyng of ¹Sizile, that saw 16
 him thus yn peas for a yere, bithought him what he might do alle
 that ceason / where of a longe while afore he had not ben idle so
 gretly / and so he sent for fforaunt, whom he desired moche to se /
 for moche he thought him bounden vnto him / and praied him that 20
 he wolde bringe *with* him bothe his seruantes, for moche desired
 he to se them, for the grete renome they were of; and so did alle
 they of his court, bothe ladies & gentilwomen, and knyghtes &
 squyers, & alle othir / Anon as fforaunt had receyued his letter to 24
 come to the kyng, and aftir that he had departed right largely
with the noble of his company / so that they alle were wele content /
 he wente in alle haste to the kyng / to whom it is not to be asked
 if he were welcome / where at his comyng the kyng toke him in 28
 his armes, seyng / “my frende, ye haue don so moche for me and
 myn honour, that y am alle youres” / Than toke he Surnome in his
 armes, and [had] of hym ynly grete ioy / than fforaunt shewed Athis
 vnto him, of whom he had herde so moche worship / & then he in 32
 like wise welcomed him fulle honourably / seyng: “what shal y
 sey vnto you, faire lordes / ye thre be the right arme and diffence
 of my reaume” / Aftir this, fforaunt & his company went vnto the
 quene, and ladies & gentilwomen, whiche fulle honourably and ioi- 36
 fully welcomed them / And moche was Athis loked on amonges
 hem / for they had not sene him bifore / and they seide that god
 had gyuen him grete grace / for heryng sey / his worthines was
 meruailous / and his habilitie suche *pat* there was none comparable 40

Prince Philip
has happily
changed the
state of
Sicily.

[1 leaf 67]

The King of
Sicily sends
for Ferant,
and Princes
Philip and
David.

They come,

and he joy-
fully wel-
comes them.

So do the
Queen and
the Ladies,

- to him, saf le Surnome, that passed al the worlde. This day passed forth in pleasir and in disporte / and euery day after they disported them with the ladies and gentilwomen yn alle honour. The kynges and Princess Iolante.
4 doughter, þat was so faire, as ye haue herde bifore / was right glad to haue thies gentilmen in hir company, without thinkyng of any harme or of any grete loue / hou be it, and hir fortune were to marye / perauenture she wold a sholde resemble one of them two /
8 and in especial, Le Surnome. & if she had knowen that he had be either a kynges sone, or a grete prynce, she wolde haue gyuen hir herte vnto hym a-fore alle othir / But in asmoche as she thought he was but of smalle reputacion in regarde to hir estate, she had no
12 suche ymaginacion, but ¹only to be accompanied with them in alle honorable disportes, and to make them frendly chere more than any othir / for the grete renome they were of, and for the good seruise they had done to hir fadir / Thus endured they a grete
16 while in makyng Iustes, and turnays, and alle other disportes, for they had no thing ellis to do / And yn euery thinge Le Surnome & Athis passed alle othir / Now leuyth the tale a while to speke of the kyng of Sizile and of his company / that restith them this
20 wynter, as ye haue herde, and retourneth to speke of the Turke, of his Brother, and of their company. [*Illumination: March of Sultan, Knights, &c.*]
Accordyng to suche apointment as was taken, the Turke The Sultan withdraws, weary, to his biggest town in Sicily,
24 departed fro the seege and alle his company, & drewe him in to the gretest towne that he helde at that tyme, that he had conquered in Sizile / so very and trauailed with the warres, that almost he might be no weryer, and so were alle his folkes, fro the moost to the leest; for, moche payne and mysery had they
28 endured at the sege, as wele of famyne as othirwise / and the Turke thought wele, that he was escaped with his honour fro the worst bargayn that he was atte alle his lyue, by the meanes of his Brother / and no man coude sey that this trews that was taken, had
32 be for his pleasir / or by his cause, but only by the request of his Brother and othir of his folkes that had ben prisoners / Aftir that he and his folkes were a litil rested / he concluded to leue grete garrisons / and his places wele furnysshed, and he and his Brother
36 to retourne in-to their Contre / and seide vnto his folkes that he lefte ther / "that he wolde not faile at the ende of trews to be there agein, so wele accompayned, that he wolde ²neur departe then garrisons all his conquests there,
thens til he had accomplisshed alle his pleasirs." These titynges [² leaf 68]
40 wele ordeyned / he departed out of Sizile, & drewe vnto his owne and goes home.

There, Prince
Humphrey of
England lies
in prison.

The Sultan
sends for
him;

and as he's
thin and ill,

[1 lf. 68, bk.]

gives him up
to K. Fera-
bras, who

soon gets him
into good
condition,

Marches / and his brother *with* him / whan they came ther / it is no
doute but he was honorably resceyued of alle his suggesttes / for of a
grete while he had not be *with* hym, he abode there a ceason or he
wold speke any thyng of suche purposes as he entended / But kyng 4
ffirabrace foryate not the couenaunt he had made at his enlargyng,
for he had sworne vpon his lawe / that he sholde ayen alle cristen
prisoners that were in any Londe of his brothers or his / And in
the same towne that his Brother and he lay, was yong Humfray 8
prisoner, the kyng of Englonde's sone / hou be it, noman knewe
what he was; & of that yonge prisoner was kyng ffirabrace
enfourmed / and than wente he vnto the Turke, and tolde him of
his promes that he had made at his departir out of Sizile / And 12
the Turke asked if any prisoners were in that Towne / and he seide
"yea" / for there had ben a vesselle takyn with xiiij. persones yn
it / wherof they had reserued but ij., and that one of them dyde,
and that othir is yet alyue, a yonge man so megre & seke, that, as 16
men thought, he might lyue no while / Than the Turke sent for
him; & whan he sawe him, he asked him of whens he was / this
yonge Humfray; þat was so our come as he that neuir bi-fore had
ben acostomed yn suche mysery & pouert / answerd with *with* low 20
vois & feble, "fforsothe, sir, y am cristen, borne of the reaume of
Englond / and my name is Ector / By fortune y arryued here / grete
almes it had ben for them that toke me to haue put me to deth /
but sith it pleaseth god that y endure this longe payne, y am con- 24
tente." The turke, that sawe him megre, & alle out of likyng, was
no thing sory therof. And notwithstanding / that by his owne
counselle and his agrement / his brother had made thus promys, yet
thought he alwey in his mynde, that asmoche as he might, his 28
brother shold neuir fynde prisoner / but that he wolde put them to
dethe or they came yn his brothirs handes; for if he coude knowen
of any prisoner bi-fore his brothir / he wolde haue made him
secretly be put to dethe / But for the symplesse & pouert of his 32
persone, he gruggid the lesse his deliuerance, & toke him vnto ¹his
brother / that ful grete pite had of this yong man / & sent him
vnto his loggyng / & made him to be eased & serued of that was
nedefulle to hym, made him to be bayned and newe clothid of alle 36
that longed vnto him / and wythyn little while, by the comfort
and helpe of kyng ffirabrace, he amended / and came ayen to his
grete bewte / so that euery man had ioy to beholde him / kinge
ffirabrace thought, assone as he was hole, and that he might ride, 40

- that he wolde sende him yn-to the handes of cristen men / And
many tymes he wold biholde him / & thinke yn his mynde that they
were passing wele fetured / and goodly folkes of Englonde, ffraunce, and admires
his beauty.
4 & Scotland, for by they were of his marches, he remembred of Sur-
nome & Athis, that he had sene at his departir out of Sizile / and
thought that Ector was moche of the same age / and if Surnome had
him, he supposed he wolde be right lothe to lete him oute of his com-
8 pany / And than wolde he thinke / if he had the hardinesse of one
of them / a shold not faile to do grete hurte vnto their party, if he
lyued long. Than was he somtyme yn wille not to sende him; and
than wold he thinke ayen / that he had sworn his feithe, whiche
12 he wold not breke, to dy for it / In this ferme wille contynued he,
and on a day wente to se the Turke, his brother, and brought with
him Ector / whiche aftirward he repented / for vnnethe might he
bryng hym ayein / as ye shal here / The Turke bihelde this yong
16 man that was with his brothir, & thought wele he was a straunger /
for he knewe hym not / he was so gretly chaunged & amendid sith
he sawe him / and wele he thought he semed ful like to come to
grete honour / wherfore he axed his brother what he was; and he
20 tolde him it was the cristen man that was delyuerd vnto him the
last day / "fforsothe," seide the Turke, "I knewe him not, he is so
meruailously amendid / my hert yeneth me, if he be deliuerd, that
he shold do vs grete damage / wherfor, my brother, ther nedith
24 neurir none knowe of this matier / and y pray you, for the wele of
vs and of oure lawe, to be agreable that he may be some night
secretly drowned / for ye knowe wele that by the comyng of one
straunger yn-to Sizile, were ye taken / and almoost to the destruc-
28 cion of vs alle / wherfore y holde youre conscience more hurte,
¹what othe so euir ye haue made, if ye deliuere him, than to do as [¹ leaf 69]
.I. sey / for the grete losse of oure folkes that may come by hym /
wherfore y pray you, brother, to be agreable to my desire / and y
32 wol take the synne on me / And as for shame, ye may noon haue /
for neurir noon shalle knowe it" / whan ffrabrace herde his brother
sey thus / and sawe the deth of Ector his prisoner redy, if he
socoured him not / he was so wroth and sory / that of a grete while
36 he coude not answere, for right moche loued he Ector; and also in
his lawe he was right trewe and a noble knyght, whiche shalle
shewe by hym yn alle his werkes. The Turke, þat sawe hym in
grete thought / and that he answerd not / asked hym ageyn /
40 "how say ye hereto, faire brother" / "fforsothe," seide ffrabrace,

One day
K. Ferabras
takes Prince
Humphrey to
see the Sultan
again.

And as he
looks so well,

the Sultan
proposes to
have him
quietly
drownd.

This angers
K. Ferabras,

and he says
that he has
sworn to free
Christian
prisoners.

If the Sultan
kills Hum-
phrey,

K. Ferabras
will at once
give himself
up to the
Christians.

[1 lf. 69, bk.]

He will keep
his promise,
so far as he
can.

"I haue fere to sey any thyng that shold displese you / and there-
fore was y so longe stille / but, sir, ye are mighti, and a roialle
kyнге, yn whom aught to be founde more trouthe than yn a meane
persone. And y sey for me, I am not so mighti a kyнге as ye 4
be / albeit y am your brothir and a kyng / I haue promysed my
feith, suche as ye knowe by youre owne agrement / and if y shold
be forsworne for one only man / forsothe, my lord, it shold be noon
honour to you nor me / And where as ye say, it shold neuir be 8
knownen / trewly y shold be as sorowfulle to knowe my self vntrewe
as alle the worlde knewe it. what wold men sey if it were knownen
that y shold put this cristen man to dethe / that was delyuered yn-
to my kepyng for his surete? they wolle likken me to a Bocher that 12
gressith beestes / and than putteth them to dethe / wherefore, y
biseche you, my lorde, take no displeasir though y consente not
herto / for if it so befelle that ye wolde put him to dethe, as ye
may wele y-nough, if it please you, I make promesse to alle the 16
goodes that we bileue on / that y shal neuer aftir abide yn your
seruice, but rather go yelde me prisoner agein, and holde my feith,
and perauenture do som thinge that shalle displease you / what en-
sample shalle oure folkes take at oure dedes if, for so litil a thyng, 20
we shalle breke oure feith and oure promesses" / The Turke, heryng
his brother thus spekyng, saide vnto him thus / "he neuir made no
suche promys, but only for his wele / and as for any promys, but
only for his wele / he might breke it whan he wolde / for he was 24
not sworne therto / and if it were to do agein, he wold neuir do so
moche for him / And said he wold ¹sende to alle his officers thorough
his reaume / that if they had any cristen men in their handes, that
they shold put them to dethe / and seide that he was not bounde to 28
be sugget vnto his brother" / And whan kyng ffrabrace sawe the
Turke wrothe / he answerd right humbly / seyng, "my lord, y
neuir made promes but by your auctorite. And by this meane,
saving your correccion, be ye bounde as well as I. Neuirtheles, ye 32
may do it as it pleasith you; I am not bounde to noon ympossi-
bilite / but y say for me, y shall trewly kepe alle that y haue
promysed as longe as it is possible for me" / The pouere Ector was
yn the chambre alle this while, & thought fulle litle where aboute 36
they were / for he wende fulle wele to be assured of his departyng /
Sone aftir kyнге ffrabrace toke leue of his brother, right sorowfull
& wrothe, & thought in his mynde to kepe his prisoner as surely as
he might, for he drede moche his brother / and so he had cause, for 40

assone as he was departed / he ordeyned folkes to sle yonge Ector, if they might fynde him at any tyme from his brother. he was so angry with the wordes that his brother had seide vnto him, that he
4 thought to be avenged on Ector. On the tothir party kynge ffrabras knewe his brother right cruelle / wherfore he had grete drede of his prisoner, and ordeyned that he shold haue a chambre withyn his owne loggyng / and a xvj. or xx^{ti} men to awaite aboute him /
8 whiche he charged, on their lyues, to awaite wele aboute him / and to diffende him to their powers from alle daungers / and they obeid his commaundement without departyng fro hym at any tyme / Thise folkes that the Turke had youen yn commaundement
12 to slee Ector, put them in alle the deuoir they coude therto; but they coude neuir fynde the meanes to haue him / kynge ffrabras thinkyng alwey on the tyranny of his brother, concluded in him self to sende a-wey his prisoner be night / and to make him surely to
16 be conduyte in-to some cristen lande / and for cause his goyng shold not be espied, he made tho men that he had apointed aboute Ector, to kepe stille his chambre ij. or iij. daies after he was gon, like as he had be stille there / Then tolde he vnto Ector alle thentent of his
20 brothir / and how he was displeased with hym bicause he wold not breke his promes / and therefore wold he sende him nowe thens / and delyuer hym to officers ¹of armes, to whom he had grete trust /
& ordeyned them to ride aH the night / and to kepe the wodes on
24 the dayes / than delyuered he hym to his guydes, & charged them on their lyues to brynge Ector to saufte. Than he made Ector to promyse hym that he shold yelde him prisoner to one that hight Surnome, that was seruaunt with the SenesshaH of Sizile / Ector
28 toke leue of the kynge his maister / and offred hym aH the seruice that he might do / so it were no preiudice vnto his feith / And whan it was night, he departed / and they that shold conduyte him / so secretly, that they were espied of no body. ¶ Nowe
32 retourneth the tale vnto the Turke, that aH-wey contynuede stille in his grete cruelte / He called them that he had commaundid to slee Ector, and asked them / “howe is it that ye haue not done as y haue commaunded you” / and they seide, “that þei might not” /
36 for eueri day was he with kynge ffrabras / & on nightes had he xx^{ti} men waityng on him / when the Turke herd this, he was gretly displeased / In so moche that in a fury he commaundid that iij. or iijj. score of his folkes shold breke vp the dore where as Ector was /
40 and to slee him / and let for no man / this was apointed to be donè

The Sultan tells some of his folk to kill Prince Humphrey.

K. Ferabras sets 20 men to safeguard Prince Humphrey.

[1 leaf 70]

who is to start at night,

and give himself up to Prince Philip.

Humphrey starts.

on the morow / Here-before ye haue herd howe kynge ffrabras
 made to kepe Ectours chamber, like as he had ben there, to thentent
 that he might be a good wey of / or his brother knewe of his
 departing / ffor he knewe wele, and his brother might gete him / 4
 ther shold be founde yn him non othir mercy but deth. Thus
 was Ector departed ij. daies bifore the Turke had made his entir-
 prise vpon him / So the seconde day at night, they came vnto
 the chamber, where as they wende to finde Ector / purposyng 8,
 verily to haue slayne hym, not lettyng for noman. Thus brake
 they vp the dore alle sodeynly vpon them that kepte the chambre /
 and it was in kyng ffrabras owne logging / wherof the crie & the
 noise was suche, that kynge ffrabras himself cam thider, and many 12
 of his folkes with him / And whan they sawe the kinge come, they
 withdrewe them alle, sauf x. or xij. persones that bode stille ran-
 sakyng the chambre, whiche kynge ffrabras made to be hewen
 bifore him. Thise tidinges came to the Turke; and it was tolde 16
 [1 16, 70, bk.] him alle the maner how they ¹came in-to the Chambre / where as
 they founde not Ector, and howe the noise & the crie was suche,
 that his brother came thider, and slowe x. or xij. of his folkes / The
 Turke, herynge this tale, was right sorowfuH and wroth / and sent 20
 for his pryuee counsell / and tolde them aH the matier, without
 hiding of any-thing / bothe of the wordes that were bitwixt his
 brother and him / and how, for displeasir therof, he wold haue put
 Ector to the dethe / and in what wise / and how his brother was 24
 displeased / and had put x. or xij. of his folkes to dethe / which
 was to his grete shame and displeasir / whiche he wold not leue so /
 wherfore he asked their best counsell and advise / ffor if he shold
 folowe his owne wiH / he wolde do his brother a grettir annoy and 28
 displeasir than he had done him yet. They of whom he asked
 counsell were wise, & perceyued wele by his owne tale that the
 defeaute was yn hym / wherfore they seide thus vnto him, "Sir,
 saving youre displeasir, ye haue ben *with* my lorde youre brother 32
 to ouir hasty; for, as vs thinkith, tho wordes that he had vnto you
 meued hym of fre and noble corage; and ye haue done him a
 vilany / sith, in his owne loggyng ye wolde make to slee his folkes;
 for the prisoner was his. And to make folkes come yn be night 36
 with force of armes in-to the loggyng of so noble a kynge as he is /
 it semeth vs a grete offence / seyng he hath done so moche for you /
 we thinke he wiH take this in grete displeasir / And we drede
 moche, yf this matier be not the sonner appesed, grete inconvenience 40

2 days after,
 the Sultan's
 men break
 open King
 Ferabras's
 door,

[1 16, 70, bk.]
 but find
 Prince Ham-
 phrey gone.

The Sultan's
 Privy Coun-
 cil reproach
 him

for his be-
 haviour to
 K. Ferabras.

- may growe therof / The kynge your brother is a Lorde of suche
 corage as ye knowen weel / and for you, and yn your werres, he
 hath aventured body and goodes, and standith at this day yet
 4 prisoner / his men and his sogettes haue done you goode service /
 wherby many of them haue lost their lyues / and this is a smalle re-
 warde that ye yelde him / wherfore we meruaile nought though he
 be displeased / considering like as he seide vn-to you suche promesse
 8 as he made / to deliuiere all the cristen prisoners that were in any
 partie of youre Reaume / bothe by your owne pleasir & agreement /
 wherfore it were litle meruaile if, for the despite that ye haue done
 him / he meued werre against you / So moche as he hath done for
 12 you a-fore this" / "By my trouthe," seide the Turke, "if ¹y coude
 thinke he wolde do so / I sholde sone deliuiere the worlde of
 him" / Than his counselt answerd him, "Remembre, sir, what
 sholde falle ther-of if ye put hym to dethe / ffor he hath fair childre,
 16 whiche shall not be so nigh of blode vnto you as he is / nor in
 affection / whiche wolde rekke lesse to meue werre to yow-ward
 than he wolde / also he is kynge of a noble & a mighti Reaume /
 and wel beloued theryn / and of the moost worthy folkes that ye be
 20 serued of this day, be his sogettes / and they loue him asmoche as
 is possible for any sogettes to loue their Lorde / Thinke ye than to
 be without werre, by sleynge of hym? nay, nay / ye may be sure /
 and that were shold stike nerre you than the werres of Sizile / And
 24 more to your shame & reproef." The Turke, hering thies wordes,
 knewe wele that thise folkes seide hym trouthe / and than seide he
 vnto them, "it behoueth to knowe howe my brother takith this
 thing to hert / I trowe he wolde be wele pleased if ye went to hym /
 28 and if ye thinke it be to, y am content / and that ye say vnto him,
 that y knowe nothings of alle this / and if any haue offendid hym, it
 shal be wele amendid / And if he seme not myn amendes y-nough /
 if he require me of Iustice / y shal do it him. And ye may sey
 32 hym, that y am right sory of this auenture / and if y had knowen
 it a-fore, y wold for no thinge haue ben agreable ther-to / how be it
 y was not pleased of the deliuerance of the cristen man, ffor the
 experience that y haue sene in two only men to oure grete damage /
 36 I pray you do so moche if ye may, that this thinge be wele appeased /
 ffor if it be ferre spoken of / there may growe litle honour therby
 to either of vs bothe." They were glad whan they herde their
 maister thus speke / for the matier was to hym right shamefult /
 40 and they, as good seruauntes, to appease it, toke the charge on them

The Privy
Council
remind the
Sultan of
K. Ferabras's
great ser-
vices.

[1 leaf 71]

They warn
him against
killing Fera-
bras.

The Sultan
asks his
Council to

apologize to
K. Ferabras
for him.

with right good wille, and departed from the Turke, and went to the kyng his brothir / whom they founde all redy to ride / and whan they came, they spake with hym at good leiser, and tolde hym in substaunce alle the wordes as ye haue herde before / And than 4
 K. Ferabras tells the Turkish Council
 [1 lf. 71, bk.] kyng ffarabrace made alle his compleynte vnto them ful pitously / and seide, "my frendes, y cannot bileue that noon of you were consentyng or agreable to do me so grete a wronge, ¹ffor y haue serued my Lord my brother, with my body, my goodes, and alle my 8 power, as longe as y might, so that y am now prisoner, and in way of destruccion / And thus, in his Towne, and of his folkes, there hath be done to me so grete Iniurye, that I am all abasshed to se his men come yn *with* force of armes, to breke vp the dore on my 12 prisoner, to haue murthred hym, as they saide, & haue hurte & wounded my folkes; and y haue none othir socour but to saue my self. fulle long shold it be, or a straunger might be sure *with* hym / whan y, that am his seruauant & his brother, am yn drede of my lif, 16 & neuir did thinge that of right shold displease him / wherfore it is bettir for me to withdrawe me in-to my contre, and assay amonges my sogettes to gedre my fynaunce, whiche y trust wilt not leue me yn this daunger / than to abide in this Towne, and be alwey in 20 thise vnkyndely daungers; wherfore, my frendes, y wilt departe / and Recommaunde me to my Lord & my brother, and sey hym that y compleyne me of hym to hym self / and yet alwey y shal con- tynue his trewe seruauant and brother" / Thise wordes sent he, *with*- 24 out longer taryng *with* the messangers, and toke his hors, and went his way yn-to his owne Reaume, where as he was resceyued *with* grete ioie / and was assured of his persone / for there was he mightly loggid / so that he had no drede of his brother / The Turkes mes- 28 sangers came vnto him agein / and told hym alle howe they had done, and what his brother had seide / and how he was departed. whan the Turke herde thise tidynges, he was yn wille to sende a company aftir his brothir, to brynge hym ageyn, wold he or not / 32 But aftir many aduisementes of his folkes, he lefte that opinion, yn trust that by some bettir meane / and *with* more honour, they sholde accomde.

how badly
the Sultan
has treated
him.

He will go
home.

K. Ferabras
forthwith
rides to
Persia, and
is welcomd
there.

Prince Hum-
phrey keeps
to the woods.

NOW most we speke a litle of Ector, that all the nyght rideth / 36 and on dayes tyme kepith him close yn woodes, til he were surely conduyte in-to the Reaume of Sizile / to suche place as pey had in charge that guyded hym. And there they departed fro hym, & taught hym the way / and the Townes that he sholde 40

- passee by til he came vnto the kyng. Than toke he leue of them,
and thanked them right humbly / offryng them seruice & frendship
for the payne they had with hym, ful humbly recommendyng
4 hym vnto kynges fforabrace, as to ¹hym that he was moost bounde [¹ leaf 72]
to / of al erthly men. Thus departed he from them / and passed Prince Hum-
phrey rides
thro' Sicily.
thorough the Reaume of Sizile; and in his iournay he mette *with*
some of the kynges folkes, to whom he tolde part of his charge /
8 and accompayned *with* them til he came thider as the kyng was.
And yn his iournay, he fil yn remembraunce of the grete goodnesse
of oure Lord, remembryng the grete ynfirmittees that god delyuered
hym of / bothe out of prison & from the malice of the Turke /
12 whiche he knewe weel, was by no meane that he coude make, but
only by the grete bounte of oure Lorde, wherin he thought him ful
vnable to do seruice vnto god / aftir the grete grace / that he had
youen him / And than made he avowe and promysse to god / that
16 if he lyued so longe, he shold abide in his seruice yn the Reaume
of Sizile til god had releued it / or ellis it were vtirly lost / and yn
the meane season, neuir to discouer what he was, to no creature.
and thus determyned he yn hym self, fro that day forth to take in
20 pacience what payne or pouerte that god wold sende hym yn his
seruice / whan he had taken this ferme purpose, he came thider as
the kyng lay / and asked first of alle / aftir the Senesshalls loggyng,
whiche was sone tolde him; ffor, nexte the kyng, there was no
24 man in aH the Reaume kepte so grete an house as he did / nor was
so moche renommed / And whan he came to hym / he fonde hym at
Dyner, & Surnome & Athis seruyng him, for he coude neuir make
hem do othirwise / but to be more diligent yn his seruice than any
28 othir man / that longed vnto hym / Ector is thus entred in-to the
halle, and salowed fforaunt and alle his company / and aftir, he asked
whiche was he that men called Le Surnome. fforaunt behelde him,
and sawe him yonge, faire, and wele proporcioned yn euery feture /
32 and aH smylyng, saide vnto hym / "my frende, biholde, this same
is he / ye may sey to him what it pleasith you / And if ye will
speke with hym a-part, ye may" / "In good faith, sir," said Ector,
"nay / y had leuer speke *with* him yn presence of moo folkes / for
36 that his loos & renomee sholde be knowen / and y wold y were of
suche worthynesse that he might be enhaunsed by me; hou be it,
he hath little nede therof, for it is spred thoroughout alle the world."
and than saide he to Surnome, "kynges fforabrace, youre prisoner,
40 that holdith hymself weel ewred ²sith his fortune is to be prisoner / [² ff. 72, bk.]

Prince
Humphrey

yields him-
self to Prince
Philip,

and asks to
serve him.

Prince Hum-
phrey is
taken to the

[1 leaf 73]

King and
Queen of
Sicily, and
Princess
Isolante.

to be taken of so noble and good handes as of youres, and accordyng
to promesse, that of pite, & by trefy, ye made hym to make / he
recommiaundith hym to you, and sendith me to you, to do *with* me
what it pleasith you, & hath deliuerd me out of that prison / wher- 4
yn y was brought by fortune and tempest of the see / and he sendith
you worde for trouthe, that yet hath he founde no moo cristen
prisoners / And whom-som-cuir it bifalle, wele I thanke god it is
bifallen me wele nowe / and aftir, y thanke you, whom god hath 8
youen the grace to helpe me out of this daunger / wherfore, yn
accomplisshyng my feith & promys, y yelde me to you" / than
kneled he downe bifore him, and wold haue kissed his feet / Le
Surnome, alle abasshed of the honour he did hym, toke hym vp by 12
the hande / and saide / "my frende, y thanke God that ye be
delyuerd / for me thinketh it had ben grete pite if ye had ben
thus lost. And for Rawnsome, y shalt put you to choise, whethir
ye wilt be felawe to Athis & me, or maistre of oure chambre / and 16
take which it pleasith you." "fforsothe," saide Ector, "I am no
man of suche honour to be felawe *with* neither of you / But and it
pleased you to take me as your seruauant, I wolt desire no grettir
honour / and I thinke me wele fortunéd so for to be" / fferaunt, 20
that sawe this yonge man stande *with* Surnome and Athis, thought
hym-self right moche bounden to god; for eueri day befille hym
good adventures / for he hadde grete trust in Ectours worthynesse,
and was right glad that he logged *with* Surnome and Athis; and 24
toke hym in reputacion as felawe to theim. Thise tidynges came
to the kyng and to the quene / and to their faire doughtir as they
sate at dyner / and eueri man saide, that he was wele fortunéd that
was sent in-to the company of Surnome. Than was tolde the 28
maner of his comyng, and howe grete ioie fferaunt had therof.
"fforsothe," saide the kyng / "he is happy / & hath cause to be
ioifult, for his renomee is multiplied & doubled *with* straungers
that come to his seruice, whiche, had not ben for his displeasir, I 32
had receyued hem long sith of my houshold / hou be it, I haue ben
serued *with* them in his company, as wele or bettir than if they had
ben abidyng with me" / As they were yn thise wordes, came yn the
Seneshall and Ector with hym, whiche he brought vnto the kyng, 36
and he salowed hym right ¹humbly / and the quene & hir doughtir /
And than the kyng enquired hym first of the maner of his person,
and aftir his deliuerance, and of the tidynges of beyonde the see /
and in euery thinge he answerd so wele & so wisely, that the kyng 40

and alle folkes had grete ioie to here hym / Aftir dyner was he brought vnto the ladies, whiche had grete ioie to beholde him / and so had fferaunt, whiche saide, he was a man replenysshed of alt
4 beaute yn visage and body / and in wordes and maner fully assured, "and I trust fully yet to se him do as moche in dedes of arnes as alle thise" / "fforsothe," saide the folkes to fferaunt, "we leue it wele; and ye be moche bounden to god, for he hath gyuen you
8 fortune to haue noble seruantes." Thus contynued Ector *with* fferaunt and his ij. felawes, abiding the ceason of the Turkes comyng, whiche they thought right longe. The kynge made them alle iij. to be reteyned with his doughter / hou be it, their moost abidyng was
12 *with* fferaunt / But yet, to put them to the more honour, whan they were there as she was, they did hir dayly seruice / And eueriche did his seruice so proprely / that it shewed wele they had be norissed vp therin. And amonges them iij. was suche frendship / that eche
16 of them desired to honour his felaw more than himself. Now leueth to speke of the kynge of Sizile and of his company, and retourneth to the Turke, that was in his contre / as ye haue herde.

Prince Humphrey stays with Feraunt and Prince Philip and Prince David.

20 **A**ftir the departyng of kynge fferabras, his Brothir, many of his sogettes beganne to grucche against him for the wrong that he had done vnto his brothir; and moche peyne had he to appease it / And fro that day forth, neur increased he / ffor
ffirabras, that sawe him self in daunger of prison, wold neur after do
24 his brother seruice yn the warres, he nor noon of his sogettes. And if he had not be prisoner / many folkes Iuged he wolde haue made warre against his Brother him-self, for the grete vnkyndenesse he hadde shewed him / Neuirtheles it was for that tyme appesed. The
28 Turke made, all this ceason, ordinaunce for his goyng yn-to Sizile / and assembled alle his men / seyng vnto them, "my frendes, ye knowe wele howe y haue enterprised to conquere the Reaume of Sizile, and howe y haue at this day in my ¹hande, fult nigh half
32 the Reaume / and if y shold nowe leue of / it were to me grete shame / wherfore y aske nowe counsell therin / for y am affermed to go thidre / But y aske aide and comfort of my sogettes and of my frendes / whiche is the cause y nowe haue assembled you" /
36 Than toke they counsell amonges them; and, in conclusion, every man ayded the Turke aftir his power / more than euir they had done bifore / so that he coude them right grete thanke / Than mustred he his folkes, & fonde his nombre grettir than euir it was.
40 Thus employed he the tyme of the trews in purveaunce, that he was

After King Feraunt's departure,

the Sultan never prospers.

But he prepares for his fresh invasion of Sicily.

[1 lf. 73, bk.]

The Sultan
resolves to
besiege
Naples,
where the
King of
Sicily is.

concluded, aftir the feste of seynt Iohn^e, to entre in-to the Reaume
of Sizile / to make grettir warre than euir he had done bifore / This
was his armes & his departyng concluded / & euery man apointed
what he shold do / and him self determyned to lay seege bifore the 4
Towne of Naples, where as the kynge was, the quene & hir doughtir /
and the moost of alle the noble folkes of the Reaume / seyng verrily,
that if he had ones conquered that Towne, he sholde haue little
besynesse to wynne the remenaunt of the Reaume / Thus thought 8
they that they had little to do, but with that Towne allone. They
ordeyned also an othir grete company, beside them that shold ly at
the seege, to conduyte their vitaille & ordenaunce, without distourb-
yng or troubling of them that shold abide at the seege / Than were 12
the Capteynes ordeyned that shold haue the charge of euery thinge /
And when alle was wele puruayde / The Turke abode stille in peas
til the tyme came that he sholde go in-to Sizile.

The King of
Sicily is told
of the Sul-
tan's prepa-
rations.

NOW seith the tale, that the kynge of Sizile, that was fulle wise, 16
made alle diligence to knowe & enquire the purueaunce of
his enemyes / & spent grete good to the same entent / and
did so moche, that he had waged folkes of the Turkes owne / and
knewe by them, alle suche apointment as the Turke had taken / and 20
here-vpon he assembled his counsell / and tolde hem how he was
asserteyned, and praied them eueri man to take aduise there-vpon,
for it was tyme / the newe ceason approched so nigh, wherfore it was
expedient to take good aduise & short, here¹vpon / and many mocions 24
were made vpon the maner of his conduyte, but no ferme purpose

[¹ leaf 74]

He organizes
his own de-
fence,

was takyn / This tyme ranne ouir alle of the grete ffense that the
kynge of Sizile made in his Reaume to thencountre of the Turke,
and howe that the trews shold breke vp at the feste of seynt Iohne / 28
and than the Turke shold come agein in-to the Reaume of Sizile
with grete power / but for alle that, there was no kynge nor othir
prince that any thinge disposid hym to the helpe or socours therof /
Thus on a day the kynge of Sizile, to whom the matier touched 32
moost, whiche daily and hourelly had it yn remembraunce, called
some of his moost secrete counselle / & newly toke avice of this
matier / and there-vpon euery thinge in writyng, yn suche wise as
ye shal here / ffirst it was apointed to write and sende newe mes- 36
sangers to alle cristen Reaumes / wherein he had no grete trust of
socour, for many tymes had he done so before / natheles, in asmoche
as the matier was newer than it had ben othir tymes / for it was
aftir a longe trews that the werre shold begynne agein / And also 40

by advice of
his Council,

- that they shold not thinke in hym that he was so presumptuous /
that for the wele of the cristen feith he deynd not to requyre no
body / ffor thise causes, concluded he to sende to alle Reaumes / hou
4 be it, he had no hope but only yn god, and yn his owne power /
wherfore he purueide him as weel as he coude, *with* the helpe of his
owne folkes, to abide suche fortune as god wolde sende him / And
hou-be-it that he had tidinges that the seege sholde be leide bfore
8 what place that he were yn / yit lette not he to purvey and ordeyne
his othir places / and to sette good and sure Capitaynes in eche of
theim, and concluded fro that day forthe to fortifie alle his places /
& to purvey for alle thinge that was nedefulle to the kepyng of them,
12 for as long tyme as his power might stretch vnto. Aftir, ordeyned
he for the place that he wold abide yn him-self, the Quene and his
doughtir, and suche folkes as he wolde haue *with* him / Than
apointed he ffleraunt & his company to abide with him / Aftir this,
16 ordeyned he, that if the seege were bfore him, a general Captayne
that shold be his lieutenaunt at large in his Reaume, whiche sholde
haue ¹power to assemble alle the garisons, what tyme it pleasid hym,
for to distourbe & trouble his enemyes / & the seide lieutenaunt
20 shold haue a certayne nombre of folkes that sholde haue none othir
charge but to accompany hym / and to go with him to suche place
as nede sholde be, for to recomforte them, as wele by power of folkes
as othir wise / if by dethe, or fortune of werre, the garrisons were
24 amynysshed / Aftir, he ordeyned that alle men shold drawe theim to
the good Townes, *with* alle their goodes and catelle, for to sustene
the garrisons / and also to thentent that their enemyes shold fynde
scarste of vitaille to comfort and releue theim *with*. Thise thinges be
28 put yn writyng. than he assembled his Captaynes and his Counselle,
as many as he might / and in their *presence* made it to be redde /
seyng vnto them, that this was but a maner of a mocion, praing
them to take good aduise theron / and euery man to sey his opinion.
32 ¶ It was thought by them alle / that they coude take no bettir
aduise than the kyng had shewed theim / trustyng, if good were
their good Lord, the Turke shold haue wers welcomyng than he
had laste / thinkyng that, if he had not bettir yere amonges them
36 than he had laste, he shulde be right wele content to take a lenger
trews / and neuir to come again / Thise thinges thus accorded &
diligently done / messangers were sent to alle Reaumes / the Capi-
taynes named & proclaimed thoroughout alle the Reaume / that euery
40 man shold take his good and his catell, & draw him in-to goode

The King of Sicily appeals to other realms for help.

He bids Ferant and his men stay in Naples. He appoints a Captain-General in the country [1 ff. 74, bk.] to manage the troops there; and

orders all folk into garrison towns.

The Sicilian Council agree.

Ferant makes
Naples safe.

Townes / for the sauacion of them and their goodes / Thus euery
man entendid to his charge, and did so diligently, that yn litil
while alle thinge was done as the kynge had ordeyned. fferaunt
had the charge to fortifie & furnysshe the Townes that the kyng 4
shold be ynne / and he did it so diligently and so wele / that it was
impossible, if god were their good lorde, for any men to wyne it
for many yeres / ffor ye may wele thinke / there that the kynge,
the quene, and hir doughtir were / there lakked nouthur vitaille nor 8
ordenaunce / Thise thinges thus purveid as ye haue herde / alle the
Reaume was wele recomforted, to abide suche aventure as god wold
sende hem / The tyme drewe fast on, that the trews shold breke /
and euery Capitayne drewe him to his garison, with suche company 12
as was assigned hym / and kepte ¹suche rewle and ordenaunce,
aswele of spense of vitaille as of othir thinges, as if the seege had be
leyde before them / for they knewe wele it wold be long or they
coude gete any more vitaille. And on the tothir partie, the Turke 16
assembled his folkes to go in-to Sizile with grettir nombre than euir
he had bifore ; he made to charge grete shippes with vitaille & orden-
aunce, so that hym thought no thinge sholde faile him / He made
them to be brought in-to suche places in Sizile as helde of hym / 20
and ordeyned his folkes to conduyte hem fro thens alway to the
seege, as nede shold require, like as ye haue herde bifore / his
ordenaunce was so grete, that it was meruaile to se it / He and alle
his folkes landed at the port of Capletrent / and whan he had ben 24
there a while, he toke his iournay toward Naples, to lay seege there ;
for there was the kyng alle at his ease, redy purueid ageinst his
comyng / whan the kynge vndirstode thise tidinges, he was alle
recomforted, trustyng verrily in the helpe of god, and thought right 28
longe aftir the Turkes comyng / But of alle othir, Ector was moost
ioifult of their comyng / ffor, daies of his lif, he had neur sene bataille
nor none assemble in armes / and alle his desire was to folowe Sur-
nome & Athis, to se the worthines that he had herde speke of theim, 32
and to take ensample at them ; for wele he wist that there was noon
so moche renommed in the Reaume as they / And thise iij. loued to-
gedir as they had be bretheren / ffor neur had they but one loggyng,
one purs, and one wille / and neur was there amonges them angry 36
word / Surnome & Athis had grete desire to wite how Ector sholde
demene him in the werres, for that he was so perfite in alle othir
thinges ; and he purveide, so that he was right wele horsed and
armed / and eche of them iij. promysed feith & trouthe to othir / 40

[¹ leaf 75]
The Sicilian
Garrisons are
munitiond.

The Turkish
army lands
at Capletrent,
and marches
to Naples.

The 3 French,
Scotch, and
English
Princes are
like brothers.

- and bicame brethern in armes / ye may wele thinke that the ladies
and gentilwomen, whan they sawe hem in this case / were not wele
assured when they herd the belle of the wacche, for the comyng of
4 the Turke : they wepte ful sorowfully / and euery man recomforted
them / and brought them to suche places where they might se the
puyssaunce come / and if the grete drede that they had of the werre
had not be / it had ben a good sight to see / ffor the Eyre and the
8 erthe ressplendisshed *with* the Baners of gold, and of siluer, and of
Cootes of armes / & ¹of bright harneis / & the riche abilementis
they had for their horses. So many folkes there were / that the
Ladies and gentilwomen wende there had not ben so grete a power
12 in alle the world, and had more feer than euir they had / ffor it
semed them the Towne might neuir endure ageinst them / And
thus came this company in iij. partis, for to besege and enclose the
Towne. *withyn* the Towne was there a vij. or viij. thousand feight-
16 ing men / And for as moche as they were there *with* the ladies /
they desired to do some thinge at the bigynnyng that myght recom-
forte theym / and concluded that on the next morowe, yn the morn-
yng, they wolde visite their neighbores. ¶ Now y shall telle you
20 of the Turke, howe he did : he remembred him of the [seege] that
he had layde bifore fferaunt / and how in loggyng them he had a
grete skarmyssh, and lost many of his folkes / wherefore he ordeyned
that euery day shold be a grete company arredied to horsbak /
24 waityng on a Captayne / to drawe sodeinly to what part nede sholde
require / And there were iij. grete puissaunces, as ye haue herde, in
iij. parties of the Towne / And of that one, was Orkays cheff ; and
of the tothir, the kyng of Luby ; and of the iij^d. the Turke himself.
28 ¶ Now cometh the day that the sawte sholde be made. for asmoche
as the Turke knewe ful wele the[re] were many folkes *withyn*, he
wold not begynne the saute tilt the sonne were vp. fferaunt, that
was fulle wise and wele vndirstandyng in suche matiers, saide to the
32 kyng, “ sir, please it you to stande at the gate / and lete no man
go oute, but suche as I wilt / whiche y shall put alle bifore me ” /
And than he apointed suche as shold come with hym ; and for drede
he had of Surnome and of his felawes, he made them to promesse
36 & swere that they shold withdrawe them assone as they herde blowe
the retrayte / Thus alle thing ordeyned / he departed out of the
Towne with ij. thousand fighters / and did so moche, or the cry
arose that they were amonges the kyng of Lubyes Tentis / and our
40 ranne many of his folkes / the crie and the noise arose thorough alle

The Sicilian
ladies watch

the fine ap-
proach of
the Turkish
army,
[1f. 75, bk.]

in 3 Divi-
sions.

The Sultan

orders a
regiment of
Horse to be
always ready
to move
when needed.

Ferant sallies
out of Naples
with 2000
men,
against the
Turkish 2nd
Division.

the hoste / and than they that had the charge to a-waite on suche
sodeyn cries, were redy anone *with* the kynge of Luby / and came
quikly on fferaunt and on his company, In so moche that by force
it behoueth hem to withdrawe / and there were some of his folkes 4
taken / wherof Surnome was right heuy and sory / and he [and] his
felawes retourned ¹agein to rescowe them / and neuir bifore had he
aquytte him so wele as he did there / ffor by the noble prowesse of
hym & his company, their enemyes were fayn to *with*drawe them 8
agein toward their tentes. All this encountryng shewed wele the
worthines of Ector / that neuir vnto this day was sene in suche
case / They iij. to-gedir did so in armes, that it was meruaile to
thinke / and it semed by Ector that he had ben alwey brought vp 12
in that crafte / the feeld a-boute them was al steyned and couerd
with blode / and with ded folkes, In so moche that fferaunt was alle
abassed / & entendid to no thinge but to beholde the hardynesse of
his iij. seruantes. And as they were thus feighting, came the 16
Turkes power and his sones / vnto the Kynge of Luby / and than
they came so sore vp-on the cristen men that they put them alle out
of aray / whan fferaunt sawe this, he sent vnto the kyng for a
thousand men moo to socoure them, to helpe to *with*drawe them. 20
Than made he to blowe the retrayte / and the iij. felawes, by force
of Armes, were departe eche fro othir / and Surnome was enclosed
among so many / that hou-be-it he defendid him right valiauntly /
yet was he taken be might / for our many folkes were on hym / and 24
was anone had out of the prees / seying fferaunt his maister / that
at that tyme wold haue ben ded / ffor he knewe weel that alle the
gold in Sizile might not bye him agein, and he might not helpe
him / for he and his company were so sore oursette / that with 28
grete payne they recured agein in-to the Towne / and had lefte
behinde them the chief of alle their werre / ¶ But now here wher-
on fferaunt aduised him / he toke al the folkes of armes that were
with the kyng at the gate / and sodeinly went out at the gate that 32
was ageinst Orkays tentes, for he sawe him vngarnysht of alle his
folkes / and bitwene his loggyng and the Turkes was a ryuer / and
there was no brigge our it / but a litil passage / where might not
come past ij. horses or iij. on front / and yit *with* grete payne he 36
ordeyned a good company to kepe that passage / for by none othir
wey coude Orkays haue no socoure / Thus was fferaunt, *with* grete
part of puyssaunce of the Towne, come to Orkays tentes / and there
²endured the bataile fulle long amonges them / By that tyme was 40

[¹ leaf 76]

Prince Hum-
phrey and
Princes
Philip and
David fight
vallantly.

The Turkish
3rd and 1st
Divisions
attack Fer-
ant's men.

Prince Philip
is taken
prisoner.

The Sicilians
retire,

but make a
fresh sally
against the
camp of the
Turkish 1st
Division.

[² lf. 76, bk.]

- Athis and Ector enfourmed of the takyng of their felawe / whom they held in part for their maister / for whos sake they had suche sorowe that it was meruaile to wite / fferaunt ascried vnto them /
- 4 "my frendes, now it is tyme that eche of you put payne to the rescouse of his trewe felawe, which rescuse can not be without takyng of Orkays, sone vnto the Turke; now shalt be seen who shalt do wele; for trewly, if one of you were in suche daunger / the
- 8 good Surnome wolde put him in grete deuoir / the ij. felawes lefte their sorowe / and, as they that had ben oute of their wittes, auentured them forth amonges the presse, without casting of any perilt or drede of any daunger; there was neur man sawe ij. men do so
- 12 moche in one day in Armes as they did / they were so besy in euery place, that their enemyes thought they sawe noon othir men but them, so moche they dred them / fferaunt folowed them alwey, and had as leef be ded, without he might haue day to rescowe his yonge
- 16 seruaunt / he had at the leest in his company .v. thousand feighters, which were of fult good corage / and, by their strength and power, yn short tyme was Orkays and alle his company put to playne discomforture / and Orkays takyn prisoner by the handes of Ector, that
- 20 presented him anon to fferaunt, whiche was right glad of his takyng, trustyng therby to recouer Surnome. The meane tyme that this noise and crye was, the Turke sent many of his folkes on horsbak to the rescous of his sone / wherby he thought him sure y-nough /
- 24 But they that were apointed by fferaunt to abide at the passage, kepte it so wele, that noo might passe there / and at the diffence was grete mortalite of the Turkes. whan fferaunt had done this iournay, and sawe Orkays in his handes in saufte / and that his
- 28 folkes had take suche pillage as they might easily bere with them / and had set fyre in the remenaunt / he made to blowe the retrayte / and withdrewre them in-to the Towne / hauyng prisoners withoute nombre / but, ouir alle othir, he was glad of the takyng of Orkays /
- 32 whan they were entred agein into the Towne / the kyng was enformed of the takyng of Surnome, and so were the ladies & gentilwomen / and the tidynges spred thorough alle the Town, wherof the ¹sorowe and complaynt began as moche as if the kyng had ben
- 36 ded. And the kyng himself was so sory, that noman might comforte him / hou-be-it he had the Turkes sone yn his handes / for he helde him so cruell and felonous, that he had leuer lete his sone dye than deliuere Surnome, by whom he had hadde so many losses and
- 40 hurtes / Natheles he concluded to sende vnto the Turke an herauce
- Prince David
and Prince
Humphrey,
- with Ferant
and 5000 men,
- capture the
Sultan's son,
Orkays,
rout his 1st
Division,
- pillage and
burn his
Camp, and
retire to
Naples.
- [1 leaf 77]

A Sicilian
Herald is
sent to the
Sultan.

of Armes, to certifie him of the takyng of his sone, willyng him to entrete Surnome none othir wise than he wolde haue his sone entretid. [*Illumination; Surnome bleeding, in a shirt; gallows; sally from the Town.*]

The Sultan

determines

to put Prince
Philip to
death.

[*lf. 77, bk.]*

He scratches
the Prince's
face, and says
he'll see him
hangd after
dinner.

The Sicilians
sorrow for
Prince
Philip.

N^Owe retourne we to the Turke, that, aftir the distresse that 4
he had vpone fferaunt and his folkes, and that Surnome
was brought vnto hym / and that he knewe werily it was
the same by whome he had hadde so many tymes losse & hurtes;
and at that tyme he knewe no thing of the takynge of his sone / 8
And whan Surnome was brought a-fore him / he thought for ioie
his worthinesse was doubled / and behilde him, and sawe him so
personable and amyable / and so wele assured, that he hadde
meruaile to beholde hym / and concluded in him self / that he 12
wold neur slepe til he had taken on him cruelle veniaunce, and
saide vnto him / "Thou vntrew cristen man, thyn vnhappy comyng
in-to this lande hathe done me more damage than did the puy-
saunce of cristen kynges: I shal neur slepe / or y se the ded bfore 16
myn yen." Thus Surnome, hering his deth / with humble corage
content to abide it, for the pleasir of god / answerd agein vnto the
Turke, seyng, "O turk, by my dethe shalt thou not be kyng of
Sizile / for there is many more worthy than euer I was, yn the 20
seruice of the kyng; wherfore y knowe wele my dethe shalt be
litol damage to cristen; ¹and therefore y am to endure suche payne
and turment as thou wilt deuyse, whiche y sha^{ll} receyue in ioie" /
The Turke, for angre, might no more here him speke, but ranne on 24
him / and scratte him in the visage / and made him to be voided
out of his sight / and commaunded that gallows shold be made
anoon; & concluded, that aftir he had dyned, he wold go hym self
to se him hanged / They of the Towne withyn, seing thies galowes 28
adressing, enfourmed the kyng therof / And than bigan the sorowe
more than bfore, thoroughout all the Towne / for they knewe wele
it was made for Surnomes sake / There might ye se ladies and
gentilwomen wepe and sorowe / but ouir alle other sorowed Iolant, 32
the kynges daughter. There was the beaute, bounte, witte &
worthinesse of Surnome, many tymes remembred & complayned
that day / & euery body thought that, at the houre of his dethe, alle
the vertues of the worlde sholde be lost / The kyng was alle out of 36
mesure / as he that had lost only by Surnome alle the ioy he had in
this worlde / thinkyng that, after his dethe, he wold no lenger
lyue / Ector also, and Athis, were so fer from alle reason, that, for
men wold not lete them go out at the gate, they wolde haue lepte 40

- ouir the walles / It is alwey saide that a mannys witte ys neur
vndirstond til at a grete nede. fferaunt, that neur was dispurueid,
made hastily a paire of galowes to be set vpon the walles, yn the
4 Turkes sight, and euen bifore his loggyng, as though he wold make
Orkays dye ther-one / And yit, notwithstanding pat, fferaunt put
yn aduenture him self and alle that were in the towne, reseruyng
the kyng / and a fewe that waited on him / & thought verrily alle
8 to dye, or to rescowe his seruauant / and to this apointed alle his
folkes, and in especialt Ector and Athis, whiche fild to his fete for
ioy / humbly thankyng / And yet, notwithstanding the grete sorow
that he had, he comfortyng them, seyng / "what, we haue yit no
12 tidynges of the messenger that went to the Turke. I haue trust in
god, and also know wele the loue that a ffadir hath to his childe /
wherby he wol neur be consentyng to the dethe of his sone / And
that the prise that hath be made by you this day, my frende Ector,
16 at youre nowe comyng, shalt be the sauacion of youre felawe" /
Many turkes sawe thies galowes yn makyng on the Towne walle /
and anone tolde it to the Turke, ¹whiche strecched him vp at the
boorde, and saide / "Lete them hange whom they can gete; for
20 there is none shalt lette me to hange this that y haue" / And euen
at the same tyme came yn the heralde from the kynge of Sizile,
with the message pat ye haue herde tofore / The Turke, hering
this, was gretely ameruaild / and coude not bileue it / for he had
24 herde no worde therof bifore / wherfore he saide al wrothly to the
messangers / "If the kynge, and they of his company, coude by their
language saue the lif of their man / they had wele lerned to speke /
But, as for my sone, that is so vnhappily lost, y wolt not respite
28 the lif of this / but the rather delyuere hym to the dethe" / And
than made he to brynge him to se Surnome, that was redy to go to
his dethe / and the rope aboute his nekke / and whan he sawe him
in this cas, he was so sory that vnnethe he might stonde on his
32 fete / but Surnome comforted him, and saide / "I pray you,
recommunde me to the kynge & to the quene / and to my faire
lady, their doughtir / to whom y haue euir ben trewe seruauant /
and recommunde me to fferaunt, my good maister / and to my ij.
36 felawes / and sey I praied them not to compleyn nor sorowe my
dethe, for y trust verrily in the mercy of god to dye wele /
Natheles, pray them to pray for me" / Than he toke hym by the
hande, the teeres yn his yeen / and bade hym farewele / and praied
40 his ij. felawes also to take his dethe agreably / thus the messenger

Ferant sets a
gallows on
the walls of
Naples, as
if for the
Sultan's son.

[leaf 78]

The Sultan
declares he'll
hang Prince
Philip,

and let his
own son die.

The Sicilian
chiefs swear
to rescue
Prince
Philip, or
die.

[1 lf. 78, bk.]
Philip
laments his
parents,
and France,

and prays
God to have
pity on his
soul.

The Sultan

nearly
strangles
Prince
Philip.

departed, & came to the towne / and tolde the kynge and fferaunt
how he hadde founde him. And whan they herde this report, it
touched their hertes so nygh / that they thought they sawe Surnome
bifore them / in the same cace that the messanger had seen hym / 4
and after they had wepte & compleyned / euery man concluded
either to dye or to rescowe him / Two hundred men were ordeyned
to go to thise Iuyse / and a M^r. to renne on them that kepte the
place, and ij. M^r. redy to socour them / if nede were / and the 8
kynge redy, in his owne persone, at the gate with iij. M^r. to releef
them / at their comyng yn agein, if nede were. And thus was
euery thinge ordeyned and redy / and Ector and Athis were de-
lyuered the charge / whiche toke it on them with right goode 12
corage / Surnome, ¹on that othir side, that abode no thinge but
dethe, compleyned his fadir & his modir, and them of his reaume /
and compleyned his contre, that shold stonde withoute heyre / 16
Aftir, he compleyned the kynge of Sizile, the quene and their
doughtir, his maister and his ij. felawes / prayng god right hertily
to comfort them, and sende them aH good auenture, and in especiaH
that his faire lady shol neuir come in the handes of tho mys-
creauntes. Aftir thlis, he praied god to haue mercy & pite on his 20
soule, seyng that in his seruice he shold now take the dethe /
humbly besechyng hym, of his grace, to receyue his soule / and of
his grete mercy to pardone alle his offences. ¶ Whan the Turke
had dynded, he herde tidynges that his sones loggyng was alle ouir- 24
throwen and brent / a[nd] moo than x. or xij. M^r. men slayne / and
his sone taken prisoner, and brought in-to the towne, and the moost
part of the grete lordes and noble men of his company / If the
Turke were soroufuH, it is no question / and, for the grete angir, 28
forgetith all fadirly loue, and the seruyce of alle those lordes and
noble men that were taken prisoners / and forgetith also his owne
brother / that was prisoner to hym that he had than in daungere,
by whom he myght haue had his brother agein, or his sone / but 32
than alle was forgotten / And thus, as a wood man furiously puttith
the boorde fro him, without aduise, or setting any ordre to the dede
of Iustice that he sholde do / and asked alle hastily where was the
prisoner / and men brought him forth; and he toke hym by the 36
Rope that was aboute his nekke, and drewe him so hard that, if
folkes had not taken him away, he had strangled hym / but his
folkes toke him from him / and seide / “sir, this bilongeth not to
you to do / lete the hangman do his office, sith ye be so fere forth 40

- that no reason may meue you / we be kynne and frendes to them
 at this day, that by your cruelte we shal se dye / and your self be
 cause therof, and also of the dethe of youre owne sone / ffor, be
 4 assertayned, they *withyn* haue no suche drede / but assone as this
 man is ded / he and alle they shalle dy bfore your yen / And whan
 your pleasir shal in this be fulfilled / your sorowe euir aftir shalbe
 out of mesure / and then shal be to late ¹to repente, for it shalbe [leaf 79]
 8 passid remedy / Also your brother, or his plegges, shalle dye with
 sorow and shame" / But of alle that euir they seide vnto him, he
 rought not / and sware by his goddes, if they spake any more, he
 shold make them alle to dy an euyl deth / and toke a grete staff yn
 12 his hande / and made them cary forth the prisoner to the gallowes /
 and euir layde on him so grete strokes, that made him alle bloody /
 now sent he forth so woodly this prisoner, that he had but fewe
 folkes aboute him / and yit they that were in his company were in
 16 suche sorowe and distresse, that they had as leef dye / as lyue / for
 their kyn and their frendes, that they sawe in suche daunger *withyn*
 the Towne / and for that cause there was the more vnsure guydyng
 in this matier / The wacche of the Towne sawe the multitude of
 20 folkes comyng / and Surnome amonges them, ledde like a theef;
 and the folkes couerd all the felde / they went & tolde the kynge
 & fferaunt, whiche wepte for pitie that Surnome was so pitously
 entretid / Surnome bihelde the Towne, wherin he had hadde so
 24 moche pleasir & ioie, thinkyng neuir to come ther more / for he
 looked aftir no thinge but dethe / often recommaundid vnto god alle
 them that were *withyn* the Towne / and whan they were come nere
 the gallowes, Ector and Athis, that were apointed to go to the
 28 luyse, toke their company *with* theim, and went thider as fast as
 their horses might renne, fore drede that they sholde come to late /
 the Turke, seying this auenture, cried many tymes that men shold
 kille the prisoner, but there was noon that coude fynde in his herte
 32 so to do; and there durst they not abide, for they were alle out of
 array / And at that tyme, were slayn and taken many grete lordes
 of the Turkes partie / whan Ector & Athis, whiche had the charge
 to rescowe their felaw / fonde him allone, *with* his visage all bloody,
 36 of the strokes that the Turke had youen him on the hede / they
 wende he had ben hurte to the dethe / and were so sorowfuH, that
 vnnethe they might speke one worde / Natheles, they set him vpon
 horsbak / and brought him agein in-to the Towne, *without* any
 40 encombrance or hurt of any cristen man, and vnto the grete losse

The Sultan's
folk reprove
him,

but he threat-
ens them,

and beats
Prince Philip
till he's all
bloody.

The Sicilians
see Prince
Philip led to
the gallows.

Prince David
and Prince
Humphrey
sally out,

roust and kill
the Turke,

rescue Prince
Philip,

and bring
him into
Naples,

[¹ lf. 79, bk.] & damage of the turkes. And ¹whan they were comyn in-to the
Towne, they had grete drede of thurt Surnome had on his hede /
for they wist not wele yit how it was with him / Than Ector and
Athis brought him to loggyng, and sawe that he was right seke, and 4
sore diseased / for his nekke was gretly swolne / and alle the skynne
of / with the streynyng of the rope / and his shuldres also were
blac with the strokes of the staff that he had / and in his hede he
had a grete stroke, whiche was alle bloody and swolne / and his 8
visage was all to-scrag / The kynge made to sende for alle his
surgeons, & made them to serche hym / whiche saide that he was
sore hurt / but they sawe no drede of dethe yn hym / but that he
shold be heled *withyn* litil while / The kynge and his company 12
was ioifull of this tidynges; and then was tolde to Surnome the
grete worthinesse and prowes of Ector that day / and also the grete
armes that he and Athis had done to rescowe hym, and yn what
aunenture fferaunt, their good maister, had put hym that day / whiche 16
semed to be bettir content *with* his dethe than to lyue / & how
Ector had taken with his hande the Turkes sone / And alle this was
tolde him to reioice hym / ffor euery man knewe wele *pat* the
preise and grete renome of his noble maister, and of his ij. felawes, 20
was one of the grettist ioies that he coude haue / All thise wordes
were seide vnto hym by the kyng, whiche was come to visite him /
And Surnome answerd hym, & saide / "sir, y thanke god and you /
that it pleasid your grace, for so pore a man as y am, to parte oute 24
of your towne / and put yourself yn daunger / whiche y neur
coude deserue / But y sha^{ll} put me in denoir alwey to do you the
bettir seruice" / And thus departed the kynge fro hym, and came
to his owne loggyng / and there mette with hym the quene, hir 28
doughtir, & alle the ladies, whiche were right sorowfulle of the hurt
of Surnome. but the kyng tolde them for trouthe that he was in
noo perill of dethe / wherof they were as ioifull as they might be /
ffor there was noon erthly man so moche biloued of euery body in 32
alle honour as he was, and in especialle of alle them of that Reaume /
for sith his comyng, the reaume was more furnysshed of noble men
than euir it was bfore / and he neur did ne seide thinge that
sholde displease any body / Thus by ²hym daily encreased their 36
ioie / But alle othirwise went it yn the Turkes hoste / for he was so
troubled at that tyme, that he was half in dispeire / and rought not
to haue slayn hym self, to haue ben oute of his grete sorowe / whan
he was *with*-drawen & retourned in-to his tente / and knewe for 40

hurt and
bleeding.

But the
Sicilian
surgeons say
he'll soon be
well.

He is told of
the valour
of Princes
David and
Humphrey,

and the
capture of
Orcays.

The ladies
grieve over
Prince
Philip's
wounds.

certayne put his prisoner was deliuered / and what outrageous losse The Sultau
 he had of the moost notable of his counselle, that were dede &
 taken, and wele a xij. or xiiij. hundred men slayne beside / and of
 4 the cristen, not one hurt at that tyme / And also howe his sone was
 prisoner, whiche might haue ben deliuered hym ageyn / had not be
 his outrageous pride / And at the takyng of his sone, slayne the
 same day .x. or xij. M^t men. Remembryng alt this, he was so is sad at all
his losses.
 8 soroufult that he wist not what for to do / but sent in alle haste for
 his counselle, and for his Capteynes / and praied them to gif him
 their best aduise. And if bifore dyner he were hote and tempest-
 ous / now is he colde and sobre / for he hath had a sharpe showre
 12 to cole him with / There was noon of his folkes that bemoned him / His folk hate
him.
 but in their hertes dedly hated hym / and dispreised hym / and
 seide amonges themself, that there was neur cruelt man in the ende
 had honour nor glory ; and they thought wele their goddes wolde
 16 punysshe him for his cruelte / and for thys cause they were alle
 discouraged / Natheles they aduised them, by alle weies they coude,
 to kepe their honour yn that they had to do / And sent for the But they send
for their
Reserve to
take the place
of their lost
1st Division.
 20 purueaunce for the hoste, and logged them where as Orkays had
 ben discomfite, & made ij. or iij. brigges ouir the watir / and thus
 was that quarter furnysshed agein / But for alle that, they were
 more in drede of them *withyn* / than they *withyn* were of theym /
 24 The Captayne, that the kyng of Sizile had ordeyned to be his
 lieftenant thorough his reaume, knewe for certayne that this grete
 armee, that shold conduyte his vitale, were than at the seege, and
 might not departe thens / wherfore he thought their vitaille shold
 28 come to them *with* litle ease, if he might / and than assembled he a
 good company togedir / and daily troubled them, bothe in takyng [1 If. 80, bk.]
 fro them their vitaille, and sodeyn ¹assaultes, comyng on them in the The Sicilian
Captain-
general daily
harasses the
Turks.
 night / and put them in suche trouble that they were wery of their
 32 lyues. In this wise endured the seege aboute a iij. monethes / In
 this meane ceason was Surnome alle hole, and came to se the ladies,
 as he had ben accustomed to do. And the kynge thought, as his
 bien venu / and for to reioice the company, to make a Banket, where
 36 the ladies and gentilwomen shold be / and the Turkes sone / & a
 grete part of the noble men that were prisoners / for he wold
 reherce vnto them the cruelte of their maister, And also to make
 Surnome to telle of his aventure. Thus ordeyned he this Banket / The King of
Sicily gives
his Captains
a Banquet.
 40 and sent for his Capteynes, the renowned, & in especial for fferant

& for his iij. seruauntes, whiche iij. serued the ladies at this Banquet / hou be it, the kynge wold haue had them to sitte downe / There sate downe the kynge & the quene, and bitwene the quene & faire Iolante was sette Orkays, that ful gladly bihelde this faire 4 lady / And if he had ben lorde of alle the worlde at that tyme, he knewe no woman that he wold so fayn haue had to his wif / and thought yn his mynde, by meane of mariage bitwene them two, the peas might be made / and or he wolde leue hir, he wolde take the 8 cristen lawe / and fro that day forth abode he in this thought / like as ye shalle here. many othir prisoners were sette at the kynges boorde, that gretely bihelde his persone and his demeanyng / so they did the quene and hir doughtir / fferaunt was set at the 12 kynges boorde, *with* many othis folkes of honour, that sate ther also. whan the kynge had seten ther a while / and ben mery amonges them ; he fille in question *with* Surnome of his hurtes, and com- maundid hym to telle the trouthe how it was. Surnome durst not 16 disobey the kynges commaundement, but tolde of his takyng, & of the Othe the Turke made assone as he was brought bifore hym / that he sholde neuir slepe or he were put to dethe in his *presence* / Aftir, how he made bynde hym to a poste / and putte a rope aboute 20 his nekke / and tolde howe the messenger seide vnto him, and what answere he had / and how-be-it that he was not worthy to qwite suche a prisoner as Orkays, yet was he offred for his deliuer- aunce / Aftir, tolde he how the Turkes ¹folkes blamed him for 24 drede of the dethe of Orkays / and howe the kynge sent to the Turke, & sware, if that he put him to dethe, that Orkays and alle the other prisoners sholde be hanged / And than, *with* grete ire and cruelte, he put the boorde fro hym, and came to him ther as he 28 stode bounden / and drewe the rope so fast, that was aboute his nek / that he had strangild him, had not his folkes cried on him / and seide that it was the hangmans office, and contrary to the honour of so grete a prince to do so foul a dede / and whan he 32 herde the speche of his folkes, he vnbonde him him-self / and deliuerd him to the hangman / and gaf him ij. strokes with a grete staff bitwene the shuldres / and one on the hede / and conduyte him him-self vnto the gallows, he and his folkes vnarmed & 36 *with*out any ordenaunce, ffor the whiche cause they might make no resistance at his rescous. ¶ In heryng this tale, euery man wept for pite, bothe Orkays and all the tothir prisoners. Aftir his tale was ended, the kynge spake to Athis, and seide, “ye were prisoner 40

The Sultan's son, Orkays, falls in love with Iolante.

At the King's command, Prince Phillip tells how the Sultan had him bound to a post.

[1 leaf 81]

and then nearly strangled him,

and beat him on the head.

- at the distresse of the armee of the kyng of Scottes sone / telle ye
the manere now of your takyng." Athis was alle shamefast / but he
durst not disobey the kynges commaundement, and seide / "sir, it
4 is trewe þat by tempest of wedir, the vesselle that y was yn, brake,
even bfore the Turkes hoste / wherby the moost part of the folkes
þerin were drowned, sauf vij. or viij. that gate the lande / wherof
y was one, purposing to haue yolden vs vnto the mercy of the
8 Turke, thinkyng verrily that god hat done moche for vs to bringe
vs to lande so nere him, for we trusted to fynde mercy yn hym /
and when he sawe vs in this case, he cried with high voice / "sle
tho cristen traitours!" then were they alle slayne, sauf y / whiche
12 was to grete a pite / ffor amonges them was slayne the good Erle
Douglas, that was a noble man and a wise / and whan I sawe this
pitous aventure, y withdrew me toward a litil Rok, and set my
bak ther-ageinst / defending my self as wele as y coude, praing
16 all-mighti god of his mercy, as he that abode no thing but dethe /
And as y was yn this daunger / the Turke cried aH-wey to put me
to dethe / my lord Orkays was ther present, and meved with pite,
toke me in-to his handes, and assured me for than / y shold not
20 dye / his fadir toke this to grete displeasir, and wold nedis haue
put me to dethe, But Orkays did so moche that he put me in
saftee. Aftirwarde, agein his fadir required hym that y might dye,
but he wolde neuir agree therto / but did so moche, whethir his
24 ffadir was pleased or not / that he delyuerd me / and made me to
be surely conduyte vnto fieraunt, with whom y haue contynued in
service sith that tyme" / Aftir this tale tolde / euery man biliekde
Orkays, and thought it was an honorable dede of hym / Than the
28 kyng commaundered Ector to telle by what fortune he was taken,
whiche was right shamefast to telle his tale / natheles he bigan, and
seide thus / "Sir, it is trewe that in my right grete youthe y desired
to se the houre that y might be yn your service / for the honour of
32 god principally, and to mayntene the feith; and for the grete weeles
that euery man rehersed of you, of the quene, & my lady your
doughtir / wherfore it happened me to gete in-to a vesselle with
notable men, that were therin / and by fortune of tempest we
36 aryued yn a lande that helde of the Turke / and y suppose that
oure service was not to god agreable / So we were taken & brought
bfore the lord of the Towne / and for-asmoche as we were cristen,
they thought it a nouelte / and they presentid of the company in-to
40 diuerse places, and kepte stille with them my fellawe and me / and

Prince David
then relates

how his ship
was wreckt,

and Earl
Douglas
slain;

[1 If. 81, bk.]
how Prince
Orkays
rescued him,

and sent him
to Feraunt.

Then Prince
Humphrey
tells how

his ship was
driven to a
Turkish
shore,

and how,
thro' Prince
Philip's
charge to
K. Ferabras,

he was given
to that king,

[1 leaf 82]

and by him
set free and
sent to Sicily.

The King of
Sicily bids
Orkays tell
his tale.

he dide in prison / And at the tyme of my deliuerance, y thought
fulle litil of my lif / But that it fortun'd that my maister and felawe,
Surname, made his prisoner, kynge ffrabras, to promyse that he
shold sende agein alle cristen men that by fortune had be taken in the 4
warres in any landes of his brothers or his / And he, remembryng
his promyse whan he came home, vndirstode that y was prisoner yn
the same Towne that the Turke was yn that tyme / and he asked me
of him / than was y brought bfore hem bothe / & the Turke, seyng 8
me so megre & pore, toke litil hede of me / but lete me delyuerd to
kynge ffrabras / whiche made me be so wele cherissed and taken
hede vnto / that *withyn* litil while y recouered, and wex in good
plite / than on a day went y to the Turke, and y waited on hym / 12
and was alle newe araied & ¹wel recouered / and he bibelde me, and
knewe me not / and asked his brother what y was / and he seide that
y was the cristen man that was deliuered out of prison but late / than
wold he haue put me to dethe / and seide that, by the worthynesse 16
of one man / his saide brother had be taken / and the noblesse & the
corage of the Sezilians was by hym redoubled / and by an othir
man, that his sone had deliuerd, he had taken so grete hurte, that
it was mernaile to thinke; And his hert gaf him, if y departed, 20
that y shold do him grete damage / and thus in no wise wolde he
be agreable to my delyuerance / and so fille they at wordes / In so
moche that kynge ffrabras sware that he had leuir dye than to
false his promys / than he deliuered me by night / and made me to 24
be surely conduyte vnto this reame / where y haue abiden enir
sith / and aftir my departyng thens, the Turke sent of his folkes to
breke vp the chambre where as he wende y had ben, to put me to
dethe, in despite of his brothir. But y thanke god & good kynge 28
ffrabras / y was out of his daunger / ffor y vote wele, and y had
ben in his handes, he wold haue had litil pite on me / that wold
not haue pite of the dethe of his owne sone / and of so many
notable men, asmoche as to deliure one persone for the sauacione 32
of them alle" / Alle they *pat* were there of the Turkes meyne, knewe
wele thies tales were trewe, wherof they were gretly encombred and
abasshed of the cruelle & tyrannous disposicion of their maister.
Than spake the kyng to Orkays, & seide / "Sir, ye must now telle 36
your tale" / then saide Orkays, smylyngly / "sir, my tale shall sone
be tolde / for y had neuir othir fortune of warre but suche as ye
knowe, sauf one whiche y wolt not reherce for my praise / but for
the praise of them that haue deserued it / trouthe it was, alle that 40

- Athis hath seide / It was my fortune to delyuere him ageinst the
wilt of my fadir / and conduyte him surely vnto fferaunt / and the
next day it happened they made a grete assaute on my logginges,
4 where as were many folkes slayn / and prisoners taken out of
nombre, wher-of y was one, and fild in the handes of Athis, that
had ben my prisoner / and whan he was in the Towne, he remembered
y had done somewhat for him / and yn grete haste ledde me thorough
8 the towne / and lete me oute at ¹the gate that was ageynst my
fadirs loggyng / and there deliuered me, seyng vnto me / ' I can no
bettir horse you, nor harneise you, to your pleasir than ye be / and
if y coude, ye may be sure y wolde / therefore ye shalle haue your
12 owne still ' / and thus departed y fro hym / and came to my fadir,
whiche seide, y ought to blame no man of this fortune but my self /
by the deliuerance of hym that he was no thinge agreable vnto /
than tolde y hym of my deliuerance / and by whom it was, whiche
16 was a thinge, as who seith, impossible for hym to bileue / & howe
be it, he sawe me deliuered, and knewe wele that I was delyuered
by hym that y had saued bifore / yet repented hym that he had
not put him to dethe / And at suche tyme as y toke Athis, y knewe
20 him not but by his dedes, which shewed wele him to be a noble
man / But whan he toke me, he knewe for certayne that y was the
Turkes sone / and what good he might haue had by me / yet was
he of so noble corage, that he forgate all couetise, and deliuered
24 me " / Than might folkes se howe basshfull Athis was, to here his
praise, and also for drede he shold be shent / The kynge, the ladies,
and alle the company behelde him, which loked alle rede, and sore
abasshed / than asked him the kynge / " what / Athis made ye this
28 deliuerance " / and kneled downe alle shamefastly, and seide / " ffor-
sothe sir, yea / wherof y cry you mercy, ffor y coude in no wise
put him in aduenture that had saued my lif / and if yn this matier
y haue offendid ageinst youre grace, or ageinst my lorde my
32 maister / y biseche you bothe of pardone / and offere my self to
what punysshment it pleasith either of you to apointe / for y had
leuer a dyde, than by me he sholde haue ben in daunger of his lif."
Orkays repented him sore of this that he had tolde / for he sawe
36 wele by Athis pat he was both abasshed and adred / The kyng
perceyued wele that Orkays and Athis were bothe abasshed, and
seide to Orkays, "ye haue tolde me of the fredom of Athis / and
me semeth ye drede that y shold con him maugre / but forsothe, y
40 do not / I knowe wele there was offence / but the cause was so

Prince
Orcays says
he did free
Prince David,

and was then
captured, and
set at liberty
by him.

[1f. 82, bk.]

Orcays
praises
Prince David.

David con-
fesses his
fault against
the King in
setting
Orcays free;

and is at once
forgiven.

[¹ leaf 83]

A Peacock is
brought in,
and on it the
King vowe
to defend
his realm;

Orcays vowe
(after his
father's
death) to
give back all
the Turke'
conquests to
Sicily.

Ferant and
his Knights
vow

never to let
the Sultan
be ransomed,
if they catch
him.

A Dance
winds up
the Banquet.

resonable, that with alle my hert y forgif him" / Athis thanked him
right humbly / and than went to his maister, & besought ¹him of
pardone, whiche lightly forgaf him; and aftir, alle his lif, loued he
him the bettir for that noble dede. ¶ Aftir thies wordes, was 4
brought yn a Poo by ij. gentilwomen / And the kyng made to the
Poo his advowe first / and promysed to diffende his reaume to his
power / "and that, notwithstanding the pride and tyranny of his
aduersary withoute him, he wolde neuir do tyranny nor shame to 8
prisoner[es] that were noble men or of any good disposicion / but shold
kepe them yn honour and noblesse as longe as they were in his
gouernaunce" / Aftir, made Orkays his avowe, and seide that, "to his
power, he wolde put him in payne to make pees bitwene the Turke 12
his fadir, & þe kyng / & if his fadir died before hym, he shold
neuir, daies of his liffe, make warre with the kyng of Sizile, nor
with his Reaume / but rather yelde agein vnto him alle that his
ffadir had taken fro hym / for he sawe him so wele puruaide in alle 16
goode vertues / that aboute alle othir kynges, he desired his fauour
and acqueyntaunce" / but the trouthe was this / that faire yonge
lady, that sate by hym, meued his hert with this pite and kynde-
nesse more than any othir thinge / though he spake it not / eueri 20
man coude him grete thanke / The kyng, the quene, and their
doughter thankid him moche / Aftir was the Poo borne to fferaunt,
whiche sent it agein vnto the lordes and knyghtes that were
prisoners, whiche made their avowes accordyng to the same that 24
Orkays had made. Aftir this, made fferaunt his avowe, and sware
that, for the grete crueltees that he had seen without nombre in the
Turkes persone, wold he neuir yelde him vnto him / and if the
Turke came in his daunger, he wolde neuir put him to raunsom; 28
and by the same avowe required he, and praide alle them that were
vndir him, that they wolde make the same promes / The Halle was
fulle of noble folkes, and the Poo was brough[t] bfore them / and
euery man helde vp his hande, & sware with lowde voice the same 32
promesse that fferaunt had made / The Poo was brought bfore the
ijj. seruantes of fferaunt / whiche serued bfore the ladies / and
they made their aduowe to god, to the ladies, and to the poo / that
they shold truly kepe the same promesse / that their maister 36
made / ²Thies avowes were put in writyng by the kynges of
armes / than were the lordes taken vp / and the Mynstrells came
yn / and the lordes, knyghtes and squyers, ladies and gentilwomen,
daunced ther / that night was ther no tidinges of the seege / 40

[² ff. 83, bk.]

- Orkays became so amorous of this faire lady / that he coude haue
 no rest / and often tymes came he, by licence of the kynge, to se the
 queene & their faire doughter / In so moche that folkes perceyued
 4 wele by his maner / that he loued hir our alle thinge / and folkes
 seide amonges them, that it were a mete mariage if he were
 cristenen, for therby shold the pees be sure and ferme / but without
 he were cristenen, ther was noon of the Reaume that wold be agre-
 8 able ther-vnto / This faire lady knewe wele of alle this / whiche
 made no countenaunce like it / for if she had knowen Surnome, or
 one of his felawes, of as noble lynage as hym, she had leuer haue
 had one of them with right litil, than him with alle the Turkes
 12 landes, and in esspecial Le Surnome / for aboue alle othir she liked
 him best; hou be it, there was in any of the tothir two as moche
 honour as in any persone neded to be wissched, though Surnome
 passed them. ¶ Tidinges sone ranne by some prisoners, that were
 16 delyuered in that meane tyme / that the Turke was put in know-
 -lage of thavowes of the Banket / & whanne he herd them, he aduised
 them weel / and perceyued by the kinges avowe that he had made,
 to diffende his reaume to his power / that he wold not lightly
 20 delyuere vp that Towne that he was yn / And aftir, remembred the
 avowe of his sone, which was / what-so-euir he conquered in his
 lif, aftir his dethe shold be deliuerd agein vnto the kynge of Sizile /
 Aftir this, he thought on the avowe of fferaunt and alle his / whiche
 24 was more lothe vnto hym than any of the tothir / for by that sawe
 he his dethe sworne, if he came in their daunger / Also he sawe his
 folkes alle out of corage, and thought wele that his goddes hated
 hym / on the tothir side, he sawe the maner of the sege, that was
 28 daily wers for him and wers / and bettir for them that were withyn
 the towne / also what scareyte of vitaille they had / and with how
 grete payne they gate that litil that they had / Alle thise tidinges
 considered, he sawe him self how he had done shamefully to his
 32 brother / whiche he wist wele wold neur be agreable to do hym
¹neither ayde ne service. with alle thise thoughtes, he fille in suche
 sorowe and drede that he wist not wele what to do / And so he
 thought to assemble his Capteynes and his counselle / and to shewe
 36 them thies matiers, in suche wise that they shold not perceyue by
 his maner nor his wordes, drede nor fere in him to slake their
 corage, but toke this conclusion to breke with them, as though he
 vndirstode them enclined to alle his pleasir / and of high and noble
 40 corage, and thought to shewe his owne maner high and feers / for

Orkays is
head over
ears in
love with
Iolante.

But she likes
Prince Phillip
best.

The Sultan
hears of the
vows at the
Banquet,

and sees that
his siege of
Naples goes
worse and
worse.

[1 leaf 84]

He calls a
Council.

The King of
Sicily re-
solves to
attack the
Sultan in rear

and front at
once.

The Sultan
lays his bad
case before
his Council:—

His Son 'll
give back his
conquests;

his death is
sworn;

[1 ff. 84, bk.]

his men are
out of heart.

His Council
answer:—

wel he wist, in conclusion, that generally they alle wold gif him counselle to departe / There may no man telle the grete deuoir that the kynge of Siziles folkes did every day / grete payne it was to kepe them from fighting with the Turke, and many tymes went 4 they out and scarmysshed with hem / and alt-way to the damage of the Turke, wherby the kynge saw wel that the Turkes folkes had lost hert & corage / and in his ymaginacion thought to make a grete assaute vpon the Turkes loggyng / & concluded in his secrete 8 counselle so to do / Than sent he a seruauant of his, that was wel spoken, secrete and wise, to his lieftenaunt, and sent hym worde at what houre he wold make thassaute vpon the Turke, warnyng hym to be there with alle the power he might make; and that he shold 12 first set vpon the Turke; and while he was yn hande with hym vpon the tone side, wolde he haue alle his power come oute of the towne, & sett on hym on the tothir side.

YE haue wel herde how the Turke was determyned to sende 16 for his counselle and alle his Capitaynes / & so he did / and whan they were bfore hym, he seide vnto them in this maner / “ffaire lordes, the cause that y haue sent for you is this / ye knowe wel, first, the takyng of my Sone; I suppose also, ye 20 vndirstonde thavowe that he hath made, whiche turneth me to grete displeasir / for if y were dede, the payne that y haue taken in my conquest shold litil profite; for his avowe is, aftir my dethe to yelde it agein / and ye knowe wel y haue no moo children nor 24 othir heyre than him, sauf my brother, whiche y shafl not right wel accorde with” / than seide he smylyngly / “ye knowe wel also, how by the avowes that haue be made, my dethe is sworne / Also my aduersary hath made his avowe to diffende his lande, and 28 neur to trete with me / ye se ¹oure conduyte, and thexploite of warre that we haue done / If y coude se you of as good corage as y haue seen you before tymes, y shold be wel comforted / but sith we came bfore this towne, I sawe no good assaute made by vs; 32 wherfore y pray you gete agein your good corage, and I shafl not leue you, but bere you company in alle daungers” / Thus endid his wordes; and they alle withdrewe them, and spake togedre a while; and than, by one of the best of them, he was answerd in this wise / 36 “Sir, we haue alle wel vndirstand your seyng / and thervpon spoken togedre / and right humbly we beseche you / of that I shal say vnto you, to take no displeasir / for it is as late to breke vnto you now as it can be / and if we had durst, we had done it long 40

- sith / ye knowe, sir, the hardnesse and aduersitee that is nowe
 come on you / and it semeth, sauf your displeasir / that the naturall
 pite that a ffadir or a brother ought to haue, or a good prince, to
 4 his suggettes & seruauntes, is gretly quenched and almost failed yn
 you / whiche is a grete pite and damage / and hath caused alle your
 frendes and seruauntes to be vtterly discomforted ; we knowe wele,
 for thise causes haue thises avowes be made on your persone / ye
 8 knowe youre sone in daunger, that might haue ben yolden vnto
 you for a right meane man, to regarde of hym / but ye wold be
 therto in no wise agreable / but to put hym in thauenture of dethe /
 and alle your trewe seruauntes, that were prisoners with hym, and
 12 alle them that ye had leyde in plegge for the kynge your brother ;
 yea / and perauenture his owne persone, ffor we knowe hym suche /
 that forto suffre dethe he will not breke his promes ; and that might
 ye perceyue wele, by the cristen man that he deliuered" / Than
 16 answerd the Turke, and seide : " by that delyueraunce haue y lost
 my sone. But whatsoeuer hath be done before this tyme / be it
 good or euyll, we be in suche cas nowe as ye se / whiche we may
 not long endure without othir purueaunce : and it toucheth you alle
 20 aswell as to me / and therefore y haue assembled you to haue your
 aduise / put out of your hertes all rancour & debates, and remembre
 the matiers nowe, yn suche cace as they are yn" / It semed to them
 alle that were there, that debates might lital auantage / and that
 24 they ¹most purvey for othir remedy, for they were in right grete
 scarste of vitailles, by the kyng of Siziles lieftenaunt and his folkes,
 whiche dayly toke it from them. The Turke asked thavice of hym
 that best pleased hym the reason of / whiche saide in this wise /
 28 " sir, for tho causes that haue be rehersed here / men shal not se
 folkes speke to-gedir a doseyn wordes, but it is of the conduyte of
 you / and of your hoste / and to sey the trouthe of their corage and
 wille / it is no thing towardes you nor your warres / as they were
 32 whan ye came hider / for euery man seith / that in youre persone,
 as to the gudyng of your warres, they se neither rewle nor
 ordenaunce ; wherby they are so discouraged, that xx^{ti} Sizilians are
 worth an .C. of your folkes. Also youre vitailles faile you / and
 36 wynter shall come on hastily, and ye haue not folkes y-nough to
 holde your sege / and for to conduyte your vitaille / wherfore the
 kyng of Siziles folkes distressith them dayly that conduyte it / And
 therefore, myn aduise shalbe this / that, or ye haue any grettir losse,
 40 that ye breke vp the sege / and drawe ye all this wynter tyme in-to

Your troubles are all of your own making:

you wouldn't save your son's life when you could.

The Sultan says, 'We're in a bad plight.'

What's to be done ?

[1 leaf 85]

One of the Council answers:—

'Your folk see neither rule nor order in your conduct of this war.'

You'd better break up the siege.

The longer
you stay,
the greater
your loss and
shaine 'll be.

suche townes of this Reaume as ye haue conquered / men shalle sey
that this shalle not be for your honour / but byholde / if ye abide
here any lenger, what honour ye may wyne therby / I dare sey, at
last ye shal be fayn to departe, whan ye shal haue spent youre 4
richesse, and perauenture lost many moo of your folkes, wherthorugh,
your departyng than shal be grettir damage and more shame than
it shold be at this day / for in defeaute of vitaille, can ye not gete
that place yet / it is so wele purveide / & by trefte ye can not gete 8
it / ffor ye knowe wele what avowe the kynge hath made; wherfore
ye may entende by no meane to haue it but by force; and beholde
hou fer ye are therfrom / for sith ye came hider, was not one of vs
so hardy that durst thinke to approche to their walles / wherfore, 12
alle thinges considered, with your correccion I am of thopinion of
your departyng. And whan ye shalle be withdrawen in-to what

When you've
withdrawn
to one of your
towns, you
can send
home for
more help,

[1 lf. 85, bk.]

Towne of this Reaume it shal please you / ye may sende than to
the grete lordes of your Reaume, to shewe them yn what cas ye be / 16
and make them to take aduise amonges them, and sende you suche
counsell as they thinke best / and then most they nedes helpe to
execute 1 suche counsell as they gif you; and from hensforth
afferme your self to bileue your counsell, and to werke by their 20
aduise / for the moost wise that lyueth, hath nede of counsell and
aduise / and if it please you so to do / ye shal kepe that ye haue
conquered; for youre enemy is not mighti / And y trust, if it will
please you to bileue your kynne and counselle, by the next somer 24
your honour shal be recouerd, and be in as good caas as euer it
was." Thise wordes, herde by the Turke, displeased him no
thinge / and so he asked the tothir folowyng, their aduises / But
euery man was so weried and annoied, that they were of the same 28
opinion. The Turke then concluded on this opinion, seyng / "ye
blame that y haue not done by counsel, and yet me semeth, by
vsyng of this counsell, bothe shame & blame shal bifalle me / but
as hereyn y wol leue myn opiuion / and do by your aduise and 32
counselle; and me thinkith it were good to knowe the day of oure
departyng." than concluded they on the xijth day folowyng / And
that shold be in the night / euery man shold trusse his tente and
his cariage / and euery man be on horsbak at the sprynge of day / 36
The conclusion this taken, euery man was warned that had any
charge / but the day of their departyng was ouir longe & damage-
able for theym / ¶ Ye haue wele herde here-bifore of thentirprise
that the kynge of Sizile had taken, and how he had assertayned 40

and do better
next sum-
mer."

The Sultan
agrees to
retire from
the siege in
twelve days.

- his lieftenaunt therof; and the messenger had quytte hym so wele, that he was entred secretly in-to the Towne agein / and reported vnto the kynge, for trouthe, that in his lieftenaunt shold
- 4 be no defeaute / for he wold be there *with* moo than .x. thousand men / at suche houre as the kynge had commaundid him / whiche houre was at the poynt of the day, when men might vnnethes se / and they had taken that houre / for cause the tothir ij. puissaunces
- 8 of the Turke might not so easely come to-gedir vnto hym as if it had ben day / The day of this entirprise was on the morowe after the turke had assembled his counsell, as ye haue herde. This night the kynge of Sizile made alle purueaunce for his goyng forth, as he
- 12 that wold be there him-self. vndir his baner that day he herde masse, & made alle his company do the same / and than toke he leue of the quene and of alle the ladies, whiche he lefte fulle sore wepyng; for grete drede had they of hym / and of his company.
- 16 The kynge wente downe, and came to the gates, praing alle his folkes to quyte hem ¹wele, for if they might abate the Turkes pride / they shold from thensforth lede the remenaunt of their lyues in ioie and in disport, for by this meane shold ende the
- 20 warres / wherthorough so moche cristen people had died / fferaunt, that was bifore *with* his company, whan he shold go oute, he escorted in like wise his iij. seruauntes; and they made their avowes to god, that, shold outhir dye, or be the first that shold come to the
- 24 Turkes tentes, and if they founde him there, they shold put them in deuoir to accomplish their maisters avowe / In like wise, as the kynge hath monysshed his folkes / so did the lieftenaunt, that was *without*, and nerre vnto the Turkes tentes, exorted his folkes, shew-
- 28 yng them that his entirprise was not for no smalle scarmyssh or assemble / but either to destroie the Turke, or to dye in the quarelle / eueri man promysed hym to do wele; & that for drede of dethe they wold not lette to accomplish the kynges pleasirs / And as
- 32 they were in .thise wordes, they were so nygh their enemyes that they were amonges tentes and pavilions / and came with suche strength and corage, that at their first comyng they bare downe alle that they mette *with*, ouirthrowing pavilions, and sleying men so
- 36 many, that it was mernaile to se / Than was the erie and the noise so moche, that they herd it in-to the Towne / than they opened the gates / and fferaunt and his company went first out, and went streight vpon the Turkes wacche, whiche they lightly destroyed /
- 40 than came they to the Turkes loggyng / whiche they fonde fortified /

But the next morning, at break of day, the Sicilian Captain-general, with 10,000 men

[1 leaf 86]
(the King having heartend his folk),

attacks, and is among the Turkish tents, slaying their men.

Ferant sallies from Naples.

The 3 Princes
charge up to
the Sultan's
tent, and,

having sent
for the King
of Sicily,

roul the
Turks.
The Sultan
offers to
surrender,

but the foot-
soldiers cut
off his head,
and stick it
on a spear.

The Sicilians
retire to
Naples.

The two other
Turkish
Divisions
hold together,

but litil while endured it ageinst them / The kynge folowed fferaunt
with grete corage, and alle his folkes / and perceyued wele anon that
the Turkes loggyng was wonne ; wherof, if he were glad and ioifult,
it is no question. The iij. felawes, that y haue spoken of before, that 4
moche desired to accomplissh their promes, did so moche that they
came to the Turkes tent, whereas fond hym accompayned with alle
his folkes, that were than assembled in harneys, praying them to
quite hem wele / when the iij. felawes sawe this company, they 8
sent anon for the kynge, whiche came fforthwith ; and whan they
sawe the kynge nere them / they smote yn amonges their enemyes
with suche strength and corage, that lightly they made them weye /
for they ouirthrowe alle that abode their strokes. The kynge, that 12
was nere them, behelde hem in grete mernaile, thinkyng that it was
impossible for any mortalle bodies to haue done that they did. Thus
[1f. 86, bk.] in litil while, ¹the grete puissaunce that was aboute the Turke,
brake, and was discomfite / than wolde he haue yolden him / but 16
noman wolde take him. Thise iij. felawes, whan they sawe him
in that caas, coude not fynde in their hertes to lay handes on him /
and take him prisoner they might not, for their auowes ; so lette
they the fote men to slee hym / and made to smyte of his hede, & 20
put it on a spere / And whan the kynge of Sizile sawe he had the
ouirhand of his enemyes / he made to blowe retrayte, for drede of
the tothir ij. puissaunces / for by than was the sonne risen. And
euery man, seing the kynges baner withdrawe / drewe them vnto 24
him glad & ioifult, with prisoners and richesse out of nombre. Thus
drew they hem alle vnto the Towne ; for wele they wist the seege
was ended / hou be it, they might haue had grete harme by the
remenaunt of the Turkes folkes, seyng they were sore foughten with 28
a-fore / Thise othir ij companyes of the Turkes were assembled
to-gedre & embatailed for to come vnto the Turke ; but anone they
were assertayned that he was dede, and alle his logging ouirthrowen /
and so they kepte hem stille to-gedre / they sawe the kynge with- 32
drawe to the towne, and entred yn with alle his folkes alle at his
pleasir. The ladies were assertayned of the grete iourney and good
auenture, that god by his grace had youen the kynge vpon his
enemyes : than went they to chirche, to thanke god / The kynge, 36
whan he came to the Towne, he alight at the Chirche, and alle the
belles of the Towne range / he and alle his folkes thonked god with
goode herte / and made his offrynges / and aftir went to his
loggyng / and made to purvey that his lieftenaunt and alle his folkes 40

were wele logged / They had be there but litil while, but the
wacche tolde them for trouthe that the tothir ij. compaynes of the
Turkes departed / Than shortly the kynge and alle his folkes went
4 to horsbake, and folowed their enemyes / and withyn short space
ouirtoke them / and they wold haue embatailed them / but they
were so affraied and discouraged, as they that had lost their hede /
for they abode but litil while / but toke them to flee / and than the
8 chace bigan, whiche dured a iij. or iiij. myle, wherein were so many
slayne, that it was meruaile to thinke, for there was no diffence
amonges them. than the kynge made his folkes to retourne agein
yn-to the ¹Towne / and made to take alle the good that was bilong-
12 yng to the Turke and his hoste, to be departed amonges his folkes,
to euery man aftir his degre / and was good innumerable, beside the
prisoners they had gotten / Also they fonde in the vessells that
caried gold and siluer, more than ij. Millions of golde / eueri man
16 was so wele garnysed with othir goodes, that they toke litil hede
therof; but by a comen assent, and with good hert, gaf it vnto the
kynge for to mayntene his warres / prouidyng that they might do
their owne pleasirs with their prisoners. The kynge with good
20 wille agreed ther-to, and sawe him by this meane riche y-nough to
mayntene his warres, and for to conquere a nother reaueme ther-to.
Of alle the goodes that were gotten there, Surnome, Athis and Ector,
were not the bettir / for eueri man knewe him self a kynges sone /
24 and thought, now the warres were ended, they had litil nede of
good / for they shold haue good y-nough, bothe for them self, and
to make their felawes riche y-nough for euir / and thought eche of
them, if his felowe knewe that he were a kynges sone, they had
28 ben to famylier with him. Thus had alle thies iij. kynges sones one
thought / and eche of them thought neuir to faile his felawes, but
to make them riche for euir. many folkys meruailed moche that
thise iij. toke nomore hede of good / for they toke hede of non
32 othir thinge, but only to be wele horsid and wele armed / and wele
beseyne / & of alle this lakkid they nought at any tyme they wold
aske it. whan they were returned agein vnto their loggings,
vnarmed & wele araied, they semed liker aungells than men / The
36 kynge of Sizile rehersed in the presence of the ladies, and of alle
them that were there, the grete worthinesse that he had sen in
them iij. that day bfore the Turkes tente / and seide that he was
half abassed and aferde to beholde the grete noblesse of them; and
40 tolde howe they had parted the prese, and how many folkes fille

but soon
retreat,

take to flight,

and are cut
up by the
Sicilians,

[1 leaf 87]

who take
large booty
and 2,000,000
of gold.

The 3 Princes
of France,
Scotland,
and England
will not
accept any
plunder.

They look
liker angels
than men.

The King of
Sicily tells
of the Three
Princes'
prowess.

[1 lf. 87, bk.]

He calls a
Council,

and asks
their advice

as to the
recovery of
his reahn.

They urge
him to press
on, and re-
take all his
towns from
the Turks.

downe aboute them for fere of their strokes; so many, that their horses might vnnethe haue rowme to stande in / than tolde he aftir of the dethe of the Turke; And that, notwithstanding the grete erueltee that eche of theym had founde in hym / whan they sawe 4 him in wille to yelde him / there was none of theym wolde lay hande on him / but lete the fote men allone *with* him. Euery man
1 had grete pleasir to here the kynge reherce the Honour and noblesse of thise iij. yonge gentilmen / This night passed the kynge 8 forth in grete ioie / and on the morowe made many masses to be seide, in thanking god of their good fortune / Aftir dyner, assembled he his counselle, to take aduise vpon suche besinesse as he had to do, for he was bothe wise and worthy, and loued and dred god / 12 and for thise causes eueri man loued him, and desired to serue him. And, aftir his power, he had ben aHwey large and curtaise / and right famylier *with* noble folkes / wherfore he had their loue so fermely, that, for to dy, they wold leue hym in no daunger / ¶ whan 16 his counselle was assembled, he saide amonges them in this wise /
“My trewe & kynde frendes, by whom at this day I haue haddle this high and noble fortune / wherby y may come to the recouere of alle my reaume / yet can y not leue to calle on you, to put you in 20 daunger for me / notwithstanding the grete damages & harmes that ye haue suffred for my sake / ye se wele, my trewe frendes & sogettes, the estate of oure enemyes, and of vs bothe / wherupon y pray you to counselle me / for the wele of cristendome and the 24 recouere of my reaume / and y am redy in what ye wille aduise me, to iubarde my body and my goodes to thaccomplishment therof, if me thinke it be leefult.” This counselle was long in takyng, for they knewe wele it was tyme and nede / wherfore they counselled 28 the kynge to tary not, but to ouir-ride his reaume / and to conquere the townes agein, that the Turke had wonne; ffor they thought wele, if he went shortly ther-about, his enemyes were yet in suche drede & discomfort, that he shold fynde lital diffence in them / 32 And they thought it neded not to telle Orkays yit the dethe of his ffadir, notwithstanding he had made his avowe to yelde alle agein / but they thought it shold be grettir honour for the kynge to conquere it agein by might. ¶ In this maner was it ordeyned and 36 concluded / and the kynge made alle comoners to departe, sauf only men of werre and sowdiours / This night made he redy alle thinges for to kepe the felde, an[d] on the morowe was alle his ordenaunce & Artilry carted redy to go forth / And the quene and hir doughtir, 40

and alle hir ladies, went vnto a faire Castelle, but iiij. myle thens.
 By than was spred the tidynges of the grete victory thorough alle
 his Reaume / wherof they made meruailous ioie / and yelded than-
 4 kynges to god. On the morowe, came many folkes vnto the All the
Sicillians
reioice at
the victory;
[1 leaf 88]
 kyng, bringyng vitale and othir stuff / so that the kyng wende
 there had not ben so many holdyng the cristen feith in a gret parte
 of his Reaume / Than concluded the kyng, to sende forth tidynges
 8 to alle cristen princes, of the victory that god had youen him / than
 were messangers sent to euery Reaume ; so that, *withyn* litil while,
 this grete iournay was knowen thorough alle cristendome / & euery
 prince made processions to be gon, thorough-out his Reaume / and
 12 belles to be rongen in euery chirche, for the good aventure / &
 many suche, as had take litil hede of the kyng of Sizile, or of his
 Reaume, and had called him an vnhappy kyng / nowe calle they
 hym wele vred, & repente them of their seyng / The kyng of
 16 Sesile, seing his grete puissaunce, & wille of his folkes, went forth
 conqueryng on his enemyes / and wanne *with* assaute the first
 towne he came vnto, whiche was the strengist of the Reaume, sauf
 only that / that himself had be biseged yn / but they *withyn* the
 20 towne had lost all corage / wherfore ther was founde litil diffence
 in them / and alle they were put to dethe, *without* takyng of any
 one prisoner / This takyng put the remenaunt of the turkes in
 suche drede / that daily they departed out of the land / The kyng
 24 of Luby him-self, and alle his company, were goon agein in-to his
 owne Reaume / they that abode, were hopeles of any socour or aide
 that might come to them / wherby, in litil while, what by force and
 by tretee, the moost part of the Reaume was recouerd, sauf twoo or
 28 thre Townes, that were nigh the see / and that was, for they thought
 that they might sonner haue socour than any that was *withyn* the
 Reaume / The kyng, that was sore trauailed / and it was than
 wynter, toke counselle to lete them be til somer, and than to
 32 assemble his power agein / and to lay sege to them, and wyne
 them / Than lefte he fferant in the next place *pat* ioyned vnto
 them / for grete trust had he in him / and went home him self /
 and abode the remenaunt of the wynter with the quene and his
 36 faire doughtir, whom him thought tyme was to be maried / But
 aboute alle thing, he desired to bistowe hir to a man of grete honour
 and worthinesse. ¶ Nowe shalle we leue a while of the grete warres
 of Sizile, & speke of Almayne. [*Illumination: on right, Messengers
 40 giving a letter to a King: on left, Kings, Bishops and Lords.*]

[¹ ff. 88, bk.]
The Emperour,
Frederick,
Duke of
Brunswick,

dies.

The Electors

give his
empire to
the King of
Sicily, who

thus becomes
an Emperour.

[² leaf 89]

The biggest
Sicilian town
in Turkish
hands

is taken

by the 3
Princes,

IN that tyme had the Emperour a duc of Bruswitt, named
ffrederike, the whiche, for none nede that the kynge of Sizile
had, nor his Reaume, wolde neur entende to do him aide nor
soecour / And for trouthe, he was olde & beyonde the yeres to bere 4
armes / beside his age, was he as couetous as any man might be /
thise ij. principalle causes letted hym to do any aide to the Reaume
of Sizile / There is nobody, be he olde or yonge, but ones shalt dy /
This Emperours tyme came, that nedes he most departe out of the 8
world / and lefte grete tresour behinde him, whiche, aftir his dethe,
litol profited him / and in his lif did him noo worship / for it
diffendid him to accomplisshe suche thinges as by his dignite and
office he ought to do. aftir his dethe, anone the Chesers of thempyre 12
were assembled, and aduised amonges them, whom they might make
Emperour ; and concluded amonges them that the kynge of Sizile
shold be it / for he had endured grete trauaile and payne for the feith.
So they purueyde in alle haste to be ascertayned of his pleasir / and 16
befille so, that on cristmasse day the presentacion of the Empire was
brought hym, whiche he resceyued fulle humbly / Thus was the
kynge of Sizile Emperour, and purposed to do more seruice to god,
if the cace requyred, than euir did he before hym / Than ordeyned 20
he his aray, accordyng to his estate, more rially than it had ben
bifore. Whan thise tidynges were knowen thorough the Reaume,
they made grete ioie / and euery man seide, that he was moost
worthy to be it, of any man that lyued / In this meane ceason, 24
Surname and his ij. felaws asked leue of their maister to go vnto
an Enterpryce ; and he graunted them, and accompayned them
right mghtly / they tolde their maister no thing whider they
went / and he enquired them not / for he trusted y-nough in their 28
honour & wisdomes / than went they vnto a Towne, that was the
biggest that was in the turkes handes / than sent they bifore of
their folkes to be hidde in a wode but litil thens / and them-self
went vnto the towne with suche feliship as pleased them / & scalet 32
it be night / even against the point of the day / & were entred
vpon the walles of the maister Toure or any man espied them /
than went they downe, and opened the gates / and lete the remen-
aunt come yn, that were in a busshment without. and than aroos 36
the noise and the cry thoroughout the towne / and euery man wold
haue goon to their harneys / but it was to late / by the noblesse of
thise iij. and of their company, was the Towne sone deliuerd of alle
the Turkes / for they made serche euery house, and slewe as many 40

- as they coude fynde withyn the Towne / Then sawe they in the hauen, lyng many vesselles / wherein they supposed was the richesse of the Towne. Than made they alle thise goodes to be departed
4 amonges their company / and whan euery man was rewarded & wele logged / they made a lettir to their maister / and sent him worde howe they hadde done / “praying hym, if it pleased hym, to come thider, or ellis to commaunde them his pleasirs.” Whan sferaunt
8 sawe the letters, he redde them with glad chere / and perceyued wele that his folkes had wonne Gayett, the moost stronge place that was withyn the Reaume of Sizile / Than was he as ioyfult as any man might be / and toke suche company as pleased hym, and
12 went vnto them / and, at his departyng, wrote a lettir vnto the Emperour, shewing him alle this matier, how it was / and howe grete a wele it was for his Reaume; ffor as long as the turkes had ben able to kepe that place, they might haue kepte alle the cuntre
16 aboute them in tribute. and withyn that lettir he had closed the lettir that had be sent hym by his iij. seruantes. ¶ Now leueth the tale a while to speke of them, & retourneth to speke of Orkays.
- 20 **T**Routhe it was, that he knewe wele that the sege was departed / but he knewe not in what maner / notwithstanding he en-
quired often / but noman wolde ¹telle him, for the Emperour had commaundid so / and so he knewe wele, sith the sege was broken, he coude not be delyuered without raunsome / wherfore he
24 desired to speke with the Emperour / and the Emperour went vnto him; to whom he seide / “sir, y knowe certaynly that þe sege þat was this before the Towne, is no lenger / wherfore y besече you that ye wille entende to my delyueraunce / and y promyse you that
28 y shalþ do my trewe deuoir to make the pees and accorde bitwene my lorde my fadir, and you” / “fforsothe,” saide the Emperour / “it is alle othirwise than ye knowe; but entre in-to yondir lital chambre / and ij. or iij. of your folkes, suche as best shalle please
32 you / and y shalþ telle you suche thinges as touche you right nere” / than went he in-to the chambre / and the Emperour called v. or vj. of his counselle with hym / and went in to Orkais, and saide vnto hym / “my frende, for youre wele, it behoueth that ye be aduertised
36 for suche thinges as are befallen sith ye were prisoner” / than tolde he him alle holly the dethe of his ffadir / the destruccion of his folkes, what nombre was ded of them / Aftir, he tolde him the recouere of his places / and of the takyng of his last place, that
40 was wonne agein by Surname and his felawes. Than tolde he him

and all the
Turks in it
are slain.

This town is
Gaeta.

The Turkish
Prince
Orcays

[1f. 89, bk.]

is told of the
death of his
father;

and of the
loss of his
towns.

the grace that god had youen him, to be chosen a diffendour of the cristen feith; and how he was Emperour; wherby he was bounde to mayntene & encrease the cristen lawe. Aftir he had tolde Orkais this, he seide, vpon the request that he hade made vnto him for his delyueraunce / that he entendid not to put him to fynauce, bifore he had by force recouerd his inheritaunce / and than he wolde be agreable to his delyueraunce / Orkais, hering thies tidynges, by the whiche he vndirstode the dethe of his ffadir / and of many a noble man that was with him / wherfore he made grete sorow & lamentacion, & so did alle suche of his folkes as he had with him / so moche that noon of hem coude speke a worde. But at laste, a wise knyght of his seid vnto him, "My lorde! suche be the adventures of this world / there is no man can be assured here, of parfit wele / and as for this losse, ye can not recouere it by your sorowe / Wherfore the best meane of remedy is, sith it is so fortunied, now to ouirpasse this sorowe / & to remembre the best waies for your self / for ye be rightfull heire vnto the Turke; & his inheritaunce most descende vnto you / and your abidyng here shalle gretly annoie you / and lital profit vnto the Emperour that is here pre'sent. It is not Longe sith ye aduowed bifore Hym / if the Turke were dede, that ye wolde delyuere vnto his handes as moche as the Turke shold leue you of this Reaume; wherfore, it is wele done now, that ye accomplissh your auowe / and as for your delyueraunce, ye may apointe with him to his pleasir / aftir your power" / "Trewly," saide Orkais, "that y haue promysed and auowed, y am redy to holde" / the Emperour thankid him / "natheles," he saide, "that he purposed, neither be tretise nor apointment, to recouere no place of his owne Reaume, but like as it had ben taken fro him by force / so wolde he wyne it agein, or euir that he entendid to the deliueraunce of any prisoner that he had" / Orkais, hering this answeire, with the remenaunt of his sorowe, was passyng heuy and pensiff, and toke leue of the Emperour / and retourned to his logging / where he endured in grete sorow / til such tyme as ye shalle here-aftir here / fferaunt, as y haue seide you, did so wele, that he came sauffy to the towne that his folkes had newly taken / where as his thre seruantes ioifully receyued him / ye may wele wite there was grete ioie amonges them; for he loued them thre as wele as they had ben his owne children. Now shall y telle you of the Turkes folkes that were retourned in-to their Cuntrees. [*Illumination: March of Troops from a City: baggage-waggons, footmen, horsemen and Chiefs.*]

Orcays is not to be admitted to ransom till the Emperour has retaken all his Sicilian towns.

As Orcays is now Sultan,

[¹ leaf 90]

he declares he will keep his promise to give up his Sicilian towns to the Emperour.

- M**Any tymes bi-fore, hadde they retourned with grete glorie, The Turks who've gone home beaten,
 semyng to them that al the world might not endure ageinst them / But now is it othirwise / for they retourned with
 4 heuy chere for their maister, that they had thus pitously lost for
 lakke of corage. They that were in the contre abidyng, hering and their countrymen there,
 this sorowfull tidinges of the dethe of their lorde, coursed the houre
 that euir suche fleers were borne, and helde them as shamed men,
 8 without honour / and they that had lost their frendes, wolde fulle
 fayne haue putt them to dethe / Thus wist they not whedir to go / [¹ 1f. 90. bk.]
 but were fayne to hide them in their houses / as they that durst
 not be shewed / wisshyng that they had neuir departed out of
 12 Sizile / but that they had ben slayne whan their maister was / the
 sorowe was right grete ouir alle the Turkes lande, with alle his
 sogettes, whan they knewe the trouthe of his dethe / and that he
 had but one only sone, whiche was yit prisoner / thus had they have no comfort,
 16 no recomfort / for the moost part of the grete lordes that shold helpe
 to sustene them and comfort them, were dede in the company of
 their lorde / natheles, at last they toke hert vnto them / and
 assembled the iij. estates throughout alle the lond, to take counselle
 20 and auise vpon the gouernaunce of euery contre & lordshipe / & of
 the deliuerance of their yonge lord / and as they were for this
 nede assembled, came tidinges vnto them of the grete losses that
 they daily had in Sizile / and of the good and stronge Towne that
 24 the iij. felawes had newly conquered, as ye haue herde bifore, wher-
 of they were right sorowfulle / Natheles they ordeyned vpon their
 othir businesse, holdyng the Reaume of Sizile for lost / & alle the and hold Stelly lost;
 richesse that was caried thider, as is bifore rehersed / thinkyng
 28 wele this losse might not be recouerd by them / wherfore they con-
 cluded to take aduise vpon the remenaunt of their charge / whiche
 the grettist was, to haue agein there yong Lorde that might gouerne
 them / yn whom they hadde grete affiaunce / wherfore they con- but they wish to ransom Orcays.
 32 cluded to make a request vnto the Emperour to haue saufecondite
 for some of them to come to him / and purveide connynge officers
 of armes to be sent vnto the Emperour / for the request of this
 saufecondite. ¶ Now leue we them with their charge, and retourne
 36 to the Emperour.

This meane while the wynter passed, and the newe ceason
 approche / the Emperour assembled all his counselle, and the
 Capitaynes, suche as he had moost affiaunce yn, and there
 40 was speche of alle his bessynesse / and concluded that, yn the

moneth of Iune, the Emperour shold be in the felde, & his puis-
 saunce, to conquere agein the remenaunt of his places that his
 enemyes helde *withyn* his Reaume / among alle othir that were sent
 for / fferauant was comen thider / and had lefte his iij. seruantes 4
 keepyng the places that they hadde wonne. ¹wherof the Emperour
 was sore troubled that they were not come / and so was faire
 Iolante that loued hem ful hertily / and in esspecialle Le Surnome.
 wherfore she desired moche to se them, and so did alle othir ladies 8
 and gentilwomen; and some of them seide unto hir, to trouble hir /
 for they knewe wele she desired moche to se them / that they herde
 sey / that, at the takyng of the place, Le Surnome was slayne / and
 the tothir ij. were wounded to the dethe; but ther was noon that 12
 wolde telle it to the Emperour, for troublыng of him. This faire
 lady, heryng thise tidynges, toke suche sorow at hir hert, that she
 might neither ete ne drynke / she thought alway that she sawe
 them bifore hir / doing hir suche service as they were wont to do / 16
 and had in hir self y-nough of ymaginacions of the beaute and
 maner of their persones / and of the grete pite and damage that was
 of their deth / whiche, as she thought, was incomparable / and this
 thought was neur out of hir mynde. hou be it, bifore hir fadir, 20
 she couerd hir sorow as wele as she might; But she coude not so
 wele couer it, but that he perceyued hir hert was not in ease / and
 he had no moo children but hir / wherfore it greued him moche
 the more to see her in that / So on a day he toke hir a-part, and 24
 asked hir what hir ayled / for he saw wele she was right heuy /
 and she thankid his grace, and saide there was no suche thing; for
 gretely she dred to telle hym, in as moche as it was tolde hir
 secretly / and also, if he shold knowe therof, she wist wele / he 28
 shold make right grete sorowe. The Emperour was not content
 with this answare / but toke hir forth with hym in-to an Inner
 chambre / and wold nedes wite whi it was / than kneled she downe
 a-fore him / and bisought him, that what so euir she shold sey 32
 vnto hym, that he wold not be troubled ther-with / nor also to
 thinke in hir, that any fonde loue caused hir to haue the annoy *pat*
 she had, but only the grete losse & damage of him and of his
 Reaume / than tolde she him / how she hadde herd say that Surnome 36
 sholde be slayne at the last towne that was taken / and his othir
 ij. felawes wounded to the dethe / and this was it that caused hir
 to be so sorowfuH, to thinke that so noble persones as they were /
 and by whom grete honour and wele was come to him / and to his 40

The 3 Princes
 stay at Gaeta,
 [1 leaf 91]

but some
 Court ladies
 declare that
 Philip is kild,

and David
 and Hum-
 phrey wound-
 ed to death.

Princess
 Iolante

confesses to
 her father

her sorrow
 for the re-
 ported death
 and mortal
 wounds of the
 3 Princes.

- Reaume, sholde be now so sone ded & destroied / And whan the
Emperour ¹herde thise tidynges / he thought verily it had ben [1 ff. 01, bk.]
sothe / & had suche sorowe / that he lened him downe on his bed / The Em-
peror grieves
for the news,
4 and might not speke. he bade his doughter sende for fferaunt / she
did so / and he came anone / and founde the Emperour liyng, his
yen fulle of teeres / and coude not speke a worde to him / wherof and has
Ferant sum-
mond.
8 fferaunt was meruailously abasshed / and kuelel downe bifore him,
8 biseching him to telle him / what hym ayled / for in alle his liff had
he neuir see him in suche plite / for no losse that euir bifelle him.
So atte laste the Emperour tolde him of thise tidinges with fulle
grete payne / for his hert was so sore enclosed that he might
12 vnnethe speke / and whan fferaunt herd this, he was sore abasshed /
so that he wist not what to thinke / for the grete loue that he had
to his iij. seruantes; hou be it, that he had seen them sith / and
lefte them wele y-nough at ease / than seide he to the Emperour /
16 "trewly, sir, than are they dede sith my departyng / for y lefte Ferant says
he left the
3 Princes safe
and sound.
them alle hole & sauf / and if it were othir-wise, y wote wele y shold
not long endure aftir them / for y haue noon honour, but, next god,
it cometh me of them / wherfore it sholde be right hard and heuy
20 to me, if it were so / to make suche chere as y do / alas! how shold
y mow comfort an othir / and ther were no cause of comfort in my
self" / "forsothe," saide the Emperour, "y leue you wele" /
"trewly, sir," saide fferaunt / "the place they be yn is not to be
24 lefte, but in the handes of right trewe and noble men; and that was
the cause y lefte them there" / Than departed fferaunt from the
kyng, and sent in alle haste a messanger vnto them / and praied He sends for
them,
them to come vnto hym / and to purvey, so that the towne were
28 surely kepte / Assone as they herde thise tidynges, they were right
ioyfulle / and moche desired they to se the Emperour / and in es-
specialle his faire doughter, to whom they were alle thre seruantes /
and thus departed they assone as they might / and withyn lital
32 while came to fferaunt their maister / whiche was of them as ioyful
as any man might be / and, assone as he might, brought them to the
Emperour, to whom he had no thing tolde that he had sent for and takes
them to the
Emperor,
them / and assone as the Emperour sawe them / he chaunged sore /
36 coloures / & toke them in his armes, eche one aftir othir / and
neuir made them suche chere as he did than / and sent them forth-
with to his doughter / & whan she sawe them, she had suche ioie at
hir hert / that she coude not ^{2a} grete while speke o worde, but and to
Iolante.
[2 leaf 92]
40 toke eche of them by the hande, and aduised them wele, thinkyng

Iolante has
never seen
such lifelike
dead folks as
the 3 Princes
are.

[1 MS. smyl-
lingly]

The Emperour
musters his
forces,

wins his best
town from
the Turks by
assault,

and soon has
his whole
realm in his
own hands.

He grants a
safe-conduct
[2 lf. 92, bk.]
for 200 Turks
to treat for a
truce.

in hir self, whethir it were a dreme, or matier of trowth / and whan she might speke, she seide vnto them / "forsothe, my frendes, y sawe neuir yn my lif so lifly ded folkes as ye be" / and they answered hir alle smylyngly,¹ and saide / "forsothe, madame, we are noon othirwise ded than we were wont to be" / and therwith came the Emperour to his daughters chambre, and tolde them what was reported of them / and than knewe they wele that the grete chere that men made them, was for that cause / and fro that day 8 forth, founde they them more bounden to the Emperour and to his faire doughtir, and also to their maister / than they had ben bifore / and eche of them thought in their mynde, whan they coude se their ceason, they wolde meue him for the mariage of his doughtir / for 12 they knewe noon like vnto hir in beaute / and alle othir vertues / ¶ Now retourne we, and speke of the goode and noble Emperoure.

THe Emperour sent for his folkes / and by than they were assembled / it drewe vpone suche tyme as he had concludid 16 bifore to take the felde, and so vndirstode him self right wele accompayned / and his ordenaunce was grete. Than went he to the next place of his enemyes, and bisegid it rounde a-boute / and made so sharpe assaute / that withyn litil while þe towne was 20 wonne / and for to put the remenaunt in drede, that helde any place withyn his reame / alle tho that were withyn that towne were put to dethe / And aftir that / alle tho that kepte any othir places were so dredefulle, that they had neither wille ne corage to 24 holde them / but some stole their wey, and lefte the places allone / and some deliuerd them by apointment / The Emperour taried in no place to speke of / til he had perfourmed his conquest / and withyn litil while, he had his reame holly in his hande / The 28 Emperour thus beyng on the felde / came vnto him the same tyme / the kynges of armes that were sent to hym oute of Turkey, requirng him for a saufcondite, like as was spoken of here to-fore / Themperour was conseiled to agre to this Sauscondite, in asmoche 32 as he had accomplished his conquest / and so graunted a saufcondite to CC. persones / And ²than he departed his armee, & retourned to themperesse his wif, and apointed a day to assemble the estates of his Reame, to take aulse of suche besynesse as he 36 had to do / and there abode he in ioie and rest / til suche day as he had taken / Now cometh this Day of metyng of his estates. And a litil bifore, were comen the Turkes folkes, that had noon othir charge but to put their yong lorde to fynaunce / and the Emperour 40

- had herd them bfore the comyng of the estates. So when thise
 estates were comen / he made to assemble them vpon a gret day in
 an halle / for there were many folkes / Than, in presence of them
 4 alle, he shewed his grete besynesse : first, of the demeanyng of his
 warres, wherof he was in no surete as yit / aftir, of the delyuer-
 aunce of Orkais, and othir prisoners that he hadde / for whiche
 cause the Ambassatours came to him out of Turky / aftir this, spake
 8 he of the demeanyng of the Empyre / and that, for the grete warres
 that he hath had / he had not yit be in no place to receyue none of
 the crownes that to the Empyre bilonged / "Aftir," saide he, "that
 he is nowe bicomme aged, and that he hath had in the warres grete
 12 payne to trauaille / wherfore it was nedefulle for hym, fro hensforth,
 to se the meanes somwhat to be supported and holpen / But in case
 of nede, to do as well as euer he did / with the good helpe of his
 suggettes. but what he mente he shold shewe them, whiche was, as
 16 semed hym, to marye his doughtir to some mighti prince / by whom
 he might haue aide and comfort to discharge him of his laborous
 troubles in his olde dayes / seyng also that she was of resonable
 yeres to be maried. Thies iiij. thinges touched his hert right nere /
 20 Requiring / that euerych of them wold take good aulse hereon /
 ageinst suche houre as they shold mete ther agein." Aftir thise
 wordes seide, the emperour departed / and they that were of his
 pryve counselle, spake of thise matiers / whiche thought that two
 24 the first poyntes were but one / that was, of the warres that he had
 hadde / and of the deliuerance of Orkais and his othir prisoners /
 for, by that one, that othir sholde be made / As thus / they semed,
 seyng the Emperour had alle his reame in his hande / that by the
 28 deliuerance of Orkais he might haue a grete fynauce for to helpe
 hym to his empyre / and by his delyuerance, might he take a
 longe trewes of x. or xij. yere / and in the meane while might he
 re'ceyue his crownes / and vnderstande the demeanyng of his
 32 Empyre / and what aide he might haue there / And than, this
 trewes ended / he might go aftir in-to the Turkes Land / and put
 him in deuoir to encrease the cristen feith / and in this meane
 tyne / he might wele entende to the mariage of his doughtir / In
 36 this wise, as I haue seide, they aused the Emperour / whiche sone
 agreed to their opinion touchyng his warres / and the deliuerance
 of his prisoners / and the demeanyng of his Empyre / But he
 thought to vse othir aulse touching the mariage of his doughtir,
 40 seyng vnto them / "Remembre ye what a valiaunt man is worth ;

The Emperor
 asks his
 Council about
 1. carrying
 on his war,
 2. the ransom
 of Orcays,

3. managing
 his Empire,

4. marrying
 his daughter
 Iolante.

His Privy
 Council say
 his points
 1 and 2 are
 only one;

also that he
 should get
 money by
 letting
 Orcays be
 ransomed ;

[1 leaf 93]
 should then
 visit his
 Empire;

invade
 Turkey,

and then
 marry his
 daughter.

The Emperor for, sith the comyng of Surnome, as moche wele is fallen to vs by his worthynesse / as if the grace of the holy gost had lighte amonges us / ffor, fro that day sith, we haue so moche be comforted and enhardyed, that they that bifore, no-thing were / became moost 4 worthy / and moost valiaunt / And on that othir side / oure enemyes, that were worthy and hardy, haue lost corage and strength. Thus may ye se, what the body of one noble man is worth / and for asmoche as ther may cowardise be loggid in the hert of a right mighti 8 kyng, aswele as in a symple persone, Therefore y wolde knowe, for the wele of you alle / hym that shuld haue my doughtir, for

wants a brave man, tho' poor, for his son-in-law.

a noble man / for y hadde leuer she had the pore hardy / than the riche cowardle / for the wele of me, my Reaume, and of you alle .I. 12 had leuer she had one of the iij. straungers, that is to sey, Le Surnome, Ector, or Athis / if they were of roialle blode / than the moost riche kyng that at this day is lvyng" / with thies wordes, alle they of his counselle were right wele content / for they sawe wele it 16 meued of grete honour / and of his corage / and moche they thought here vpon / for they thought it right straunge to knowe the corage of folkes / Natheles, one of them auised hym, & saide thus / "hou be it, that to many folkes it shold be right harde to knowe the 20 corage and noblesse of suche princes as shalle desire youre doughtir in mariage / yit it semeth to me right light to vndirstande / and y shalt sey you hou / Me thinkith that alle that be here, are agreed to take long trewes / for the causes that haue be shewed / this 24 trewes enduryng / if the Emperour do make crye an high and myghty Tournay / wherin noon shalle tournay, but if he be descendid from a roialle lyne / and that he make to declare the

One of the Council

suggests a 3-days' Tourney, by men of royal blood only, for Iolante.

[1 ff. 93, bk.]

1 mariage of his doughtir / and that who that shalt wyne the price 28 thre daies, shalt haue hir / whiche shalt be a grete payne to any one man, to haue the Renomee by iij. dayes ouir alle worthy / thus shalbe knowen the moost victorious & noble / And if so be that one man wyne not the price alle the iij. daies, then shalt the Emperour 32 be at his choise / to chese for hir whiche of them pleasith him best" / And whan they had herde this opinione, they loughed / hou be it, they thought it right wele, saide / But among alle othir, the Emperour was pleased wele therwith / and was vtirly concluded to 36 shewe it bifore the iij. estates of his Reaume / and what causes

The Emperor adopts this plan.

meued hym / As he concluded, so he did / and shewed it vnto them / with the iij. othir poyntes bi-fore rehersed / wherof they were alle right wele content / And as for the Tournay that shold be for his 40

doughtir / they thought there shold none be there / but if he were
of Roialle blode / and nere vnto the crowne / And than was it saide
amonges them / that it was pite that Surnome & his ij. felawes
4 were not of the roialle blode / and wisshed that Surnome had be so /
and had hir to his wif / Such conclusion as the Emperour had
taken bifore, was affermed amonges them. On the morowe, the
Emperour sent for the Ambassatoures to come bifore hym / and
8 there they purposed for the deliuerance of Orkais and thise othir
prisoners, and in like wise for the deliuerance of kynge ffrabrace;
and there were they longe tyme / and coude in no wise accorde /
and often tyme they withdrew them, & went to Orkais, that so
12 moche desired his deliuerance / that he rought not wele what he
did / And atte laste they brought this worde, if that the iij. estates
wold so assente, that if Orkais, and kynge ffrabrace, and alle the
prisoners of their partie might be delyuered / they wolde in like
16 wise deliuer alle the prisoners of themperours partie, if any there
were / & also gif vj. walled Townes & Castelles, suche as the
Emperour wold chese *withyn* the Turkes land, Reseruyng the
chief Citees / and pay at one payment Vc. Ml. florences / and to
20 haue trewes for iij. yere / and here they to go in-to Turkey, and
bringe answeere agein *withyn* iij. monethes / and than to deliuer
hostage / at their comynge agein, to pay this money at one payment
withyn the yere / and the Townes and Castells to be deliuered ¹in-
24 to the Emperours Handes *withyn* ij. monethes aftir / Hereto, at
the last, agreed the Emperour & the iij. estates / than departid
the Ambassatours / and sped them so, that *withyn* litil while
they came into their contre / where as, sone were alle the nobles
28 assembled / and there made they reporte, whiche was to them no
thyng harde nor straunge, sauff yn one poynte / whiche was, the
deliuerance of their Townes and places in-to their enemyes handes.
Neuertheles, kynge ffrabrace was there, and put him in suche
32 deuoir amonges them / and made them suche exortacions, that, in
conclusion, they were accorded / and whan it was thus concluded
& accorded / they that hadde the charge, therwith departed / &
withyn litil while came ther the Emperour was / and by his licence
36 spake *with* Orkais / their yong lorde, whiche asked them hou they
had spedde, and they tolde him alle / and howe grete peyne they
hadde for the places that shold be deliuerd / He was right ioifull
to here of his deliuerance / and prayed them, assone as they might /
40 to make their report / Than, required they to speke *with* them-

The Emperor
sends for the
Turkish Amb-
assadors,

who propose
to ransom
Orcays,
K. Ferabras,
and other
Turks, by
releasing
all their
Christian
prisoners,
giving up
6 Turkish
walled towns,
and paying
500,000
florins, and
making a 3-
years' truce.

[1 leaf 94]

K. Ferabras
gets the
Turks to
agree to these
hard terms.

The Emperor
holds a Feast
and Tourney
in honour of
the Truce.

Princes
Philip,
David, and
Humphrey,

don't show
their arms,
but have
their shields
all of one
colour.

They take an
oath that
they are
Gentlemen.

perour; and he graunted, and made them to be brought bfore him
and his counselle / & there made relacione, & offred to delyuere their
hostage at the pleasir of themperour / themperour was content to
holde his promys / and puruaide, for the honour of the Turke, to 4
holde a feste duryng iij. dayes / and made a grete tournay, and
made to assemble the most parte of the ladies & gentilwomen of
his Reaume / Orkais, knowyng certainly that his delyueraunce was
concluded, was ioifulle / He knewe also of the feste that the Emperour 8
had ordeyned for his sake / wherfore he was the more leef to abide
that day / trustyng, for the loue of faire Iolant, to do so that day /
to be somewhat the more in hir grace / hopyng to haue hir to his
wif; and made request to the Emperour to haue hors & harneys & 12
habilmentes for him / and xx^{ti} of his folkes / Aftir this tournay
was cried / euery man desired to be ther-at / but among alle
othir, Surnome and his ij. felawes put them in deuoir to be wele
apointed there; and so were they, as if they had ben knowen kynges 16
sones / as they were / and though it were vnknownen to other
folkes, yit echone of them knewe in them-self / what he was, whiche
[1 ff. 94, bk.] made their hertes the more highly coraged to be habiled ther-¹aftir /
Thoroughout the Reaume was ther none othir speche but of ioie of 20
the fest / for bfore, had they hadde but warres and trouble / Thus
passed the tyme, euery man in ioie & disport, til the ceason came
that the Tournay shold be. the night afore the tournay, euery man
made his musters / as in suche cas bilongith / Than were the 24
knightes and squiers departed / suche as shold tournay, by notable
auncient knightes & kynges of armes, & heraudes that ther-to were
commytted / and they made euery man sette their kageys at their
wyndowes / or at their gates; and at a wyndowe were hanged the 28
sheldes of the iij. felawes / but their propre armes were not knowen
therby, for in their sheldes had they nothyng but alle of one colour,
& writen thereon their names / euery man meruailed herof, and sup-
posed therby that they were no gentilmen. Thise wordes came 32
bfore the ladies, whiche were right sory to here suche speche / for
wele they Iugid, without grete noblesse of blood, there might not be
in them suche honour & vertu / and wele thei thought that they
did it by-cause they wolde not be knowen / Eche of them had in 36
colour the felde of the armes they to-bere. whan the tournay was
thus ordeyned / and thies iij. had noon armes vpon their sheldes /
they were constreyned to swere bfore many noble men, if they
were gentilmen or not; and toke an othe that they were gentilmen / 40

and than seide they that herde it, their werkes shewed it wele to be
so / and eche one of them trustid in him self, that the Emperour
and alle his Reaume shold knowe that he was a gentilman / Thus
4 was euery man wele content. On the morowe, bigan the tournay / At the
Tourney
the ladies and gentilwomen were at the wyndowes / and they that
shold tournay, came yn / every man on his side, as they were
apoynted ouir even. then was the corde cut; and the trumpetes
8 blewe up; and euery man put him yn peyne to do wele. At this
tournay, were so many dedes of armes, and so grete strokes, that it
were to longe to write them. It were to long, to reherce the grete
noblesse and prowesse that Le Surnome and his ij. ffelawes did; also
12 Orkais, the yonge turke, it were moche to reherce the grete actes
that he did, as he that was thorough thrilled with the nedle of loue /
Neuirtheles, that side where the thre ffelawes were on, made alle
othir to resort bifore them / ffor their ¹mighty strokes and high [1 leaf 95]
16 prowes, no man myght endure / and so wele thei did that day, that
ouir alle othir they were renommed; & next them, Orkais had the
name; but he might not compare *with* noon of the ij. That day
had Surnome the price / and whan he came to daunce *with* the
20 ladies & gentilwomen, he and his ij. ffelawes were so richely and so
wele apointed / that as the sonne in clerenesse passith the mone &
the sterres, so they ij. ouir alle othir bare the brute of that feste /
Aftir them, as y seyde bifore, Orkais in alle thing passid alle othir /
24 this ffeste endured ij. dayes, & euery day bare Surnome the price / get the
highest
renown.
Prince
Orcays
comes next.
Neuirtheles, he wold right fayne that eche of his ffelawes had hadde
the price of that day / Nowe is this last day accomplisht / and the
grettist soper ordeyned, that bifore had be sene / In the halle was
28 no crie, not speche, but of thies iiij. Aftir soper, the daunces began /
and the prices were youen / euery man spake of Surnome / at eueri
price were gyuen grete giftes and grete larges / a litil bifore the
Emperour shold be taken vp, a notable kyng of armes went vpone
32 a Cupbord on high / & made crie "pees" thre tymes; and than was The Truce
between the
Emperor and
the Turks is
proclained.
the trewes publishid bitwene the Emperour and the Turke for ij.
yere / Aftir this, made the kyng of armes an other crie, whiche was
this / that for asmoche as the Emperour had in his tyme grete for-
36 tunes / and that Reaume was next vnto the enemyes of the feith,
whiche hath caused him meruailous and huge warres / wherfore it
was nedefulle vnto him and to his Reaume to haue one that sholde
enherite aftir his daies / of grete nobles and vertu / seying that he
40 had but one only doughtir. Therefore it was necessarie vnto him

The Emperor
announces
the 3-days'
Tourney for
Iolante, in
May twelve-
month.
The First
man on all
3 days will
win her.

for to allie hym with som man of grete corage / wherfore he did alle
men to wite, that at May, come twelue month, the xv. day, shold
begynne a tourney / and shold endure iij. daies / and that he wold
giff his doughtir, with grete part of his Reaume, to him that best 4
shold do the .iij. dayes duryng / so that there shold noon tourney
ther, but if he were of roialle blode, nigh vnto kynges. Moreour,
doyng them to wite / that if by one man the iij. dayes were not
acheued and wonne / he shold not be bounde to gif his doughtir, 8
but if it pleasid him / and also ther might noon tourney there, but
if he were cristened. This crie publiisht / the kyng of armes
descended / the daunces bigan agein / and eche man thanked god
in his hert, of ¹the trewes and good pees that nowe is in the 12
Reaume. This faire yonge lady, heryng the crie of hir mariage, vexe
alle rede & shamefast / and also it forthought hir moche, that noon
might tourney without he were come of roialle blode / for she sup-
posed wele, that noon of hir iij. seruantes might be reseeyued at 16
that tourney. among alle othir, was noon more ioyfull herof than
Orkais was / for that he thought wele / that thies iij. that passid
him, might not be at the tourney / wherfore he trusted to haue the
price bifore alle othir / wherby he thought him self sure to haue 20
that fair lady to his wif, that he loued so moche / thus concluded
he in him self to rennaye his feith and lawe / and take him to
cristen feith / where it shewed wele, loue, of more strength than
lawe. On the tothir side, Le Surnome, þat herde this crie, was no 24
thing sory therof / for he thought wele to haue leiser y-nough to go
vnto his ffadir, and retourne agein by that tyme, where he wolde
not faile to be for alle the worlde / for there trusted he to wynne hir
that his hert moost desired / In like wise thought his .ij. felawes / 28
for eche of them trusted that day to haue goode aventure / think-
yng that noon of the tothir shold tourney. This thought, egal and
like, had eche of them / the night passed / and the disportes endid /
eueri man went til his reste / til on the morow, that many folkes 32
toke their leue / aftir their departyng / Orkais made alle his assur-
aunce with the Emperour, and fulfilled alle that he had promysed /
and than toke his leue of him / of the Emperesse / and of their
doughtir / to whom he seide, "I truste to se you agein at this 36
Tourney / and I promyse you, on my trouthe, if y may haue suche
fortune as y desire / ther can nothyng be so peynfull vnto me /
but y wold do for your sake / and if the Emperour your ffadir had
not do make the crie that he did / y wolde haue spoken with him 40

[¹ If. 95, bk.]

Orcais thinks
he'll be the
man.

Prince Phillp
will go home
to France,

and then re-
turn and win
Iolante.

Orcais takes
leave of
Iolante, and
hopes to win
her.

bifore my departyng, in suche wise as y trust he shold haue ben
content *with* my request / but I wote wele, sith he hath made this
ordynaunce / he may in no wise breke it" / This faire lady was
4 alle shamefast, and no thing answerd him / thus toke he leue of hir
and of alle the tothir ladies and gentilwomen / the Emperour con-
veyed him, and did him grete honour / than toke their leue / &
many of the Emperours folkes conveyed hym forth / but ferthist of
8 alle othir, the iij. ffelawes conveyed hym / for they were moche of
an age / and alle of roialle blode / and moost comonly men seke
1 their semblable / when tyme came they sholde departe, Orkais
saide vnto them / "my faire frendes, fareweH / and y purpose to be
12 here agein at this ffeeste, at the whiche y thynke my self right wele
vryd, that noon of you may that day tournay / Neuirtheles, if any
fortune or wele than bifalle me, y shalbe glad of youre company
bifore alle othir" / eche of them thankid him ; hou be it, there was
16 noon of them but thought to endure grete payne / or that he came
to that he wende / thus they departed from him, and retourned to
the Emperour / and so passed forth tyme, til on a day Le Surnome,
Ector, & Athis, were gon to the felde to disport them ; and Surnome
20 talkid to them of many thinges ; and amonges othir, he seide thus /
"my frendes, whan I departed out of my contre, and fro my pore
fadirs hous / my principall cause was for the renome of the warres
of this Reaume / and specially to the wele of my soule, whiche
24 euery good man ought to desire / nowe is it, thankid be god, that
this Reaume is recouerd, and grete & a long trews taken ; wherefore
y purpose nowe no lenger to abide in this Reaume, but to go home
to my ffrendes / whiche, y doute not, haue grete desire to knowe hou
28 it is *with* me ; ffor y am sure they wote not whethir y be ded or on
lyue. and for this cause most y nedes leue your companyes, whiche
sore forthinketh me / but that y may noon othir do." Than seide
Athis, "by my trouthe, my maister and felawe, youre departyng
32 sorowith me, and shalt sorowe me more than any erthly thing ; but,
daies of my lif, where so euer I be, I shalbe alle youre / and yit
may happe to come the houre that y shalt mowe deserue that ye
haue don for me, whiche y neither haue, nor can deserue yit / and sory
36 y am that youre contre and myn be no nerre to-gedir. Neuirtheles,
y shalt put me in deuoir to se you fulle ofte, so that y knewe where
ye dwellid, or of what folkes ye were come : and nowe y haue herd
youre entent, I shalt shewe you myn / ffor, like as seide to-fore, and
40 for the same entent, I put me in the Arme of Scotland, for the

Orkays
departs,
and the 3
Princes
escort him
far.

[1 leaf 96]

Prince Phillip
tells David
and Hum-
phrey

that he
means to go
home.

Prince David

socour of this Reaume, with othir / and now y se it in pees, my
 purpose is to drawe me in-to the Cuntre fro whens I came / ffor
 now, thanked be god, the Emperour hath litil nede of my seruice.”
 “Nowe forsothe,” seid Ector to Surnome, “if your departyng
 aught to sorowe any body, it aught sorowe me / for by you haue y
 ben ¹saued / and ye haue accepted me in-to your company, wherof
 y thought me right happy / and so wold thinke, if in alle my lif I
 might do thing that might be your pleasir / and as long as ye had
 abiden here, I thought not to departe. But sith your pleasir is
 now to departe, I wolt no lenger abide here / but go agein in-to
 the Reaume of Englund, of whens y am; and there shalbe neur day
 of my lyf, but my body & goodes shalbe alle youre. [Illumination.]
IN this wise, talke the thre felawes, and diuised the maner of
 their departyng / and howe they might haue leue / and arguyd
 sore amonges them / whethir was bettir to take leue to-gedre /
 or ellis eche one by hym self / But at the last, they concluded alle iij.
 to-gedre to take leue at their maister at ones / whan they might se
 him best at leiser. Thus withyn a day or ij. aftir, they waited on
 their maister at a soper / and aftir he had soped, they thre to-gedre
 besought him that they might speke with hym / and he, as abashed,
 toke them a-part / thinkyng ther was som matier of displeasir / for
 neur bfore had they desired to speke with him in suche wise.
 Le Surnome spake for them alle, seyng in this wise / “My lorde!
 it is longe that we haue ben in your seruice, wherin we haue had
 suche wele, and so grete honour, that we can neur suffice to deserue
 it / Natheles, in the mooste humble wise that we can, we thanke
 you,” and therwith they kneled downe / and he made hem to rise
 vp agein / and Surnome tolde forth his tale, seyng, “my lorde, ye se
 nowe the estat of this Reaume in suche cace / thankid be our lord,
 that there is no werre, to the grete honour of the Emperour / and
 his Recommendacon is spredde through the world / ye knowe wele
 the long ²trewes that he hath taken / wherby he hath litil nede of
 folkes / And we be pore gentilmen straungers, whiche gladly wille
 drawe to oure pore frendes / for euery man aught to haue naturalle
 loue to fadir & modir / and thies thinges considered, we be affermed
 & constreyned, by reasone & honour, to drawe vs home, and departe
 out of this cuntre / wherfore, humbly we beseche you, to licence vs
 to departe with the fauour of your good lordshippe / whiche we
 moost desire, next the Emperour” / It is not to be douted that this
 desire was as greuous at fierauntes hert / as he had felt him sore

says he shall
return to
Scotland:

and Prince
Humphrey
says he shall

[¹ If. 96, bk.]

go to Eng-
land.

They resolve
to take leave
of Ferant all
together;

and Prince
Philip

[² leaf 97]

tells Ferant,

and asks his
leave for
them to go.

- hurt with a spere / and not without cause / alle his honour was by
them iij., ffor he knewe wele at this day he was the moost renoméd.
knyght of the world / and forthwith felle the water in his yeen /
4 and seide / "my dere frendes, wille ye leue me nowe / haue y done Ferant weeps,
tries to per-
suade the
three Princes
to stay,
any thing that shold myscontent you with me / no, to my knowlage /
and as for the warres of this Reaume, they ar not yet ended / trouthe
it is that there is a trews / but that shalt not long endure / and
8 whan the warres shal begynne agein / y wold not haue lost your
company, for no good. and also whan the werres begynne / we shalle
entre in-to their Reaume, where men shalle se many grete dedes of
armes / and alas! so moche as y haue loued you / and so glad as
12 y haue ben to encrece your honoures / hou be ye now content to
departe fro me?" Le Surnome answerd, "my lord, we may haue
leiser y-nough to be with oure frendes / and come agein or the
warres begynne" / whan fferaunt herd his wordes & conclusion, he
16 departed fro them, and seide, "that on the morowe he wolde speke and promises
his answer
next day.
more with them." It is no question if he were that night pensif
and fult of sorow. his folkes that were aboute him, sawe wele by
him, that he hadde herd som thing that pleased him not / fferaunt
20 toke his hors, and rode to the Emperour / and tolde him fulle sorrow-
fully thentent of his seruantes / wherof the Emperour toke right
grete sorowe & displeasir / and askid if any remedy were to with-
olde them / "trewly," said fferaunt, "nay" / "Than," seide the
24 Emperour, "I shalt make them to be required be my wif, my
doughter, and alle my ladies" / "fforsothe," seide fferaunt, "alle that
botith not. But y auisse me of one thing / It is so, that for the
grete honour ye haue don them / they be gretly bounden vnto you;
28 wherfor ye may wille them, seyng the mariage of your doughter
shalbe yn May come tweluemoneth, that eche of them promyse
you to do your pleasir to be here at that tyme; for they be your
seruantes / and euery seruaunt aught to honour his maister / and
32 so may ye require them that they do at that tyme / and whan they
come agein, peraenture ye may so entrete them that they wille
abide stille with you" / To this counselle agreed the Emperour / and
yn this purpose departed fferaunt fro him / and went to his loggyng /
36 and made that night as goode chere as he might / alt-though his
hert were right sorrowfull / and on the morow, aftir he had dyned,
came his thre seruantes to him agein, to know his pleasir vpon the
request they had made him the day bfore / fferaunt answerd them
40 in this wise / "my frendes, notwithstanding / that of your grete

[1 ff. 97, bk.]
He advises
the Emperor
to urge the
Princes to
return for
the Iolante
Tourney next
May.

162 *The Emperor urges the three Princes to return for his May Tourney.*

goode wille and curtesy, ye haue done me such honour as to repute
 you my seruantes / Natheles ye be not so, for y neuir held my self
 worthy, nor of suche honour, to haue the seruice of so noble men /
 hou be it, your company hath ben to me moost ioie / and fulle fayne 4
 wold y haue done you more honour / if it wold haue pleased you to
 take it. Neuirtheles, ye be nowe *with* the Emperour; and he had
 you in suche chierie, that he hath put you vnto his doughter /
 whiche is the thing in the worlde that he loueth moost / and hath 8
 grete cause so to do; for she is one *pat* can deserue loue, and the
 thanke of euery creature / and of thies two most ye take leue / and
 whan ye haue leue of them, ye and y shalle agree weH y-nough" /
 they answerd that they "purposed so to do / and that on the morowe, 12
 with the pleasir of god, they wold go to him; and as they had
 grete cause to thanke his grace of his grete honour and curtesie that
 he had shewed them / whiche was impossible for them euir to
 deserue" / so on the morowe they for-gate not, whan tyme was, to 16
 come to do their seruice to their maistresse as they were accustomed,
 whiche had herde of this matier / wherfore she was in grete trouble
 and annoye / and when she sawe them bfore hir at the table, she
 coude no[t] withholde the teres from hir yeen / In this dyner tyme, 20
 ete she nothing that did hir good / for wondrely wele loued she
 them. whan the Emperour had dynded, they iij. came to-gedre be-
 fore him / and, as humbly as thei coude, thankid him of the grete
 wele and honour that, of his ¹grace, he had done them / and aftir 24
 shewed him, hou "by the grace of god, and of high and good
 prowesse, and of his suggetes, he had his hole Reaume peasibly;
 and for that cause they alle were concluded, by his licence, nowe to
 drawe agein to their cuntrees; for it was longe sith they sawe their 28
 frendes, or herd of them / whiche euery man of right aught to desire /
 wherfore they besought the Emperour that it might please him to
 gif them leue." The Emperour made them many grete desires to
 abide / and grete and large offres / but by no meane coude he 32
 remeue them from their purpose; and he sawe that / and in con-
 clusion, he desired them to come agein to the tourney / that shold
 be made for the mariage of his doughter / and seide vnto them / "al-
 though that none of you iij. may tourney there, I shall make othir 36
 tournays and ffestes, where your worthynes shalbe showed *with*
 many othir noble men / and also ye know wele it is the custome,
 euery man to be redy *with* his seruice to his maister and maistresse
 at any suche ffest, and ye be reteyned *with* hir / wherfore ye aught 40

Ferant refers
 the 3 Princes
 to the Em-
 peror.

Iolante weeps
 at their in-
 tended going.

[¹ leaf 98]

The Emperour
 begs them to
 stay;

and if not,
 to return for
 the Tourney
 for Iolante.

- in no wise than to faile hir" / Alle thre of one wille made hym
 promyse & othe, that if they were in helth and at their large, they
 wold not faile to be there agein at that day. On this condicioun the
 4 Emperour licenced them to departe. Thus toke they leve of him /
 and went to the Emperesse to take their leve; wherof she was right
 sory / & ther toke they their leve / and went to their maistres / and
 tolde hir hou they had taken leve bothe of the Emperour and of
 8 themperesse / and eueriche of them offred him-self to aventure body,
 liff, and goodes in hir seruice, for hir pleasir and honour / This
 yong lady answerd them *with fulle sorowfulle hert* / "I pray god,
 my frendes, conduyte you, & sende you asmoche ioye and honour as
 12 eche of you is worthy to haue; and then shalle ye be largely sped /
 and that shalle alway be my prier" / and thus departed they out of
 the chambre / [alle folkes] when they herd here-of, wepte full sore,
 and sorowed / for wondrely wele were thies iij. felawes belouid *with*
 16 euery creature; neuirtheles it might noon othirwise be / Thies iij.
 felawes went to their loggynges til on the morowe / Themperour sent
 eche of them iij. M.^t scutes and ij. coursers / and the faire lady, his
 daughter, sent eche of them a purs & a dyamant. In the mornyng
 20 toke they leve of alle their company / and eche of them toke leve
 of othir / whiche departyng was ¹right sorowfull, for eche of them
 loued othir as bretheren. Thus leue y them, euery man takyng his
 way / and retourne agein to the Emperour. [*Illumin.: Emperor's reception.*]
 24 **Y**E haue herd bifore, hou the Emperour was concluded to go
 to Rome & to othir places / where he shold resceyue the
 Crownes of the Empire; and as he had concluded, so he
 did, and departed toward them assone as he might, where he was
 28 resceyued of alle the lordes of the Emyre / ffor his renome was so
 spread ouir alle the worlde, that euery man desired to se him, and
 knowe who he was / they had him in grettir fauour than they had
 bifore. and the lordes askid him of the demeanyng of his warres /
 32 and he tolde them the trouthe, & forgate not to reherce the noblesse
 of Le Surnome and his ij. felawes / Aftir his coronacion, he toke his
 way to millayne, and was crowned ther agein / & from thens departed
 and went to Rome, and helde there a grete court, and there sojourned
 36 a long while, where he was resceyued of the Pope and alle the Car-
 dynalls *with grete ioye* / and whan he had contynued there as long as
 it pleased him, he retourned agein in-to his contre / where he made
 grete purueaunce against the tournay / whiche began fast to approche.
 40 & he made thorough alle the Towne, the loggynges to be apointed, and

The 3 Princes
 agree to come
 back in a
 year.

Princess Io-
 lante wishes
 them well.

[1 ff. 98, bk.]
 Each of them
 starts for his
 home.

The Emperor

Is crown'd at
 Milan,

and is wel-
 comed at
 Rome by the
 Pope.

He goes
 home, and
 prepares for
 the Tourney.

dressid in the best wise / and euery man applied him so wele / that
 alle thing was sure & redy. Euery prince & lord that was of roialle
 blode, that had herd the crye of this Tournay, and knewe also the
 grete renoun of this faire lady for whom the tournay shold be / 4
 aredyed them the moost richely that they coude, to be ther at that
 day. But our alle othir, Orkais, the ¹yonge Turke, had desire and
 wille to shewe him self at this ffeeste. he was so sore taken *with* the
 loue of this faire lady / that he was yn fulle wille to bileue in the 8
 lawe of Ihesu crist / the gretist drede he had, was, hou he might
 bringe this aboute by the agrement of alle his suggettes / whan he
 was comen in-to this contre, he was resceyued as to his estate
 belonged / and euery man had grete trust in his persone / for that 12
 they sawe him alle othirwise in his maner and condiciouns than his
 ffadir had ben bi-fore. Alle thestates of his Reaume came vuto him /
 for eche of them desired gladly to se him / he was right large &
 courtaise / and moche conuersaunt with the noble men of his 16
 Reaume / and many tymes they asked him of the warres, and of
 the maner of the cristen folkes, in whos handes he had long tyme
 bene. Orkais tolde hem the trouthe / and rathir seid more of
 honour, than lesse, to thentent to drawe the hertes of his people the 20
 more to that bileue / and seide verrily, "that he bileued, that if the
 god that the cristen folkes worshipped, had not ben their helpe / it
 had ben impossible for them euir to haue recovered." Than tolde he
 them in what caas the Cezilians were / and of their pore corage / 24
 and howe that, by one only man, they were sodeinlye transmuted in
 to the moost valiaunt nacion that at this houre was cristen / and
 hou aftir that, ij. othir were comen, by whom, *with* the helpe of the
 first, was the destruccioen of his ffader, & dethe of alle them of his 28
 lawe, whiche thought him a thing our meruailous / and so moche
 preised he the cristen feith, that his folkes thought wele he had some
 pleasir therin / and some of them seide that "the cristen god was
 more worthi than their god that they bileued on" / and so moche did 32
 the yonge Turke by his wordes, *with* contynuaunce of tyme, that he
 sawe & knewe verrily that, suche part as he toke, the most part of
 his reaume wold take / wherof he was as ioifull as he might be /
 and thervpone ordeyned his habilementes, the moost riche pat had 36
 be seen in that reaume / & thought to take *with* him the grettist
 parte of princes & Barons of his reaume, to thentent that they shold
 be cristened *with* him / and he trusted verrily by this dede to con-
 quere this faire lady / whiche in hir tyme was very mirroure of alle 40

[¹ leaf 99]

Sultan Orkais
so loves Io-
lante,

that he
praises the
Christians

and Prince
Philip
highly,

and hopes
the Turks
will turn
Christians
with him,

and thus win
him Iolante.

othir fair ladies / Many men askid him whider he wold-go, and he
 seide, his entent was to go the ffeest of themperour, with whom he
 had ben prisoner, & was in his Daunger by the places that he helde
 4 in his contre. wherfore he wolde do him honour and pleasir, to
 thentent he might haue his places the sonner agein / ^[1 lf. 99, bk.] and to take a
 Lenger trewes with him / “for I propose nomore to Warre with him.
 They that herde him, were right ioifulle of thies tidynges. they that
 8 had apointed to go with him / habiled them-self as richely as they
 coude, and so wele, that the yong Turke thought him-self there
 sholde come neither kynge ne prince at that day bettir appointed
 than he and alle his people shold be / he puruaide so that alle thing
 12 was redy longe bifore the day of his departyng; and in his mynde
 he dred noman; sith that he knewe wele the iij. seruauntes of
 fferaunt might not turnay, he thought him verily assured that the
 faire Iolant shold be his wiff. Thus passed forth the tyme alle in
 16 ioie, trustyng in goode auenture. And thus shalle we leue a while
 of hym, and speke of the iij. ffelawes that were departed eche fro
 othir / and euery man hielde his way with grete sorowe and payne,
 contynuelly remembryng the faire Iolant / whiche eche of them
 20 trusted to haue to his wif, Remembryng also the bounte of the
 Emperour and of the Emperesse / and aftir, they thought on their
 curtaise maister, and of the fortunes they had there / and aftir,
 remembred hou they shold come agein in-to that Reaume, and hou
 24 the Emperour shold meruaile to se them come agein, like kynges
 sones / and in esspeciall, fferaunt, whiche hadde reteyned them so
 long in service / and so shold their ij. ffelawes that most be there
 that day, whan they shalle saye how long they haue ben ffelawes
 28 vnto a kynges sone / and euerich of them had his thought bie his
 two ffelawes. *[Illumination: a King, or Noble, receiuing and embracing a young Man.]*

NOwe shall y telle you of eche of them, hou they arryued in
 their marches. and first shalt y speke of Surnome, for he
 32 was the first, that departed & lefte his fadir for the service of
 god, and also was the first that came agein in-to his countre. whan
 Surnome was passed out of the Reaume of Sizile, he called a yonge
 gentilman vnto him, that was ²with hym / and saide vnto hym / ^[2 leaf 100]
 36 “my frende, I shaft peraenture be ashamed if ye sawe the pore
 place of whens y am comen / wherfore ye shalle departe home agein
 in-to your contre; and y gif you my horses, sauf only that y ride
 on, & my harneys, and ij. C. scutes, that yit are bilefte me; & I
 40 pray you that ye abide in the Reaume of Sizile til tyme of the

Orkals's com-
 panions dress
 grandly for
 their visit to
 Sicily.

The 3 Princes
 journey
 homeward,
 each wishing
 for Iolante.

Prince Phi-
 lip

sends back
 his attendant
 with horses
 and money.

tourney / at whiche tyme y trust to be ther, *with* the mercy of god.
 neuirtheles, if ye may haue any bettir maister, or othir good fortune
 in the meane tyme, y pray you leue it not for me" / This yong
 gentilman, that herd his maister thus speke, thought wele it came 4
 him of noble corage / and sory was to departe out of his company /
 and seide vnto him / "*sir*, for goddes sake be not a-shamed of me /
 for whoos sone that euir ye be, y had leuer be in *your* company
 than in the company of the grettist man of the world." Surnome 8
 thanked him, and saide / "I sha^{ll} discouer me now to you / I am
 a gentilman of roialle lyne; and that y trust shall be knowen or the
 but is refuse^d. Tournay be ended / But y most go now in-to suche places where as
 I wilt no company" / his seruau^t than departed / and thanked 12
 him of his grete geftes, and retourned agein in-to Sizile / Nowe is
 Le Surnome alle alone, and kepith forth his way in-to ffraunce / and
 Prince Philip
 hears of
 his father's
 death,
 within fulle litil while knewe certainly that his ffadir was ded /
 wherof he was fulle sorrowfulle. also he was ascerteyned that pe 16
 quene his moder was alyue, and his vnkle, the Duc of Burgoigne
 was Regent of ffraunce; with whom he thought to speke vnknownen /
 and so rode he forth to Parys, *with* a visour bfore his face, and
 acquainted him *with* a seruau^t of his vnkells / and besought him 20
 to fynde the meane that he might speke *with* him vnsayne / This
 seruau^t came vnto the Regent, and seide vnto him / "my Lord,
 here is a yong man in this towne that with not shewe his visage,
 whiche hath desired me that he might speke *with* you secretly" / 24
 The Regent, vpon thies wordes, thought moche what it might be,
 and asked, of what fassion he was / "fforsothe," seid [the] seruau^t /
 "the moost goodly persone that euir y sawe" / "I shall telle the
 what thou shalt do," said the Regent, "Soone in the evenyng, brynge 28
 hym in-to myn Inner chambre, & there bere him company til y
 may be at leyser to speke with him" / Like as he commaundid, was
 it done. and at the houre apointed, this yong man was brought yn /
 [1 ff. 100, bk.] and the ¹chambre avoided / and whan the Regent knewe therof / he 32
 made his seruau^t to take a light / and nomoo went in *with* him /
 And assone as Le Surnome sawe him, he did him reuerence, kepyng
 alway stille the visour bfore his face / and whan he came nere
 him / he tolde him the cause of his comyng was to put him in 36
 knowlagge that "the kynges sone of fraunce, that departed out of
 the londe suche a tyme, was not ded, but in good helth / and
 that he trusted for trouthe he shold withyn short tyme here
 tidynges of him / and to disclose the trouthe vnto him, he came 40

and, un-
 known at
 first, has an
 interview
 with his Un-
 cle, the Duke
 of Burgundy.

- him-self from the place that he was yn." whan the Regent herde
thies tidynge, he shewde not the high chere of a prince, but streyned
le Surnome in his Armes, and saide / "A, my frende! ye haue
4 brought me grete ioie! sith the sorowfull losse, herd y neur so
ioifulle tidynge, whiche is more than iiij. yere passed" / and with
thies wordes, the teeres ranne from his yen / bothe for ioie and pite.
and saide, "my frende, if it please you, I pray you telle me the
8 trouthe, hou it is with him?" Le Surnome hadde pite of his vnkell,
and coude no lenger kepe his visage couerd, but toke his visour
away / and whan the Regent had auised him, and remembered the
age of his Nevewe, and the fetures of his face / and than knewe
12 verrily that it was he / And for the ioie therof, so sodeinly he vn-
closed his hert, that he was almoost in a swoone / so that he might
not speke / and whan his hert came to him agein / he kneled downe
bifore him, and toke him in his armes and kissed him, so that he
16 wette all the visage of his nevewe with teeres that felle fro his yen,
and sith saide vnto hym, "allas, my lorde, and alle my ioie! where
haue ye be so longe? / allas, myn owne lord! your sorowfull fadir
had neur ioie sith your departyng / grete synne haue ye for his
20 dethe / The sorowes of this Reaume that hath ben for you, ben our
moche to reherce / But now shalle alle tho sorowes be chaunged into
Ioy. Allas! how shalt my lady your modir knowe of this ioifull
reconere? / I trowe, whan she shalle first knowe it / the chaunge
24 shalbe so sodeyn that hir hert shalt breke for ioy / My lord, y
wote not what y shalt say / or how y shalt auise you of your demean-
yng / Wille ye that y calle yn the company that is yonder in my
chambre, whiche, whan they se you, shalle haue more ioy / than alle
28 the re'menaunt of your Reaume haue had sith your departyng." [1 leaf 101]
"ffaire vnkle," saide Le Surnome, "I shalle telle you alle my demean-
yng sith my departir hens / and whan ye haue herd my tale / ye
shalle avise me as ye thinke best / and by your counselle wiþ I do" /
32 After thies wordes, began he to telle of his departyng / and of his
comyng in-to the Reaume of Sizile, and lefte no thing vntolde, sauf
only that he had done with his owne handes / and saide / "myn
vnkle, my departyng oute of this Reaume was for this cause / my
36 lord my ffadir, (whoos soule god pardone!) wold do noon helpe nor
socours to the Reaume of Sizile, whiche was in way to be lost,
whiche caused me to departe so allone" / and tolde his vnkle so forth,
by & by, forgate not specially the ij. seruantes that were with his
40 maister, to reherce the worthynesse of them / and howe the warres

Prince Philip
takes off his
visor.

His Uncle,
the Duke of
Burgundy,
kisses him
and weeps for
joy.

He tells his
Uncle all his
adventures,

and about
Princess Io-
lante,

and his love
for her.

Prince Philip
asks his Uncle
to go to the
Tourney,
as if for Io-
lante,

and to wear
armour like
his.

The Duke
consents.

were ended a grete parte by their prowesse / and howe the trewes
holdith yit for ij. yere / and half / and howe the kynge of Sizile, for
his noblesse, was chosen to be Emperour / and how he hath the
fairest lady of the world to his doughtir / and the best / and of the 4
age of xvij. or xx^{ti} yeres / “and the Emperours desire is, aboue alle
thinges, that she be accompayned with a noble man / wherfore, to be
the more certayne, he hath made crie a tournay, whiche shalbe kepte
in may next comyng / and but yif one man may venquyssh the 8
Tournay iij. dayes / the Emperour shalbe at his liberte to chose the
best of them, and ther may noon tournay, but if he be borne of
roialle lyne, knowen & named / and forasmoche as y haue long tyme
serued there vnknown, I haue the more desire to be ther at that 12
day / ffor y sha^{ll} put me in as grete deuoir and payne as y may
endure with lif / but I come to that wele / ffor it is she that hath
my hert assured in hir seruice / and long hath ben / for she is
incomparable ; Wherfore I haue affermed my self to be there / And 16
nowe, sith y vndirstond the dethe of my lord my fadir, ye shalle here
myn auise. The terme is short, and but litille vnto that day /
wherfore me thinkith best to be vnknown / ye are your self yit of
resonable age / and haue neither wif nor childe / and men holde 20
you heyre of this Reaume / wherfore I wolde, if it pleased you, to do
so moche for me as to be at this Tournay / and to make alle folkes of
this Reaume to beleue / that ye entende to haue this faire lady to
your wif / if your fortune be suche / and, y pray you, were suche 24
denises as y sha^{ll} desire you ; ¹and in the meane while, y sha^{ll} kepe
me in suche places as ye thinke best y may be vnknown ; and ye
shalle go in suche astate as bilongeth vnto a kyng ; and my harneys
and abyementes for my body shalbe trussid forth as yours / And 28
the dayes of the tournay / y shal arme me in your pavilione / and
ye shalle put a visour ouir your face, and serue me at the tournay.
and at the ende therof, If I do any thing wele, alle be tymes y sha^{ll}
make me to be knowen, whiche shalbe the grettir ioie to suche as 32
wold y wele did / and y trust there be none othir there that knowe
me, but wold be glad to wite me do wele” / The duc of Burgoigne,
heryng alle his tale, herkened him fulle-gladly, remembryng wele hou
he had herde that by iij. yong men, straungers, the Reaume of Sizile 36
was gretly holpen / wherfore he thought wele, by the tale of his
Nevewe, that he shold be one, wherof he was right ioiful / and the
bettir willed to go. hou be it, he thought alle folkes wold iuge his
age was nothing accordyng to haue that fair lady / wherfore he 40

praide his Nevewe to take thaduisse of vj. or vij. moo of his preuy
 counselle, whiche shold be nedefulle, aswele for the purveaunce of
 their going forth, as for any othir cause. wherto Le Surnome was
 4 agreable / and at night wold haue departed / but his vnkle wold
 in no wise lete him / but made the chambre to be avoided; & *pat*
 nyght lay ther to-gedir / and the Regent slepte not moche, he was
 so ioyfulle / he thought it shold be but a dreame / it was so Newe
 8 vnto him, that he coude not wele bileue that he sawe & herd / He
 rose be tymes in the mornynge / and so did the kyng / and than
 was called yn to the chambre alle suche as the Regent wolde name.
 and there was discoverd vnto them alle the matier vpone grete othes
 12 & charge. there may noman thinke of more ioy than was at that
 tyme in that chambre. This ioy was bydewed with teeres of pite /
 And after, whan they vndirstode the pleasir of their yong kyng,
 they were alle concluded to his avise & pleasir, and made the duc of
 16 Burgoigne to be published thorough the Reaume, that his entent was
 to go to this tournay / in asmoche he had neither wif ne childe,
 nor coude here no tidynge of the kynges sone / wherby the Reaume
 might falle in-to othir lynage, wherof many inconueniences might
 20 growe / wherfore he purposed, in eschuyng of suche Inconuenience,
 to dispose him to be maryed. ¹Many men saide that he did wele; [*leaf 102*]
 and som saide "nay / for he might haue ben married to lesse charge
 of his Reaume & lesse iubardie of himself: what nedeth him, of his
 24 age, to put him in a tournay? The kyng of Ingland had ij. faire
 ladies to his doughters; and withouten any iubardy he might chose
 whiche of them that pleased him" / suche argumentes were amonges
 the people / Natheles, the Duc of Burgoigne toke litelle hede to suche
 28 wordes / but put him in deuoir and diligence, that alle thinge was
 redy longe bfore the day / The yong kyng made to ordeyne
 riches y-nough / so that he might kepe estate incomparable there
 to any othir / for he trusted his fortune shold be to haue that /
 32 that alle other shold faile of / ffor his hert was highly and surely
 set, &c. Now shalle we leue of him a while / and speke of Ector,
 how he did aftir his departyng from his ij. ffelawes. [*Illumination.*]
 36 **H**E rode fulle pensif and soroufulle yn his hert, for their depart-
 yng / Also fel in remembraunce of his owne departyng out
 of his cuntre, & how many noble mennes sones had be lost
 for his cause / wherfore he thought / the ffadirs wold dedly hate
 hym, whiche brought him in grete drede and annoye / and con-
 40 cluded in him-self that he wold not be knowen til he vndirstode

Prince Phillip
and his Uncle
sleep to-
gether.

The Duke of
Burgundy
proclaims
that he will
go to the
Tourney, for
a wife.

Humphrey,
Prince of
England,

resolves to
keep un-
known till

he can judge
of his wel-
come home.

He consults
a Sicilian
friend,

[1 If. 102, bk.]

who says
'Wait till
you get to
England, to
hear tidings.'

They reach
England,

and are told
of the King's
mortal ill-
ness.

The Realm is
in trouble,

how they toke his departyng / and how they wold be content with
his comynge / So fortun'd, that he had a gentilman of Sizile in his
company / whiche was right wise, as he had founde in his right
goode counselle in diuerse thinges bifore / wherfore he thought to 4
discouere vnto him alle his matiers / and tolde him what he was,
and how he was departed oute of his Reaume, & xiiij. ¹of the
grettist Lordes sones of the Reaume with him / "wherfore," saide
Ector, "y am gretly in drede of the hate of their ffadirs / But what 8
so euir befall me, I most nedes be knowen there." The gentilman
of Sizile was gretly abasshed whan he vndirstode his maister / he
was also right glad to knowe his maister of so noble birth / sayng
vnto him / "my lord, y thanke god that he hath youen me grace 12
to be nowe in your seruice, & .I. shalt say you what y thinke best /
that ye conclude you in no thinge til ye be entred in to the Reaume
of Inglonde. By than shal ye here suche tidynges, as ye shalle more
surely take youre auise vpone / and, in the meane while, pluk vp 16
your herte, and take no thought; ffor y trust, at your comyng, the
kyng and alle the Reaume shalle be so reioysed / that they shalle sette
litol by the losse of the Remenaunt that were in youre company /
for perauenture the kyng and the lordes shalle Iuge that they were 20
the cause and meovers of your going" / "The thing," saide Ector,
"that y haue moost yn drede, ys, lest that the kynge haue taken
suche displeasir with my departyng / that he wolt not se me nowe /
whan y come / nor no thinge departe with me, to appoint my self 24
like his honour, to be at yondir Tournay / whiche is the place of
the worlde that y desire moost to be at" / "fforsothe," saide the
gentilman, "ye haue right" / And with suche talkynge passed they
forth the wey, til they came in-to the Reaume of Ingland; and the 28
first Towne they came to / they mette with a grete procession /
euery man goyng barfoot in their prayers, with grete deuocione, as
it semed / Ector asked the cause of this procession / and they saide
for the kynge, that was so sore seke, that noman coude promyse 32
him liff / wherfore there was made generall procession thoroughout
the Reaume / for of his dethe, the Reaume shold haue to grete a
losse / seyng he had noon yssue a lyue but ij. doughters / wherby
the Reaume shold stande in grete trouble / and likly to falle in the 36
handes of straungers / whiche was grete pite / ffor the kynge had a
sone, as goodly a prince toward, as any was o where / and right
gretly biloued / & right wele coude deserue it, as any man a lyue of
his youthe, and a iiij. yere passed he departed from hens / and 40

- many a Grete Princes sone of this Reaume *with* him / and neur sith
 was ¹herd no tidinges of them / wherfore the Reaume is in greto
 trouble / and neur sith had ioie / and many suche processions haue
 4 ben made sith that tyme for him / and the kyng himself had neur
 good day sith" / Ector askid his hoste, of what age he supposed the
 kynges sone was. "Be my faith, sir," saide he, "I suppose of
 youre age, if he be a lyue; me thinkith y coude not bettir liken
 8 hym, bothe in length and ressemblaunce" / "how trowe ye," saide
 Ector, "wold not the kyng be glad, and the Reaume, of his comyng
 agein, if he were a lyue?" / "yis, y dare sey," saide his hoste. "The
 hole Reaume wold make a fyne of half they are worth, to haue him
 12 agein." Thies wordes pleased Ector moche, and caused him to ride
 the remenaunt of his iournay more ioyfully than he did afore / and
 spedde him so, that *withyn* litil while he came to london / & loggid
 hym yn an Inne / his visour alway bifore his face / and enquired
 16 tidynges of the kyng: it was saide he was so seke that noman
 coude promyse him liff / than sent he his man in-to the Towne to
 enquire ferther / and made him to go vnto one of the lordes, that
 had lost one of his sones *with* hym, & telle hym that "he was of the
 20 Reaume of Sizile / and that he had late spoken *with* folkes that
 had seen the kyng of Inglandes sone a lyue / and hole, but he is
 yit prisoner" / This gentilman went forth, and did his message to
 the Erle of Warrewik / and the Erle askid hym / "my ffrende, say
 24 ye trouthe? may any man speke *with* him that hath tolde you
 this?" / "fforsothe," saide the gentilman, "y trowe y wote where he
 is / and I am sure he wolt iubarde his hede of that y haue saide" /
 "If this be trewe," saide therle, "no fors of alle the remenaunt of
 28 his company / for they were cause of his goyng" / than toke he
 him by the hande, and brought him in-to a chambre nye to the
 kyng / & made him tary there; and went him self in-to the kynges
 chambre, and tolde the kyng hou he had founde a gentilman of
 32 Sizile; and tolde him what tidinges he had brought. The kyngo
 made calle him yn / and herde his tale to an ende / and than he
 helde vp his handes to god, sayng / "A, my blissed creatour! y
 haue alway requyred thy grace, that y might se him er y dide / and
 36 right so, y biseche the that y may." whan the gentilman sawe the
 kyng so desirous for to se him / he toke the Erle a-part, and saide
 vnto him / "sir, y shal tel you tidynges that yit shalle please you
 bettir / ²sir, he is in good Helthe, for y sawe him but late, and
 40 spake *with* him, and I am his man / and he sent me hider to

as its Prince
has not been
heard of for
4 years.
[1 leaf 108]

England
would give
half its wealth
to have its
Prince again.

Prince Hum-
phrey sends
news of him-
self to the
Earl of War-
wick,

who tells it
to the sick
King.

He prays that
he may see
his Son again
before he
dies.

[2 ff. 103, bk.]

The King
bids Lord
Warwick
fetch Prince
Humphrey
to him.

Lord War-
wick goes to
Humphrey,

and blesses
the hour of
his return.

[¹ leaf 104]

knowe what men saide of him / and he hath grete desire to come
hider agein / but he knoweth not wethir his ffelawes be dede or
a lyue / wherfore he is in grete drede of the kynges displeasir / and
of the evil wiþ of you, and of othir grete Lordes of this lande / 4
whoos childe went with hym" / And whan the Erl herd this, he
was so glad, he coude not sey a worde to the gentilman, but went
streight to the kyng / and tolde it hym, wherof the kyng was
ioyfuþ as he might be, sayng vnto hym, "ffaire Cosyn, y pray you 8
make suche purveaunce as ye thinke may be moost for his honour;
and dispose your-self with suche company as ye thinke best to go
for him, in what Reaume so euir he be, and brynge him vnto me
assone as euir ye may" / Than departed therle vnto his loggyng / 12
& this gentilman *with* him / and whan they were there, the gentil-
man seid vnto him / "sir, ye nede make no grete purveaunce / for ye
haue not right ferre to go / ye shalle nede to sadelle no hors therfore,
but it please you, for y can bringe you thider on foote *with* youre 16
ease / the fewer that come *with* you, y suppose, the gladder woll he
be" / Therle herd that, and taried not, but toke this gentilman by
the arme / and went forth, without other company, streight to his
loggyng / and whan he came in-to the chambre where Ector was / 20
he knewe him anone / and knelede downe, and toke him in his
armes *without* sayng any worde / and whan he might speke, he
saide / "A, sir! blessed be the houre of youre comyng now in-to
this Reaume" / then he asked him hou it was *with* him, and of his 24
auentures that felle him sith his departyng. Ector was in suche
drede, that he durst say no thyng as than, sauf only that he saide,
"I shall *with* right good will telle you at leyser of alle my fortunes /
but first, y pray you, telle me som of your tidynges." Therle tolde 28
him suche as he knewe, and what sorowe the kyng had, and alle the
Reaume, for his departyng / seyng / "thanked be god! now, by your
comyng, this Reaume shalbe revived in gladnesse" / thus passed
forth the tyme; til at the last, therle saide, "sir, and it please you, 32
y shal go to the kyng / whiche shalbe as ioyfuþ as any man erthly,
whan he knowith how it is *with* you; and sone y shaft brynge you
worde of aþ his pleasir, hou he wof haue you demeaned / and toke
his leue & departed." The gen^tilman of Sizile brought therle agein 36
to his Loggyng / & went agein to his maister / and tolde him alle
hou he had don that day, and howe he had ben *with* the kyng /
and what he saide; wherof he was right ioifuþ. On the tothir
side, whan therle of Warrewik came to his loggyng / he sent for the 40

- kynges counselle, to whom he shewed, without hidyng of anythyng, the maner of comyng of their yong prince, to thentent that they might take aulse how they shold telle it to the kyng / and so they
- 4 concluded alle togeder to go to the kyng, and telle it him / thus departed they to the kyng as ioyfull as they coude / and whan they came to him, they tolde him how his sone was in the Towne, in grete drede / for that / that he wist for trouthe, he had deserned
- 8 his grete displeasir. whan the kyng herd this, he was so ioyfull that he coude not speke a worde / and whan he might speke, he saide, "assone as it is possible, I pray you bryng him to me, for y fele that dethe approchet fast / whiche y shalt resceyue more ioy-
- 12 fully for alle your sake / whiche haue this daie recouered an heire male to gouerne you aftir my dethe; I pray god graunte him wele to do." Than departed alle the lordes, with suche company, that alle the stretes were fulle of men / and whan they came nere at Ectours
- 16 loggyng / his hoste aspied so moche people comyng toward his hous, and had grete drede, and came to Ector in grete haste, sayng, "sir, yf ye haue done any offence to the kyng or to his lawes saue your self be tymes / for here cometh grete number of people, I
- 20 suppose to take you" / Ector, hering thies wordes, wist not wele what to say or to thinke, but abode stille, til the lordes came vp in-to his chambre, whiche did him suche reuerences as longed to his estate / and whan he sawe them, he knewe the moost part of them,
- 24 and welcomed them right curteisly. There was that tyme more ioy in that chambre than y can reherce to you / than tolde they Ector the sekenesse of his ffadir / and how he sent for him to come hastely to him, for he desired moche to se him bifore his dethe.
- 28 Of thies tidynges was Ector right soroufult, and departed out of his loggyng, and toke one of the lordes by the arme / and went forth toward the kyng. The prease was so grete, that vnnethe he might passe, for euery man desired to se hym / and whan ¹he came to the
- 32 Court, he went streight in-to the Kynges chambre, & kneled downe by the beddes side / & whan he sawe the grete payne and sekenesse he was yn / he was in suche sorowe that he coude not speke a worde a grete while / And on the tothir side, the kyng was so glad that he
- 36 coude not speke / At the last, whan the yong prince might speke, he saide, "My lord, y biseche you, pat of youre grace it please you to pardon me the displeasir that y haue done you; for y haue to gretly offendid you, whiche me sore repenteth / I am redy to obey
- 40 what punissment it wol please you to put me to" / The kyng

He then sends for the King's Council, and tells them the good news.

The Earl and Council tell the King,

who prays them to bring his Son to him at once.

They go to Prince Humphrey,

who starts,

[1 H. 104, bk.]

enters his Father's room, kneels by his bed,

and asks his forgiveness.

The King
grants it.

Prince Hum-
phrey tells his
sick Father
all his ad-
ventures,

and about
his 2 fellow-
Princes,

[leaf 105]
and the com-
ing Tourney
for Princess
Iolante.

Humphrey
begs forgive-
ness of the
Nobles whose
sons he took
with him.

toke his sone by the hande, saynge, " my sone, y pray god forgif it
the ; and for my part, y forgif the *with alle* my hert / and thanke
god / that hath youen me grace, bfore my dethe, to recouere the /
ye se thise noble men of whom ye had the children *with you*, 4
whiche yit be not retourned agein, as y vnderstande / I committe
them vnto you / and so do y alle thestates of my Reaume. and, how
be it, y am feble, and not like to lyue, yet haue .I. grete desire to
knowe of *your* auentures sith *your* departyng " / Than Ector tolde 8
him of his departyng, not charging any othir ther-*with* but him-
self / than tolde hou he and his company were taken / and hou
forthwith they were departed eche from othir / saue it fortun'd a
child of his chambre to, be lefte *with* hym, whiche lyued but a 12
while aftir / and than tolde he the maner of his Delyueraunce /
whiche was caused by a yong cristen esquier, the moost goodly
man, and the best assured, and the moost noble man of his handes,
that euir y knewe or herd telle of / and by his prowesse he toke 16
the kyng of Perce, the Soudans Brother, by whom he was
delyuered / and tolde the maner hou, as is bfore reherced / and
hou that, aftir his deliueraunce, he came in-to the Reaume of Sizile /
and there, was in the company of two the worshipfulle men of the 20
worlde, of their degre / of the whiche, one was the same gentilman
by whoos meanes y was deliuered ; and a-nothir one that was escaped
of the armee of Scottes, whiche is an yngoodly man, and a worthy /
ffor thise ij. men haue doon more hurt to the Turkes, than alle the 24
Reaume of Sizile / And aftir, he tolde the destruccïon of the Turke,
and hou the kyng of Sizile was chosen Emperour, and what terme
of trewes was taken bytwene themperour and the yonge Turke /
and than he forgate not ¹to telle of the Tournay that was cried for 28
the Emperours doughtir, and tolde the grete beaute and bounte
she was of / and noon auenture he vntolde, sauf his oune prowesse /
and of his ij. ffelawes reherced he so moche worship / that euery
man meruailed, that herd it / and whan he had ended his tale / he 32
behelde the grete princes and lordes ther / of whom he had away
the sones of / and than went he vnto them & seid / " My Frendes
& Cousins, y crie you *mercy* ! for by me are ye differred from *your*
children ; for y wolt not, nor can, denye it, but that oure departyng 36
came of me, & not of them / and y trust veryly in god that they
be alyue / and if they so be, y promyse you *without* faile, their
Raunsone shalbe no charge to none of you / and y trust to haue
suche acqueyntaunce ther, to haue them delyuerd *without* fyne or 40

Raunsom, if they lyue" / whom they forgaff / with right good wille / They grant it.
 sayng / that nowe god had sent them hym, it was but litil change of
 the remenaunt." Than departed he and they alle from the kyng /
 4 and within litil while aftir, he decesed, and yeldid his soule to god / The King of England dies,
 ffor his dethe, was alle the Reaume heuy and right sory ; but they
 were gretly recomforted by the comyng of the yonge prince / and
 wele they might be / for in his tyme he gouerned the Reaume fulle
 8 wele & rightwisly. The obsequeyes for the kyng were done as and is buried.
 belonged to his estate. And after, his sone was crown'd, as of dewte
 he aught / and aftir his coronacion, he sent for his counselle / and Prince Hum-
phrey is
crown'd,
 shewed them what wille he hadde to go in-to the Reaume of Sizile /
 12 to put him in deuoir to haue this faire lady, trustyng to accomplissh
 wele his desire, for he was sure that his ij. felawes might not be
 ther-at / In asmoche as noon might tourney there, but he were
 descended of roialle blode right nygh ; and that were not they /
 16 whiche were the men of the word that he moost dred at that
 point / if they might haue ben there / Thise lordes, whan they
 vndirstode his pleasir, contraried him in no-thinge, but thought it
 was right wele to do, though it were only but for to lete him to be
 20 knowen in the Reaume of Sizile, where he had ben so long bi-fore /
 when they were thus concluded, he purueide for his estate / and his and makes
ready for the
Iolante Tour-
ney in Sicilly.
 abilementes to be made aswele and as richely as was possible for
 him / and in this meane while, the gentilman of Sizile that was
 24 comen with him, reherced contynuelly the vertues and the grete
 worthy¹nesse that was in his maister / and seide that he might not [1 ff. 105, bk.]
 faile to haue the Emperours doughtir / seyng / the tothir ij. of whom
 ye haue herd, might not be there-at / and in esspecialt one that was
 28 called Le Surnome, whiche was nounpareilt of the world / The
 kynges purueaunce was alle redy, and abode no-thing but the tyme
 of his departyng / Now is it tyme that we retourne to speke of
 Athis. [Illumination: a King receives Messengers: a Cavalcade rides forth.]
 32 **Y**T is no doute he was right heuy whan he was allone, departed Prince David
of Scotland
 from his company, whom he loued so moche / but his
 thought was not like the tothir two, for he was not departed
 against the pleasir of his fadir / but by his licence & commaunde-
 36 ment ; wherefore he was assured to be right welcome / Thus rode he
 forth more ioyfully, and nought discouerd to noon of his men, of
 his estate, nor what he was. and whan he came in-to Scotland / reaches his
native land,
 he askid tidynges of the kyng and of his children / and where he
 40 shold fynde the kyng / men tolde him where the kyng was, and

and hears
of his own
death.

Prince David
rides to where
his Father is.

[1 leaf 106]

The King
sends his 2
other sons for
their brother,

and when
David comes,
the King em-
braces him,

and bids him
tell his ad-
ventures.

This David
does.

alle his children in good helthe / sauf only for the dethe of his
eldest sone, that died in the cristen armee, that went in-to the
Reaume of Sizile / Than rode he forth til he came to the Towne
where the kyng was, & loggid him yn an Inne, vnknownen what 4
he was, of any body / than enquired he what folkes there were
about the kyng of his counselle / Than sent he for two or thre of
them / and whan they came to his loggyng, and knewe him / they
had as grete ioye as coude be thought / And than said he to them / 8
“My frendes, the cause that y sent for you, is this / I drede the
grete ioie that the kyng shal haue, if he here sodeinly of my
comyng / shold do him to grete an hurt / wherfore me thinketh
best that it be tolde him at ¹diuerse tymes and by leyser / first, to 12
telle hym that y am a lyve / and in prisone / and aftir to telle him
that y am escaped, and than to telle him that y am comen” / and
as it was deuised, it was done. And by processe of tyme the kyng
had knowlage of the comyng of his sone, wherof he was as ioyfull 16
as he might be / for he neuir loked to haue seen him a-lyue / than
he sent his ij. brethern for him / and alle the lordes, knightes, and
Squiers of the Court / grete was the ioy amonges them whan they
were mette / so that no sorowe was thought on. They that were 20
comen out of Sizile with him, were sore abasshed whanne they
knewe their maister was the kynges sone / hou-be-it they thought
altwey he was of som noble blode, he was so fult of all goodly
maners / Athis, accompanied with his two brethern, and grete 24
nombre of princes and lordes, departed from his loggyng, and went
to the kyng / whom he founde in a grete halle : and whan he sawe
him he kneled doune ; and assone as the kyng sawe him, he ranne
to hym a grete paas, and toke him in his armes without speche ; & 28
whan he might speke, he welcomed him in his best maner, and
asked him of his Auenturys, & that he sholde telle it openly / he
began his tale thus / “My lord, here be many yn your presence
that can telle you of the grete fortune that befell at the port where 32
we were / and of my self y shal telle you / for y wote not what
befelle of the remenaunt. The vessell where y was, smot on land
bifore the Turkes baner ; and alle that were theryn were drowned,
sauff vj., wherof y was one / and the Erle Douglas an othir / & 36
othir iiij. that y remembre not / and we purposed verily to haue
yolden vs to the Turke / but he charged his men to sle vs / and
there was the Erle Douglas slayne at my feet / and y withdrew
me / and set my bak to a Roche / and the Turkes sone espied me / 40

and hadde pite on me, and commaunded alle men to come fro me,
and toke me *with* his owne handes, and promysed to saue my lif /
wherof the Turke was not pleased / and wold haue sleyne me in his
4 handes / but he defendid me right valiauntly / and for cause he was
a kynges sone / and y was his first prisoner, he delyuerd me frely /
and brought me surely in-to a cristen place, whiche was beseged
within two daies aftir / and the Captayne of the place was right a
8 a noble man & a knyght / and had in his com'pany a man that [1 f. 106, bk.] Prince David tells his Father about Prince Phillip of France
hight Le Surnome, whiche was the floure and surmountour of alle
othir: *with* hym haue y bene alle the while sith the tyme of my
takyng / and he deliuered out of the Turkes handes a yong man
12 that was named Ector, whiche dayly did so wele, that *within* litil
while his renome was fer knowen. Thise ij. and I had but one
purse & one wille; for debate was neuir amonges vs." Than tolde
he hou, by the worthynesse of his ij. ffelawes, the Reaume of Sizile
16 was recouerd; & told of the batailes & grete adventures that were
duryng the werres / than tolde he of the long trewes that was
taken / & forgate not to telle of the Tournay that shold be, & for
whoos sake; & hou noon might tournay there, but if he were of
20 blode roialle / whan the kyng hadde herde alt his tale, he was right
wele content ther*with* / and toke him by the hande, & drewe him
apart *with* v. or vj. othir that he called to him, & askid his sone, by
his feith, if he had not grete desire to be at this Tournay; & he
24 saide, "yis, if it pleased him." & besought him at his first comyng
to graunt him that request / "forsothe," seide the kyng / "& ye
shalle go as wele acompanyed & appointed as y can make you, what
so euir it cost me" / Than made the kyng grete purueaunce for his
28 goyng forth / and appointed the moost part of his noble men, &
lusty knyghtes of his Reaume, to accompany him. In this besy
tyme, such sekenesse toke the kyng, that he died. his sone was
right sorowfult, as of reason he aught / but he might not be
32 recouerd / The tyme passed, & his sorowe wele appeased / the yonge
kyng was crown'd / & than ordeyned he his abilementes moche
more riche than bifore. And purposed him to departe, so that he
might be ther .x. or xij. daies bifore the Tournay / trustyng to come
36 to this high wele, and mariage of this faire lady / and thought, whan
he came there, to enquere alle aboute aftir his two felawes / and to
kepe them in his company. [Illumination: Meeting of Emperour and King, &c.]

40 **F**Or to abregge my matier, the tyme came that it semed the
kyng of Scottes ceason to departe; and he departed out of
THREE KINGS' SONS.

[¹ leaf 107]
and starts
for Sicily,
with a grand
retinue.

King David is

met by the
Emperor
and the
Nobles of
Sicily,

is reproacht
for so long
hiding his
name,

and is taken
to his lodg-
ings.
He goes to
the Palace,

[² If. 107, bk.]

and is wel-
comed by the
Empress,

his contre in grete ¹estate, alle his folkes in a lyuere / and so
many lordes & knyghtes with him, that it was meruaile to se; he had
to the nombre of a M^t horses *with* him, or moo / he sent his her-
begeours in-to Sizile before, to take vp his quarter for his loggyng / 4
more than a moneth bfore his comyng / and men meruailed moche
that he came *with* so moche people / and delyuerd him suche log-
ging / as was accordyng to the nombre / whan tyme came, the kynge
of Scottes approched, and lay but viij. myle from the Emperour., 8
and whan themperour hadde dyned, he toke his hors, *with* grete and
noble company of princes and lordes, for alle the floure of Sizile was
ther / thus departed he oute of the Towne, & mette the kynge of
Scottes more then a myle thens / and whan he sawe the kynge of 12
Scottes, he thought it shold be Athis / and asked "where was the
kynge" / and whan he knewe for trouthe that it was he / he toke
hym in his armes, and seide / "A, sir! ye haue done grete wrong,
that thus longe ye haue hidde you from me; for, and y had knowen 16
you to my power, y wold haue honoured you accordyng to your
estate / y coude neur haue thought, that the sone of so mighti a
kynge, shold haue ben seruaunt to my Senesshalle" / fferaunt,
whan he knewe Athis, that so long had ben in his seruice / and 20
sawe him nowe a kynge, humbly came to salewe him / seyng /
"sir, y aught gretly to thanke god that hath youen me suche grace,
to haue the seruice of a kynge / hou be it / ye aught not to blame
me, though y haue not honoured you as me aught / for fulle gladly 24
y wold, if y hadde knowen you" / Thus rode forth the knightes of
Sizile and they of Scotland; and ther was not forgotten amonges
them the grete worthynesse of the kynge of Scottes, and how
valiauntly he acypte him at the takyng of the yonge Turke, & in 28
what maner he had deliuerd hym / Anone the tidynges came vnto
the Emperesse, and to his doughtir, that the kyng of Scottes, that
was now come, was Athis / that so long had ben in seruice there,
whiche was to them grete meruaile / anone themperour and the 32
kyng approched the palaice / But themperour in no wise wold lete
him alight there / but brought him to his owne loggyng / and assone
as he was a-light there / he chaunged him / and came in to them-
peresse, that abode him in the halle, and hir fair doughtir, *with* 36
grete company of ladies & gentil²wommen / & lordes, knightes, &
squyers / and whan He came in-to the halle, the Emperesse wel-
comed him ioyfully / seyng vnto him / that "he was moche to blame
to hide him thus long fro them / for they had done him moche 40

- wrong / & alle by his owne cause" / he excused him, seying, "that
 he had made his auowe to be vnknownen duryng the werres, sith god
 had youen him that grace to escape with his lif so wele as he did" /
 4 than went he to this faire lady, the Emperours doughtir, & talkid and by Princess Iolante.
 with hir, seying / he shold put him in deuoir more to deserue hir
 grace than he had done, if god wold sende him that grace & fortune /
 This faire lady answerd nothyng / but was alle abasshed, for there
 8 was no man in the world she was so leef to haue, as one of the iij.
 seruauntes. But our alle othir, she loued best Le Surnome, if he
 were of birthe accordyng vnto hers / The kynge of Scottes excused
 him that tyme for sopyng with themperour / and desired his maister,
 12 fferaunt, & many othir noble men of Sizile, to suppe with him at his King David asks Ferant and other Sicilian nobles to sup with him,
 loggyng / thus went they forth with him / Alle they of the Towne
 that sawe Athis in his estate, preised god, wisshing amonges them
 that his ij. felawes were of as noble birth and grete power as he
 16 was. Aftir soper, the kyng of Scottes went agein to the ladies / and then goes back to the Court, to daunce.
 whiche he founde redy to the daunces / the daunces and the sportes
 were there right grete / and whanne tyme was, spices & wyne were
 sette / and than went alle folkes to rest / and thus contynued the
 20 tyme in disportes & pleisir, and the ffeste kepte in grete estate &
 nobley til aftir the mariage; and euery man lyued yn hope and
 desire to haue this faire lady. ¶ Now shalle we leue a while, &
 speke of Orkais, the yong Turke. [Illumination: Emperor and Sultan meet.]
- 24 **Y**E haue wele herde here before, how he was determyned to be Sultan Orcays
 at this Tournay / and whan he sawe his tyme coueneble, he
 departed, so richely arayed and so wele accompanied, ¹ that [leaf 108]
 euery man thought that he was right wele appointed accordyng to
 28 his highe estate / and lital while he spedde him so wele, he came in- lands in Sicily,
 to the Reaume of Sizile / his herbegeours were afore, and hadde
 taken vp his loggyng / whan the Emperour knewe of his comyng /
 he had grete meruaile / and thought werrily he shold not tournay
 32 without he were first cristened; and so he supposed the Turke
 entendid to be / Than went he and the kynge of Scottes to mette and is wel- comed by the Emperor and Prince David.
 with him / and mette him almost at the Towne. There was
 amonges them grete ioye / and eche did othir grete honour. and
 36 when the Turke behelde the kynge of Scottes, he knew certainly
 it was the same that he had taken prisoner to-fore; and whan he
 remembred his worthynesse, he loste anone moche of his hope of
 the Tournay / wisshing that he hadde slayne hym whan he toke
 40 him prisoner / but in asmoche as it was to late / he salewed the

The Sultan
and King
David talk
over their
freeing one
another.

kyng, saynge vnto him / "fforsothe, sir, whan y deliuered you, y
wende fulle litil to haue hadde in myn handes the chief of the
cristen armee" / "By my feith, sir," seide the kyng of Scottes, "y
holde my lif of you" / Than seide the Turke, "y deliuered you / 4
not knowyng what ye were / and ye deliuered me, knowyng for
certaine that y was the Turkes sone / by this, was ther gretter
bounte yn you than in me; and y am more bounden to you than ye
to me" / "trewly," seide the kyng of Scottes, "sauf your grace / 8
ffor y did nought for you, but that y was bounden bifore for to do /
and moche more, and y coude / and ye did for me without desert of
me or any othir, for my sake" / In suche *communicacion* rode they
vnto the Towne / and the Emperour hadde grete pleasir to here 12
them / Aftir soper, the Turke and the kyng of Scottes came to se the
Ladies / and so did alle othir straungers, wherof there were so many,
that euery man was ameruailed / for there was no cristen nacion
almoost, but there were som folkes therof / The ladies and gentil- 16
women made grete chere to the Turke / The Turke made it secretly
be broken to the Emperour, that if he wolde breke of this Tournay /
and gif hym his doughtir in mariage / he wolde become cristen for
hir sake / but his entente was, not to be cristened vpon none 20
certaynte / and if themperour had knowen bifore his desire, with
right good wille he wold haue agreed therto / for by that meane
his Reaume, for alwey sholde haue bene in peas / neurtheles, he

They go to
see the
Ladies.

Orcays tells
the Emperour
that if he
can haue
Iolante, he'll
turn Chris-
tian.

[1 If. 108, bk.]

The Emperour
says he can't
stop the
Tourney for
her.

praied ¹him now to remembre that the ffesst of the Tournay was alle 24
redy / wherefore it was now to late to breke it / ffor the loggyng
was taken vp by the herbeiours for x. kynges and C.C. princes, and
grete lordes of blode Roialle, wherefore he neither might, nor wolde,
abuse so many grete princes & lordes / for he coude not do it 28
without grete maugre and a shame / But, and he hadde shewed
him this whan he was prisoner, Themperour wold haue had grete
ioie therof / whan the Turke herd this answe, he thought wele
themperour saide trouthe / and content him with the answe, 32
tha[n]kyng moche themperour; and so taried ther stille, abidyng
the ffeste / and euery day the kyng of Scottes and he, with many
othir grete princes, came to disporte them with the ladies & gentil-
women / Now leue we them, & retourne to the kyng of England.² 36

King Ham-
phrey of
England

THe kyng of England had wele herde in what aray & grete
estate the kyng of Scottes was departed to this Tournay;
wherefore he accompanied him self the bettir / and appointed

² Illumination: Meeting of the Emperor and the King of England, on horseback.

- him self aswele as he coude, like as ye haue herde bifore / and whan
he thought hys tyme best, departed, & *within* litil while came in-to
the Reaume of Sizile / and whan themperour was assertayned he
4 was nere / he toke his hors / and in his company, the Turke & the
kyнге of Scottes, and many othir grete princes and Lordes / and
whan they mette *with* the kyнге of England / and was assertayned
it was Ector, The Emperour was neur so ameruailed / The Turke &
8 the kyнге of Scottes were sore abashed / Natheles, eche one made
othir grete chere / and in esspecialle the kyнге of England made
Athis grete chere, no thing wenyng he had ben kyng, nor of blode
Roiaille; but whan he knewe he was a kyнге, as wele as he & the
12 next ¹neighbour that he had / eche of them made meruailous Ioie [1 leaf 100]
of othir / But ouir alle men / fferauant had grete ioie / and helde him
self moost vrous man that lyued in his tyme / seyng two so grete
kynges that had so long contynued in his seruyce / and than came
16 he to salewe the kyng of England / and he did him alt the honour
that he coude / sayng / “myne owne maister / Lo, here your seru-
uaunt / that neur sha^{ll} faile you, daies of his lif / Here may ye se
two of your seruauntes: wold oure lord, the thridde were in suche
20 condicion!” than asked he if any tidinges were of him / “Trewly,”
saide themperour, “nay / and therof haue y grete meruaile” / whan
the two kynges herd that / they were right sory / thinkynge eche
in him self / they wolde gif the third part of their Reaume to haue
24 him in their company / The kyнге of England thought verily, that
if he coude gete him, he wolde marye him to one of his susters /
and gif him grete possessionns. thinkyng he coude nowhere so wele
bistowe hir with that he were a gentilman / In suche thoughtes &
28 wordes, rode they to the Towne. And like as the tidynges of the
kyнге of Scottes came to themperesse and to hir doughtir, came
tidynges of the kyнге of England, how for trouthe it was Ector, that
so longe had be in seruice there. The Emperesse & hir doughtir, &
32 alle the ladies & gentilwomen, gretly reioised it, and thought it was
half a miracle, for the meruaile they had therof / Themperour went
to his loggyng / and the kyнге of Englonde went to his / by the
commaundement and ordynaunce of the Emperour; and the Turke,
36 & the kyнге of Scottes, brought him there / and went agein to their
owne loggyng / and taried not there scantly til they had half soped /
but went agein to the kyнге of Englonde, and founde him yet stille
at soper / and fferauant *with* him / than sate thei downe *with* hem /
40 and than talkid they of Le Surnome. a man might haue had ioie

reaches
Sicily.

King Hum-
phrey is met
by the Em-
peror, King
David, and
Sultan
Orcays.

No tidings
have been
heard of
King Phillip
of France.

King Hum-
phrey,

King David,
and Sultan
Orcays talk
about King
Phillip.

King Philip
is expected at
the Tournay.

[1 ff. 109, bk.]

King Hum-
phrey justi-
fies himself
for formerly
keeping
unknown.

Dancing
begins.

Festivities go
on till the
Tournay.

King Philip
of France

[2 leaf 110]

sends ser-
vants to
Sicily, to
get lodgings
for the Duke
of Burgundy
and his large
retinue.

and meruaile, to haue herd them reherce the grete noblesse & bountees of him / and for his grete renome, euery man loued him / On the tothir side was themperesse in the halle, accompayned with ladies & gentilwomen / and ther was noone othir talkyng, but of 4 the kynge of Englund, and the kyng of Scottes, hou long they had be amonges them vnknownen / and there was Le Surnome com- playedn / and somme saide that yet he might come to this Tournay tyme y-nough / and if it were possible to him, ¹so wold he accord- 8 yng to his promys / The ladies had grete desir to se him ; but our alle other, themperours doughter had grete sorowe that he was not come ; and praied god, Le Surnome might be of as grete blode & power as any of the ij. kynges. Aftir soper, the kynge of Englund 12 & of Scottes, & the Turke, & alle the princes, came to se the ladies / the kynge of Englund was fulle wele receyued amonges them / and questioned, wherfore he kepte him self so long vnknownen. he answerd & saide, that in his emprisonment, & at his deliuerance, 16 he made suche promesse / Than saide he, “ y pray god comfort Le Surnome, and sende him good auenture, where so euer he be ; for, next god, y may thanke him of my lif.” and sayng thies wordes, the teeres fille from his yeen / for sorow pat he hadde pat he coude 20 here no tydynges of hym / The ladies gaf him a grete preise, seyng that “ Le Surnome had wele bistowed his seruice, that it was so wele remembred ” / anoon the mynstralls playde / and the daunces began on alle partes / there knightes, ladies, & gentilwomen daunceyng ; and 24 euer amonges was Surnome remembred / moost of any thing / In this festing & pleasir, abode they til the day of Tournay / Now is it tyme to speke of the kynge of ffrance, and of his vnclle the Duc of Burgoigne. [Illumination: Meeting of the Emperor and the King of France.] 28

THe kynge of ffrance, pat wold be vnknownen, wolde not departe so sone as the tothir did / hou-be-it he knewe of the departyng of many kynges and princes / and in what estate and richesse the kynge of Englund & the kynge of Scottes were 32 departed yn. and many tymes was his vnclle and he in communicacion for his purueance ; and the kynge was the best diuiser that any man coude fynde : he devised ²not as a pore caitif, but as a kynge / so that there was noon, of what estate and condicion he 36 was of / to be compared to him. Thre daies bifore, he had sent his seruantes to take vp loggyng for the Duc of Burgoigne / enheritour and Regent of ffrance, whiche hath in his company v. or vj. M^t horses, wherof there be vj. Dukes and xiiij. Erles, beside grete Barons 40

- and noble knightes, that were in his company. He ordeyned than his
vncle to take vpon him the playne armes of ffraunce, seyng, " that
it ought to be so / for it shold be to him reproof to tourney in any
4 other cote armour than in his owne " / The duc of Burgoigne, whiche The Duke of
Burgundy
agrees to all
that K. Philip
proposes.
entended no-thing so moche as the pleasir of his newew, was content
with alle that he wold ordeyne / how-be-it, he tolde him that folkes
wolde speke moche therof / inasmoche as he was not crowned kyng,
8 nor bare the name therof / Neuirtheles, in conclusioun, thus it was
apointed / and thus it was done / And ther was noman in alle ffraunce
that [wold] contrary the Dukes pleasir / hou-be-it, his day was not
come, by a yere and more, of the vij. yere / and alle such murmur &
12 wordes, dred the Duc. But it was sure at the ende, what-som-euir
was saide, shold be to his grete honour / and alle thinge was arriedied
thus as y haue tolde you / and the kyng departed at suche tyme King Philip
starts from
France.
as he might come to the Emperour a ij. nightes before the Tournay /
16 and whan his herbegours came afore / and asked loggyng for so
grete a nombre / themperour was abasshed, and meruailed moche /
Than they tolde him how he was Regent of ffraunce, and enheritour /
and noon but he apparaunt to be kyng / and so toke he him self /
20 Of alle this, themperour had grete meruaile / & specially, sith he was
so nere vnto him, that he had not before tyme sent noon embassat
for the mariage of his doughtir. ¶ Now cometh the tyme of the
Dukes departyng / no man may thinke the richesse that that tyme
24 was at Parys, of the grete princes that were come thider / whos
abilementes and purueaunce were to long to reherce / when alle was
redy, the Duke departed / and they that he had in his conduyte /
The kyng went alwey before or behinde / euery man praied god to
28 sende the Duc good auenture, for moche was he biloued ¹amonges [1f. 110, bk.]
them; hou-be-it they had a litil grugge vnto him now / for this,
that he bare the playne armes of ffraunce / and they praied god
they might ones se the kynges sone a lyue amonges them / for than
32 sholde he be fayne to leue thoos armes / Thus departed he, as y
telle you. The Duc spedde his Iournay so, that he came in-to the
Reaume of Sizile / and whan he first entred in-to the Reaume, he
was ascertayned what kynges & prynces were there / and how the
36 kyng of England was Ector; and the kyng of Scottes was Athis / and hear of
Kings Hum-
phrey and
David.
that so longe had be in seruice there. The Duc knewe thies names
wele, by reporte of his Neuewe / and had right grete ioie of them /
and assone as he might, he made relacion vnto the kyng, whiche
40 had therof a meruailous gladnesse / thinkyng in himself / that suche

The Emperor
sends his
Nobles to
meet the
Duke of
Burgundy.

King Philip
tells the Duke
his assumed
names,

[leaf 111]

which the
Duke rejoices
to hear.

King Philip
will now act
as a gentle-
man of his
uncle's.

aventure had neuer be seen / that iij. kynges sones vnknowne shold
be daily seruantes yn one house to a knyght / Than thought he that
this entent might not be had / for he thought before to haue had
them bothe yn his house / though they had coste him the half of his
Reaume / whiche now might not be / Than saide he to his vncl,
“now shalt y ride ioyfully / for y shalt se the moost part of them that y
loue” / Thus rode they til they came nere vnto the place where them-
perour was / and at the towne that he logged / next vnto themperour / 8
there mette with him many noble men / that themperour had sent
vnto him; and there dyned they with hym / and the Duc asked
them many questions of the werres that had ben amonges them /
and they tolde him, and also of the fortune of fferant, “whiche had 12
ij. kynges in his seruice / whiche were the moost noble men of the
worlde sauf one, whiche was in their company, that was named Le
Surnome, whiche was the floure, and surmounted alle othir” / &
there they reherced his persone, his worthynesse, and bounte / and 16
alle the wele that coude be seid of any man / yit knewe not the Duc
that it was his newewe that was called Le Surnome. But assone as
he might departe from them of Sizile / he came to his newewe / &
besought him on his feith to telle him how he was named when he 20
was in Sizile. and the kynge, that wold not displease his vncl,
tolde him that his first name was Le Despurueu / but the Emperours
doughtir had chaungid it, and named hym Le Surnome. And whan
the Duc herde this / and knewe for trouthe it was he ¹ of whom the 24
grete renome sprange so ferre / he embraced him with grete ioie.
and the kyng asked him what meued him so to do; and he tolde
him the grete honour that he had herd spoken of him; and seid so
moche, that the kynge wax alle rede & shamefast / and saide, “faire 28
vncl, they that haue made this report, y suppose be my grete
frendes; but paraventure ye shalle here suche tidynges, or ye go
oute of this cuntre, that happily shalle not please you so moche.”
The Duc in his mynde praised him moche for that answe, & saide / 32
“now wille ye go bifore or behinde” / “forsothe,” saide the kynge,
“y wolt go bifore / and not fer from you, but as a gentilman of
yours” / The Duc was content with his pleasir / The Emperour
had alwey hope to here som tidynges of Le Surnome. The ladies 36
that had herd speke of the grete richesse, and of the grete lordes
that shold come to the towne, besought themperour they might be
at the wyndowes to se them come / Themperour was agreeable.
Themperesse, & hir doughtir, and alle the ladies, went forth / whan 40

they that were in the towne herd thies tidýnges / euery man
 appointed him self in the best wise they coude / to ride forth and
 mete the Duc of Burgoigne. The kynge of ffraunce was araied as
 4 a squier, and set on the best hors that was in alle the company / and
 iij. or iiij. moo that knewe of his counselle, were araied in sute with
 him / and eche one a visour bifore his face / Themperour, and the yong
 Turke, & alle the kynges & princes that were in the towne, rode
 8 oute to mete the Duc of Burgoigne / and wíthín litil way of the
 towne, they mette with hym; and there was neither knight nor
 squyer in his company, but he had outhr trapoures or horsharneys
 of clothe of gold / or velewet embrowdird / there was neuir so grete
 12 richessee seen in Sizile bifore in one day / whan the yong kynge
 saw the kyng of England and the kyng of Scottes, he salewed them
 a ferre; & the hors wheron he rode was so plesaunt, that his maister
 might guyde him as he wold / and he made ij. or iij. lepes fulle
 16 manerly / the hors was plesaunt, and the man that was on hym
 moche more / he was loked on of many folkes / but noon knewe hym
 [as] he passed forthe. The Emperour came to the Duc, and salued
 him as perteyned to his estate / aftir acqueyntaunce, they rode alle
 20 togedir to the towne; and the yong kynge and his company was
 alway nere vnto ¹the Duc / At their comyng in-to the Towne, was not
 seen suche estate of richessee síth the worlde began / the wyndowes
 and the stretes were alle hanged wíth riche clothes / and alle the
 24 wyndowes fulle of ladies & gentilwomen / and whan they shold
 passe by themperesse & hir faire doughtir, the yonge kynge knewe
 them wele y-nough, ye may wele thinke / the cawey was to litil for
 his hors & him / for alle that was possible for hym or his hors to do /
 28 was done bifore the ladies ther; and it semed to as many as bihelde
 him / that he sate as easely as he had ben vpon a litil amblyng
 nagge / and the ladies & gentilwomen gaff their beholdyng moost
 vnto him / but the prese was suche, they lost the sight of him longe
 32 or they wold. and whan themperour came there as the ladies lay /
 he alight, and made to conduyte the Duc of Burgoigne vnto his log-
 ging, wíth many kynges & princis; & whan they had brought hym
 there, [. . . .] Than the Duc knewe that themperour had supped /
 36 and that it was tyme to se the ladies, he departed from his loggyng /
 so accompanied, that it was meruaile to se / he came to themperours
 paleis, where he founde themperesse accompanied wíth grete nombre
 of ladies and gentilwomen / and so many faire, that it was a paradis
 40 to biholde them / but as the sonne passeth in beaute the sterres / so,

The Duke of
Burgundy is
met by the
Emperor and
his kingly
guests, &c.

[1 ff. 111, bk.]
The Sicilian
town is
magnificently
adorn'd.

The Duke
visits the
Empress,

and the
lovely
Iolante,

whom he
thinks the
Nonpareil of
the world.

King Phillip
looks on at
the dances.

[leaf 112]
His supposed
absence is
lamented.

He resolves
to do his
best at the
Tourney,

in beaute & behaving, passeth alle othir, the faire & good Iolant. The
duc salued the ladies, as to their estate belonged ; and than he felle
in talkyng with this faire lady / whom he founde so wele assured in
alle hir behauyng that he thought his nevewe wele fortunèd to haue 4
such choys / if his fortune might folow the remenaunt of his wille /
for as him thought, she was nounpareilt of the world / The daunces
began ; the kynges and princes came to se the daunces / the halt
was newe, made so grete and so plenteuous / that suche a-nothir 8
was neur seyen / The yong kyng of ffrance was behinde alle othir,
holdyng a knight of his by the arme / and bihelde the daunces,
and specially his faire lady / and besought god his fortune might be
as good as his wille ; and biheld his ij. felawes disportyng them / & 12
dauncyng among the ladies / trustyng / or long to / to be knownen
there, asmoche to his hertes ease / as was to any of them / There
was many of themperours court that compleyned sore Le Surnome,
whiche he him-self might here / seyng, “ that they were nowe alle out 16
of hope / and that they thought wele that he was outhere dede or
seke, seyng the promys that he had made to be there at that day /
and if he were dede / it were the grettist pite of his dethe that euir
was of any so pore a man in alle this worlde.” Thise wordes herde 20
many of the frenshmen ; and tolde vnto the Duc their maister, the
grete lawde that this man had, whiche was named Le Surnome.
and themperour him-self spake of him, and had for him right grete
sorowe / & so had alle the ladies and gentilwomen. The kyng of 24
ffrance, knowyng alle this / saide vnto suche as knewe his entente /
“ if euer he had hert to do wele / it was now tyme to shewe it at
this tournay / and also he wist wele, without grete paine & trauaile
this grete conqueste might not be made wele ” / they smyled & seide / 28
“ they of this Reaume sey so euell of you / that we ar half in drede
of your spede.” “ Truly,” seide the kyng, “ y shalt do aswele as
y can ” / Themperour praid the Duc of Burgoigne, on the morowe
to suppe with hym and alle the princes of his company / ffor he had 32
festèd alle other straungers bifore / and this was the even of the
tournay. The Duc graunted hym / and toke leue of him and of
the ladies / and went to his loggyng / many were there that wold
haue conueyed hym, but he wold not suffre them / and assone as he 36
came to his loggyng / he founde leiser to speke with his Nevewe,
saing vnto him / “ that wele he had chosen / and yf there were any
prowesse in him / he shold put him in payne now to do wele ; for
if in his defeaute he lost suche a wele / he might be sure neuer to 40

- recouere the semblable" / if the kyng were amorous to-fore / his
vukells wordes made him more; sayng vnto him / "ffaire vncle,
myn armes shalle faile me, outhir y shalt dye in the payne / or y
4 shalt haue hir." The Duc began to laugh, and tolde him how
themperour had praied him to soper on the next day / and alle the
princes of his company / this nyght they went to rest. The kyng
of ffraunce thought euery houre a yere / til the day of the tournay /
8 and yit was there but one day therto. The ffelde was ordeyned by
themperours commaundement, where the Tournay shold be / and
placis apointed, & deliuerd to euery kyng and prince, to hang vp
1 their tentes and paulions. I had forgotten to reherce, howe that [1 ff. 112, bk.]
2 very [? MS.] night was shewed vnto the yong Turke / that, but if he
were cristened / he might not be receyued vnto the tournay / He made
many grete doutes, lest his suggetes wold destroie him, or chase him
out of his Realme / and than the Emperour and alle the kynges and
16 princis that were there, promised him aide, and to take his part, if
any suche cause were / and in trust of their promesse, he bicame
cristened on the morow / the kyng of Englund and the kyng of
Scottes cristened him / and eche of them put othir to such worship,
20 that they wold not gyue the Turke their owne name / so that he
hight aftir neither of them, but was named Charles / also a grete
part of his company bicame cristened. On the morow, did euery
man set vp his Tent^{es} & Pauylions / euery man in his owne quarter /
24 But our alle othir, the Duc of Burgoignes Tente bare the brute /
whiche was of the playne armes of ffraunce / and was valued at
CCC M^t. scutes. that night came the Duc to soper to themperour /
and the Emperour and the ladies made him grete chere; and at
28 that soper, was speche of le Surnome, and was asmoche complayned
as any man might be / The Emperour seide asmoche good of him
as coude be thought / and tolde the Duc that he was cause of alle
his honour / and rehersed his persone, maner, and condicions / and
32 than wisshed him as mighti a kyng as any of his ij. ffelawes / and
than saide he / "he promysed me to haue ben here agein at this
day, if he had ben a lyve and at his liberte / wherfore y thinke verily
he ys dede" / and in sayng thise wordes, the teeres felle from his
36 yen. whan this faire lady herde speke of the dethe of Le Surnome,
she coude not kepe hir from wepyng; and alle othir that there were,
bemoned him moche. And whan the Duc saugh the grete loue
that alle folkes had to his newew / and herde his grete vertues
40 rehersed, ye may be sure he had grete ioie / and saide to the

and wh
Iolante,
or die.

The field
of Tournay
is settled.

[1 ff. 112, bk.]
Sultan
Orcays,

being promist
help by the
Christian
Sovereigns,
turns Chris-
tian,

and is
baptised
"Charles."

At the Em-
peror's
supper, the
supposed
absence of
King Phillip
is again
lamented.

Folk think
he is dead.

Iolante weeps
for him.

The Duke of
Burgundy
[1 leaf 113]
talks to
Iolante about
his Nephew,

and thinks
her heart is
toucht.

King Philip
prays for
success.

Ten other
kings and
K. Philip,

with 205 men
of Royal
blood, make
108 on each
side in the
Tourney.

Emperour, "truly, sir, he hath wele employde his seruyse / and perauenture he may be seke without dethe; and if god wille, ye shal fulle wele se him hereaftir" / Thus, and in suche wordes, passid forth the soper / and aftir soper, the Duc, as though he were a lital envious of the preise that he herde of Le Surnome, saide vnto the faire Iolante, "Madame, me thinketh / Le Surnome wele vred / for whan he was spoken of this night / ye coude not kepe you¹ from wepyng / wherfore y suppose he be more in your grace than many 8 othir" / "In good feith," quod she, "y loue him right wele; and so haue y grete cause / yf ye had in your company one that had done asmoche for you, as Le Surnome hath done for my lord my fadir, & for me / ye had an hard hert, if ye herde speke of his dethe / and 12 were not sory" / The Duc sawe wele she was not pleased with his wordes. he was not sory, for he thought it touchid hir hert somewhat, & trustid wthin iij. daies after / the peas shold be made. anon aftir, he toke his leve, saing, he most that night attende to 16 his besinesse / that night came noon of the tothir Princis to the Emperour / for eche of them attendid that he had to do on the morow. The duc came to his loggyng; and assone as he might, went to the kyng his Nevewe, and tolde him what wordes he had 20 herde of him that night / and what speche was bitwene him and the Emperours doughtir, saing, "sir, now do so, that this preyse and recommendacion may contynue." he answerd, "I pray god graunt me that grace." That night went he to rest / and on the morow 24 rose vp be tymes, and went & herd masse, and than apointed them to be redy. [Illumination: the Tournay: Knights charging; Iolante, &c. looking on.]

THe Princis were departed by the knightes and kynges of Armes, one ageinst a nothir / and were nombred, of kynges 28 x, beside the kyng of ffrance, whiche was vnknownen; and of othir princes & lordes of Roialle blode, CC. and vj.; so that they were in all CC. & xvj. and on eche side,² C. & viij.; on that one side the kyng of England and the Duc of Burgoigne / & on that othir 32 side, the yonge Turke and the kyng of Scottes / The scaffold on the tothir side was where the ladies were; and this faire lady was set vp allone on hight, because euery man shold se hir. Themperour 36 was on an scaffold, accompayned with many noble men /. and fferaunt the Seneshalf was wth him. At the houre that the Tournay shold be, the Trumpetes blew vp /. The kynges & princes came out of their pavilions, euery man armed wth his helme on

[1 lf. 113, bk.]

² MS. on eche side and

his hede / his Cotearmour on him, his baner a-fore him, and alle
 their horses couerd *with* their armes. The yonge Turke and the
 kynge of Scottes came on the tone side / the kynge of Englund /
 4 and he that men helde the Duc of Burgoigne, on the tothir side /
 and whan the kynge of ffraunce came out of his pauylion / eueri
 man beheld him *with* grete meruaile, wenyng he had ben the Duc
 of Burgoigne / by cause he ware the playne armes ; and there was
 8 leyde grete charge vnto him in many folkes mouthis, for weryng
 thies armes, he not beyng kynge. Alle thise thinges done / thei
 were embatailed eche ageinst othir, the corde drawn before eche
 partie / and whan tyme was, the cordes were cutt / and the Trumpetis
 12 blew vp, for euery man to do his deuoir / And for to assertayne you
 more of the Tournay, there was on eche side a stake / and at eche
 stake two kynges of armes, *with* penne and Inke and paper, to
 write the names of alle them that were yolden / for they shold nomore
 16 Tournay / The Duc of Burgoigne was on horsbak, accompanied *with*
 them with the visours / and had a visour alwey before his visage ; and
 they kepte them to-geder alway nere the kynge ; for grete desire had
 the Duc to se his worthynesse. Suche an assemble was neuir noon
 20 seen bifore / nor so many noble armes to-gedir / euery man payned
 him to haue the price / The kynge of ffraunce saw where his lady
 stode / and so did alle the remenaunt, whiche doubled their corage
 and worthynesse. This Tournay dured longe tyme ; so moche / that
 24 it was meruaile that any man might endure that / that eche of theym
 did / Ouir alle othir, the kynge of ffraunce did meruailously : he ouir-
 threwe men & horses, so that there was vnnethes any that durst
 abide his strokes. the Emperour, and they that were in the scaffoldes,
 28 were alle abasshed of the prowesse of the Duc of Burgoigne / there
 was noon to be compared with him / In like wise seid the ladies,
 and were ameruailed and sory that the kynge of Englund ¹ and the
 kynge of Scottes were of no bettir power to encountre the Duc. It
 32 is to thinke, the Duc of Burgoigne had grete ioie to se the worthy-
 nesse of his Nevewe ; and so had the Frensshemen, wenyng it were
 the Duc / saing amonges them / "oure maister is a meruailous noble
 man" / and so seide alle othir nacions that were there / and meruailed
 36 alle of him. So long endured this Tournay, til, by the Emperours
 ordenaunce, the Trumpetes blewe the retrayte, that euery man shold
*with*drawe him / there were not xxxⁱⁱ men on the Turkes side that
 might feight / but alle were sent to the stake. There were double the
 40 feighters on the kynges side of ffraunce ; for, by the seide kynge,

Sultan
Charles and
K. David are
against K.
Humphrey
and King
Philip.

The Tourney
begins.

On each side
is a stake for
the beaten
men.

King Philip
of France
does best
of all.

[leaf 114]

When the
cease is
sounded,
not 30 men
are left on
the Sultan's
side.

King Philip
is full of
hope.

Jolante is
told that she
will be his.

[1f. 114, bk.]

The Emperor
is askt to
order that,
next day, all
Tourneyers
shall unhelm.

were sent to the stake vj. kynges and viij. Dukes, & xxij Erles, wherof the yonge Turke was one / whiche at that tyme had leuer haue dyued than lyued / The kynge of Englonde and the kynge of Scottes sawe wele they coude not wynne the pryce alle daies, ffor the 4 first day the pryce was wonne fro them bothe; wherof they were right sorowfulle / than euery man drewe to his Pavillon, trist & pensiff as they might be / But the kynge of ffrance was alle in a nother thought / for he departed with good hope, as glad and ioy- 8 fulle as he might be / and made him to be vnarmed / and his vncle coude not kepe him for takyng him in his armes / whan he remembrid his grete noblesse that he had seen him do that day. Than went euery man to soper / and ouir alle the towne ranne the brute 12 on the Duc of Burgoigne / euery man seid that, sauf Le Surnome, he was the moost valiaunt man that euer they sawe / Aftir soper the ladies came in-to the halle to the daunces / and there they seide to this faire lady / "By my feith, madame, and the Duc contynue 16 thus worthyly, ye be his / wold oure lorde he were xxⁱⁱ yere younger than he is!" Some seid that, "to-morow he shalbe so wery, that he shal not mowe contynue / and if he do not, the Emperour may chose whiche of them best pleasith him / and if it so be / I suppose he 20 will knowe your wilt or he make any graunt of you" / "By my feithe," seid the faire lady, "my wilt shal be as pleasith him / and neuir other-wise shal y thynke" / As they were in such talkyng came the kynges and the princis to Courte / but ouir alle othir was 24 the Duc of Burgoigne beholden of alle folkes; & moche murmour was ther of him / somme saide "he made a nothir to tournay ¹ in his place; for certain it was not He that was to day yn the felde / it sheweth nothing in his face; for he ys as fressh as he was yester 28 even this tyme." Thise wordes multiplied so moche, that the knightes and ladies had noon othir talkyng but of him / In so moche that men spake vnto themperour therof / and saide, that "by this meane the kynges and princes might be deceyued." Wher- 32 fore they besought the Emperour / that on the morow, to put alle thing oute of suspecion, euery sholde departe oute of the felde vnhelmed / The Dukes folkes herde wele thise wordes that were spoken of their maister / for alle the halle was ful therof / and somme 36 of them went and tolde the Duc therof; and how alle folkes shold go vnhelmed out of the felde / and he made countenaunce of grete displeasir / but he had right grete ioie in his thought, hou-be-it he wold telle his nevewe no thing therof. Than remembered he / how 40

- euery kynge bare a crowne on his helme / sauynge the kynge of
 ffraunce / than toke he leue, & went home to him / and tolde him
 how many folkes spake that he bare the playne armes of ffraunce
 4 that day / and was not crowned / " wherfore it behoueth you to bere
 the crowne, or ellis to bere myne armes " / Than seid the kynge, " I am
 content to bere the crowne to-morowe " / Thus concludid, they went
 to bedde til on the morow / That mornynge, alle the princis besought
 8 the Emperour that eche one of them shold come vnhelmed before
 the ladies ; and so forth euery man go streight forth to his pavilion /
 Thiemperour agreed therto. The Duc was ware therof be tymes in
 the mornynge / and appointed him-self right richely / and sat vpone
 12 a stately Courser / his visour stille on / and whan tyme came, as the
 ordenaunce was the day bifore / euery prince came out of his pavil-
 ion aftir the blowynge of the Trumpetes ; and euery man shold haue
 come out vnhelmed / But the kynge of ffraunce came out alle armed /
 16 his helme on his hed / and his crowne theron / whan men saw him
 bere the crowne / euery man meruailed, & saide that " he aught not
 to bere it / sith he toke not on him the name of kynge " ; euery man
 spake herof / the cordes were cutte as they were the day bifore.
 20 The tourney dured long, wele foughten / & grete armes that day
 were seen / wher-thorough some dyed. Ouir l'alle othir, the Duc of
 Burgoigne bare the brute / the dedes of alle the tothir that were in
 the tourney, were not to be compared *with* his / notwithstanding
 24 the moost worshipfulle of the world were ther / he ouirthrowe man
 and horses, he racyd of helmes fro hedes / and finally he did so in
 armes, that euery man fled him ; ther was not of them that were
 ageinst him whan the Trumpetis blew the retraite, passing x. that
 28 might defende them ; and if the Trumpetes had taried a litil lenger,
 alle they on his side sholde haue founde noon to feight *with*. The
 kynge of Scottes was not brought to the stake that day, nor the
 Turke nother / the trumpetes sowned, the listes were closed. The
 32 kynge of fraunce wende to haue passid as he did the day before /
 but fferaunt came bifore him / and tolde him the crye & orden-
 aunce of themperour. The Duc of Burgoigne knewe of thies
 werkes, and was entred *withyn* the listes alle alone, wherof many
 36 folkes meruailed / The kynge of ffraunce, feling thus taken, had
 grete displeasir in his herte ; hou-be-it, he most nedes obeye, &
 came bifore the scaffold, where as the Emperour and the ladies
 were / The Duc of Burgoigne alwey folowing him / Now cometh
 40 fferaunt as nere to the scaffold as he coude, and unlacid the helme

King Phillip
agrees to
wear his
Crown.

The Second
day's Tour-
ney begins.

[leaf 115]
King Phillip
again outdoes
all other men.

King Phillip

is unhelmed
by Ferant.

The Emperor
embraces
King Philip.

[11. 115, bk.]

His French-
men cheer
him.

The Emperor
praises the
Duke of
Burgundy.

of him that he had in charge ; and assone as it was of his hede,
that he knewe it was Le Surnome, he coude not refrayne him to
kisse him / and whan the Emperour and the ladies knewe him /
they made ioie out of mesure / whan the kyng of Scottes and the 4
kyng of Englund knewe that their felaw was there, they embraced
him *with* as grete ioie as coude be thought. The Emperour coude
no lenger kepe him on his scaffold, but came downe, and lepe an
hors bak, and came to embrace Le Surnome, his special frende & 8
seruaunt. There was the preas aboute him out of nombre. Somme
saide, " beholde the outrage of this Duc ! This man is of ffraunce /
and the Duc knoweth his worthynesse, and hath made him tourney
in his place, wenyng therby to haue the faire Iolant." The Duc of 12
Burgoigne toke of his visour / and required to speke *with* the
Emperour in the presence of alle his ladies. Than came he before
the Emperour, and spake so high that alle might here him / " sir,
this same that hath tournaide, is the Kyng of Fraunce " / and tolde 16
he how he ¹departid out of ffraunce / and of the dethe of his
ffadir / seing that alle that he had done was by his commaunde-
ment / wherfore he bisought the Emperour of pardone. whan the
Emperour knewe that he was kyng of ffraunce, he saide that god 20
was Iuste. This was anon knowen ouir alle men / and in esspecialle
amonge them of ffraunce / that knewe nothings thereof afore. But
than they cried with a high voice, " Nowelt ! " clappyng their handes /
The Emperour and ladies wepte bothe for ioie & pite ; and aboue alle 24
othir, made faire Iolant grete ioie / thinking in hir-self there was
neuer womman more bounde to god / trustyng to be accompanied
with him / that hir hert moost desired / Aftir this grete, ioie euery
prince went to his pavilione. Themperour coude not wele leue of 28
embracyng and kissing the kyng of ffraunce. grete was the ioie
amonges them / and fferaunt, whan he hadde beholde his iij.
seruauntes saide that, " neuer man of his power was so mightily
serued as he had ben " / whan the Emperour behelde the Duc of 32
Burgoigne, he thought he was a passing goodly man of his yeres,
seyng, " that god had wele ioyned so grete truthe and comlynesse
in o persone ; for honorably and truly he had acqyte him to his
Nevewe." the kyng seid then, that " of long tyme had he knowen 36
his vncles trouthe ; for there was neuer fadir kynder to his childe /
than he had alway founde his vnle to him." The kyng of Eng-
land & of Scottes, the more they thought on their fortune, the more
were they abasshed & ameruailed ; for they had neuer redde in 40

romans nor in Cronicles, noon like vnto theirs. The Turke, whan he sawe this, wondird also gretly in hym-self / and thought wele, by the kynge of ffrance, the Realme of Sizile had be recouerd / therfore it was moost conuenient, & best right, that his fortune shold be to enioie it. Themperour thought this fortune a miracle¹; wherefore he made alle the belles of the towne to be rongen / and toke the kynge by the hande, & brought him to the chirche / and every man thankid god, that by his grace he had sent thise iij. kynges to their recouere, and releef of the cristen feith / and alle the straungers that herd therof, yaue god a grete lawde, holdyng it for a very miracle / Frensshmen, that had recouerd their kyng / and knewe for trouthe it was the same² that was named Le Surnome, that had done so grete a wele to the realme of Sizile, of whom the renome spred thorough alle the world / thankid god as hertly, and with a grete ioie, as was possible / Than brought themperour the kynge of ffrance to se the ladies / whiche coude not refrayne their lokes fro him while he was there, sauf the faire and good Iolant, whiche was so wele assured in euery manere, whiche bihelde him with suche wommanhode and wisdom, that neither he nor noon othir shold perceyue him thought, al-be-it she had not leste pleasir to behold him / In like wise was he as wele assured, for he thought than no place nor tyme couenable to shewe that moost touchid his hert / But whan he might, he toke leue of themperour to chaunge him, and aftir soper to come agein to se the ladies. The Emperour made to speke vnto him secretly / that he and his vncle shold come suppe with the ladies / In like wise warned he the kynge of England and of Scottes. The kynge of ffrance agreed to his commaundement without any grugge / for there was no-thinge that he desired so moche, as to be in the company of somme that shold be ther. Thus departed he, and toke fferaunt by the arme, wold he or not / and so went with him, arme in arme, thorough the towne, til he came to his logging / where as they made grete ioie / and talked of many thinges passed / and so drave forth, til tyme came they shold go to soper to the Emperour / than departed they fro his logging til he came to themperour, whiche was accompanied with the kynges afore rehersed. There were set at his boorde, himself, his wif, & his doughtir, and ij. othir grete ladies / The kynge of ffrance, of Englund, and of Scottes, and the duc of Burgoigne; and fferaunt, maugre his wille, was set there at the request of the thre kynges. At the soper, was rehersed the gouernaunce of them / how they iij.

[¹ MS. miracle]
The Emperour has all the bells in the town rung.

[² leaf 116]

He takes King Philip to see Iolante,

but she will not show her love for him.

King Philip and his friends

go to sup with the Emperour.

had ben *seruauntes* to *fferaunt* / and how they shewed them self at
 this tournay in *suche fourme*, that their first noblesse might not be
 forgotten in this Realme. thus passed forth the *soper* / And the
 Emperour saide to *fferaunt*, "that there might no *mysaventure* 4
befalle hym, *seyng* such *ijj. seruauntes* had *seruid him*" / & they
 seid, "god had sent hem *grete grace* to *serue* so good a *maister* as
 [1 *lf. 116, bk.*] he was / that, next *themperour*, there was no man *lyving* they ¹*wolde*
 be *gladder* to do *honour* and *pleasir vnto*." The *soper* passed forth 8
ioifully / *lital* was *eten* there, for they were alle *fedde with ioie*.
 The Emperour behelde the *kyng* of *ffraunce*, that his *faire sone*
 should be, and thought *wel* that god had *accomplished alle weles*
 in him. *Thempersse* thought *accordyng* to the same. This *faire* 12
lady, how *moche* so *euer* she was *reioised* in *hir thought*, *hir*
maner was *suche* that no man *coude perceyue* it ; on the *tothir side*,
 the *kyng* of *ffraunce*, in *beholdyng* *hir*, *trustid* as *wel* to *performe*
 the *ijj^{de}. day* as he had *begone* ; *wherthorough* he was so *ravisht* 16
with ioie, that he neither *eete* ne *dranke* / *Aftir soper*, *bifore* the
comyng of *othir kynges* and *princis* / the *kyng* of *ffraunce* talked
with the faire Iolante / and *askid hir*, by *hir feith*, so many *noble*
Princis as were at this *assemble* / if there were not one more than a- 20
nothir in *hir grace* / for any *thyng* that he *coude do* / he *coude*
perceyue by no *wordes* of *hir* / but that alle *hir hert & wille* was at
 the *pleasir* of *hir fadir* / *seyng* also she was *right ioyfulle* of the
grete estate that he was *yn*, *prayng* god to *sende him asmoche* 24
honour & ioie as he *coude wisshe* / he *thankid hir ful humbly* /
 and *askid hir* / if god *gaf him* that *fortune* to *come* to the
mariage of / if she *wold* not so be *aswele content* as *with a-nothir* /
 she *chaunged colour*, & *saide*, "God *gif hir grace* to *lyue* no *lenger* 28
 than she be *content* with *hym* / that *pleasith hir fadir* to *yeue hir*,
 were it be *he*, or any *othir*." *with these wordes* came *yn* many *othir*
kynges and *princes* to *themperours Court*. The *kyng* of *ffraunce*,
 of *Englond*, and of *Scottes*, went to *mette them* / and *brought them* 32
yn to the *ladies* ; the *mynstralles* *pleide* so many / that alle the *halle*
resounded / the *daunces* began / The *kyng* of *ffraunce* *toke* this
faire lady, his *maistresse*, by the *hande*, and *daunced with hir* /
euey body behelde them *gladly* / And *themperour* and the *Duc* of 36
Burgoigne talked *togedir* / and behelde this *goodly couple* *daunc-*
ying : "fforsothe," *seid the Emperour* / "here is a *mete couple* /
 god, by his *grace*, *preserue them long*" / "fforsothe" / *said the Duc* /
 [2 *MS. dis-* "If it please you to make the *mariage*, I *trowe ye shalle displeasem* 40

The Em-
 peror's guests
 are too full
 of Joy to eat.

King Philip
 talks to his
 love, Iolante.

He dances
 with her ;

and they are
 thought a fit
 couple.
 [2 *MS. dis-*
pleasem]

- them neither" / "fforsothe," seid themperour, "if it please the kyng
to take my doughtir / noon shall haue hir but he / By the orden-
aunce of this Tournay, no man [can] clayme hir of right / but if he
4 wyne alle the iij. daies / ¹and that can noman do but he / and [1 leaf 117]
though he do not / if it please him to haue hir, I wol be right
ioyfull, ffor he hath deserued a grettir rewarde / yif it were in me
to yeue it him; for y holde myn honour and this Realme, only by
8 god and him" / euery man that was in the halle spake of this matier /
and in their mynde gaf this faire lady to the kyng of ffrance. Aftir
the daunces, euery man lay downe by the ladies, and talked to-gedir /
the night came & departed them / and alle folkes went to rest / and
12 on the morow, at the houre apointed, the kynges and princes came
to the tournay / as they did the dayes bifore / The kyng of ffrance
was wele loked on / that day / & if he had done meruailes the ij.
daies bifore / it semed to alle folkes it was nothing in comparison
16 to that he did the last day; for at that day there was none that
might abide his strokes; so that by than the Trumpetes blewe the
retraite, there was not one on that othir side to feight with-alle.
Thus venguished he the Tournay by alle iij. daies / and ouir alle
20 othir next him / the kyng of Englund & the kyng of Scottes had
the preye / At the departyng of the Tournay, the Emperour sent
to alle the kynges & princes to suppe with him that night / and their
had he ordeyned the most noble and riche soper that euer had be
24 seen there bifore / thider came all folkes; and eueri man set in
ordre / a prince alwey, and a princesse, or a grete lady / Aftir soper,
the Emperour called the moost part of the noble men that were in the
halle, reseruyng them that had tournaide / and also toke vnto hym
28 the kynges of Armes / and the notable heraldes of euery prince that
there was, and went in-to another halle in Counselle, and made the
Daunces to begynne, to disport the princes the meane while / and
whan he was in his counselle, accompanied as y haue seid you / he
32 asked what he shold do / and deliuerd the ordre of the tournay; and
asked if "they knewe any man that had accomplished the trye of
this, he wold holde his promesse, without makyng lenger tale" / It
was so clere matier, that alle, of one accorde, gaf the price of alle iij.
36 daies to the kyng of ffrance. The Emperour wolde haue the witte
& thause of the ladies, and sent for the emperesse, & for the moost
part of the ladies / and the remenaunt abode stille at the Daunces
with his doughtir. Than asked he ²their aise, as he had done of [2 lf. 117, bk.]
40 the men / and anone they gaf their iugement to the kyng of

The Third
day's Tour-
ney begins.

King Phillp
surpases
himself.

He is the
First;
the Kings
of England
and Scotland
next.

The grand
Council

all adudge
the prize to
King Philip
of France.

ffraunce. Themperour herynge this, toke the Emperesse by the hande, & came in-to the halle, and toke their doughtir as she was dauncyng / bitwene them bothe, and came toward the kyng of ffraunce; and whan he saw them, he came to them. Than said 4
themperour, "Right noble & valiaunt kyng! this Tournay was ordeyned like as ye knowe / wherof the price ys youen vnto you by alle iij. daies / hou-be-it, this Tournay compellith you not to take my doughtir, but if it please you. ¶ Natheles, here y presente hir to 8
you, in keypyng my promesse / and gif you the price / & hir, if it please you to take hir." [Illumination: 1. Iolante offered to K. Philip; 2. married to him.]

The Emperor
offers his
daughter
Iolante to
King Phillip,

WHan the kyng of ffraunce sawe this present that he moost desired, he kneled donne, & saide, "my lord! of the grete 12
honour and curtesie that ye do me / of hir that is so moche worth,—first, y thanke almighti god / and right humbly y thanke your grace & the Emperesse / and to outrageous & ferrest ourseyen shold he be, that suche a present refused / and as for me, 16
I am redy to take hir / and moost glad therof of any thinge" / Than toke he the faire maide, & kissed hir / and euery man preide god to sende them long lif to-gedir, with moche honour and ioie / fforthwith was an Archebisshop called, and he ennsured them / and 20
the day of mariage was apointed the thrid day / and agein that day were cried Iustes of .xx. helmes against alle comers / at whiche day the kyng of ffraunce and alle his company apointed them as richely as was possible / The moost part of kynges & princis came to his 24
loggyng, to do him honour & company that day / than went they to the Emperours loggyng / where they fonde ¹themperesse and hir faire doughtir / accompanied with many ladies and gentilwomen redy to go to chirche. I can not reherce the grete richesse that was 28
that day shewed, in aray and in Iewels, amonge the princes and princesses / for eche was araied as riche as they conde / ye may wele thinke, the kyng of ffraunce & his company were not the werst; for, ful sory wold he haue ben to a wist any othir nacion to haue 32
passed him that day / But he and his vncler exceded in richesse, that day, alle othir princis that were there. whan he had seen the faire Iolant, he went to chirche, accompanied with many a grete 36
prince. and after was she brought to chirche; where they were married with grete ioie / and than retourned home agein to dyner / whiche was as grete and as roialle, as to such folkes belonged / The kyng of ffraunce gaf to the heraldes grete richesse, whervpone they cried "largesse" thorough the halle, as was accustomed / after the 40

who gladly
takes her,

is plighted
to her,

and 3 days
after

[leaf 118]

marries her.

boordes were taken vp / the daunces endured but a while, be cause of
the Iustes / At the Iustes, for the loue of the kynge of ffraunce and
of his wif, Themperour was on the vttir party, and the Duc of Bur-
4 goigne was on the Inne side, *with* the kynge of ffraunce / Thise
Iustes dured til it was euen / and torche light / There were iij. C.
helmes / and there were so many ladies & gentilwommen, that there
were Scaffoldes for them on eche side the felde / there had not be
8 seen bifore, grettir Iustes than tho. That day, was many an high &
noble crye of mighti kynges and princes & grete lordes. Thus
passed the day til soper tyme / & aftir soper, began the Daunces /
And there were riche monnaynges of grete princes / & many
12 riche presentes brought to this faire lady / Thus passed forth the
night, til it was tyme to go to rest / Than was the faire Iolant
brought to bed / The kyng of ffraunce taried not long aftir. Now
were there togedirs tho persones of the world that moost were to
16 be preysed / the night passed / the day came / the kynge arose /
and the quene bothe, and were araied so richely that it was meruaile
to beholde. The lordes came to se the kynge / the ladies & gentil-
women came to se the quene / what shalt I make lenger tale / this
20 fest endured xv. daies hole ; and every day, newe Iustes & Tournay /
But ¹there was neur ffeste in this worlde / but onys it must haue
an ende.

Dances
follow ;
then Jousts.
The Jousts
in honour of
K. Philip's
marriage.

The Feast
lasts 15 days.
[1 f. 118, bk.]

24 **Y**N an Euenyng, at a grete assemble, the Turke came to
themperour, and to the tothir kynges and Princes that were
there, seyng vnto them / “ My lordes, ye knowe wele that,
in trust of you / y haue lefte the lawe that I held of / and toke me
to the lawes of Ihesu crist / eche of you hath promysed me aide /
28 and withoute helpe I can not abide in myn onne Cuntre / wherupon
I require you nowe of counselle and aide ” / The princes there pre-
sent, knewe that he seid trouthe ; [&] remembryng their promesse /
advised them to sende, euery prince, [a lettre] vndir his seale, to alle
32 thestates of the Turkes lande, certifying them by the same, to take his
part, if it so were that they wold rebelle ageinst him / Thus concluded
they to sende messangers forth / In the meane tyme, avised him the
kyng of Englund / how he had ij. Sisters of grete beaute, and of
36 resonable age to be married ; wherfore he thought he coude not bettir
bestowe the one of theym, than on the kynge of Scottes, his next
neighbour, for the grete loue, and long acqweyntaunce and familiarite
that had ben bitwene them. And the tothir Suster, he thought to
40 mary to the Duc of Burgoigne / But he seid, “ verily he wold nener

The Emperor
and kings
notify to the
Turks that
they will
help him if
his subjects
rebel against
him.

The Duke of
Burgundy
declines to
marry.

Sultan
Charles's
beautiful
Sister

[¹ leaf 119]

refuses, at
first, to give
up her Faith
and marry
King Hum-
phrey of
England,

who is very
much in love
with her,

be married / nor in his youthe entendid no mariage" / And whan
the kynge vndirstode the answere of the Duc, he thought to mary
hir vnto the Turke / for he herd say the Turke had a Sustir of high
beaute, & she wold become cristen / he thought it were a metely 4
mariage for him to mary the Turkes suster, and the Turke to mary
his / Suche wordes were cast forth amonges the Princes; so that the
Emperour, and the kynge of ffrance, and the Duc of Burgoigne,
that was an inly wise man, toke the besinesse vpon them / and 8
conduyte it so that thise mariages were accorded, and a messenger
sent forth for the Turkes suster / And assoone as she might, she
came / at the commaundement of hir brothir / and whan they
knewe of hir comyng / The kynge of ffrance, the kynge of Eng- 12
lond, and the kynge of Scottes, mette with hir, & brought hir to hir
logging. And whan she was alight, and they departed / the Turke
shewed vnto hir the cause of hir sendyng for / and howe he ¹was
bicomme cristen / and How, if she wold Bicomme cristen, he had 16
married hir to right a goodly Prince, & a mighti, whiche was the
kynge of England / But the first day, the seconde, & the third after,
coude he neuer turne his suster / and whan he sawe it wold no
bettir be, he came to the Emperour and to the kyng of ffrance, the 20
kynge of England & the kynge of Scottes, and tolde them / 'how
in no wise his suster and he coude accorde'; & tolde them what
answers she made him / The kynge of England,—that be this tyme
was right amorous, & supprised with hir grete beaute,—whan he 24
herd thise tidynges was right sorowfull / and chaunged colour &
countenaunce so fer forth, that he had not a word to speke. This
espied wele bothe themperour and the kynge of ffrance / and than
seide the kynge of ffrance / "brynge hir to the Emperesse, to be 28
accompanied with the ladies here, to se if they be of any grettir
power to chaunge hir than ye / and by this meane, may she haue
some acqueyntaunce of my brother, the kyng of England; whiche,
peraventure, may so turne hir hert, that she shal pray you of that 32
ye now pray hir." Themperour and alle they lough / The Turke
saide, 'and he might by any meane, he wolde bringe hir to the
Daunces to the ladies' / he did so moche, that aftir soper he brought
hir. And whan she sawe so grete assemble of Princis & princesses, 36
she meruailed gretly, thinkyng she sawe neuer so good a sight /
She salewed the Emperour and themperesse / and alle the ladies /
and alle the kynges and princis / than began the daunces / where
she avised wele the kynge of England, & thought him right a 40

goodly knight / and a wele assured ; and there herd she y-nough
rehered of his noblesse & good maners. The ladies escorted hir a-
part to leue hir lawe / & eche seide the best they coude / but in no

the' she
thinks him
a goodly
man.

4 wise coude they conuerte hir / Thus departed she to hir logging,
whan tyme was / sone aftir, came hir brothir vnto hir / and asked hir
'how she liked the company that she had seen that night.' she said,
"right wele" / he asked hir 'how she liked the kynge of England' /

8 and her hert serued hir vnto him / she saide 'right wele, if she
might kepe hir owne feith' / othir answere coude he noon gete of
hir / Thus departed they ; and she went to bedde that night ; [then]
thought she of this goodly company she had seyne. ¹The kynge

The Sultan's
Sister wants
to keep her
own Falth.

[¹ If. 119, bk.]

12 of England was not forgotten / the more she remembrid him, the
bettir she liked him / hou-be-it her herte coude not agree for him,
nor noon othir, to leue hir feith / The kynge of England, on the
tothir side, the oftener he sawe hir, the more he loued hir / and

16 supposed wele in his mynde that he coude not bringe his purpose
aboute / wherfore he thought best / to depart. And on the morowe,
came vn-to the kynge of ffrance, and tolde him his entent / The
kynge of ffrance counseld him yit to abide / and went him self to

Then the
King of Eng-
land says
he'll go home.

20 the Turke, and tolde him / "ye ar likly to lese here the kynge of
England, for he wilt departe / for he thinkith his abidyng here
serueth him of nought / and so thinke y also / ffor thinke ye he is
a man to be kepte so long in speche? me semeth it is wele doo, ye

24 go to your suster to vndirstonde hir wille / and to take of hir this
night a ferme answere / ffor it is tyme that he be answerd one way
or othir" / "By my trouthe," seide the Turke, "it is not in my
defaute / that he is so long vnanswerd ; but to-morowe y shalt telle

28 you vtterly hir will" / Aftir this, the Turke departed, and came to
his suster, and tolde hir, "I most this night telle a playne answere
of your entent / The kynge of ffrance, the kynge of England, and
othir princis that be in this towne, wille departe / for the good wille

32 they haue vnto you and me / they haue longe kepte them here ;
wherfore me thinkith ye deale meruailously / But y pray you now,
say at ones howe ye wille be demeaned / whethir ye wille be agreeable
to their desire and myne ; or ellis y shaft lete them departe / and

The Sultan
Charles
presses his
Sister for a
favourable
answer to K.
Humphrey.

36 thanke them of their good wille they haue shewed me / how be it, if
they thus departe / by you shalt y lese the moost sure & speciale
frendes y haue in this world." whan his Suster herd him thus sey /
she knewe wele of force she most discouere hir entente touchyng

40 his alliaunce / and was so supprised that she wist not what to say /

The Sultan's
Sister is in
great doubt.

She thought, 'if she renaide not hir feith, she shold displease hir brother / and also put him in grete daunger, & losse of his frendes' / She thought also, 'if she shold leue hir feith / and take a newe, what iuarde that shold be vnto hir soule.' Thus was she a grete while 4 without speche. hir brothir presyd sore on hir alway to haue an answer / And at the laste she ¹said, "y am in a sorowfulle case / ffor ye, that be my souerain Lorde and brother, say / if y accomplissh not your pleasir / y shall cause your grete iuarde / and perauenture 8 your destruccion / and on that othir side / yf y renounce my feithe / what shal than befall of my soule" / "Be my feith," seide the Turke, "I take the perell therof on me" / "Than," quoth she, "y pray you respite me for ij. daies" / The Turke in no wise durst 12 graunte hit, til he hadde spoken with the kynge of ffraunce / Than went the kynge of ffraunce and he, to the kynge of Englonde forthis respite / and he was therto agreable, trustyng vpon a good answer. On the morowe, the Turke toke ij. or iij. notable clerkis, & went to 16 his suster, and made them to shewe hir oure feith / and they exorted hir in suche wise that she was agreable to be cristened / and the same night was she cristened by the Emperesse and the quene of ffraunce. Aftir that she was cristened, she came to se the Emperour, 20 & was there with the ladies til she was married / and the thridde day after, was the kynge of Englonde and she married to-gedir with grete solempnite and Ioie.

She asks for 2
daies' grace.

She is con-
verted by
Christian
Clerks,

and marries
K. Hun-
pley of
England.

NOW shaH y telle you of the messangers that were sent in-to 24 the Turkes land: they did their deuoirs, so that the states were assembled, and redde the letters of alle the Princes. and whan they knewe the tidynges, that their lord had taken the cristen feith / they were right sory / how-be-it they durst not make 28 no besinesse against him / for the drede they had of the promyses that alle these princes had made vnto him / wherfore, of comon assent, they made a lettir to the Emperour and to the Turke, & to alle the princes that were there / puttyng them in knowlache / that, 'as for 32 the chaunge of his feith, they remitted that [to] his conscience; they were content to obey him on suche condicion, that noon shold be constreyned to leue his feith / for that wold they neuer do' / whan the messangers came agein, the Emperour and alle the kynges and 36 princis were wele content with their message. The suretees were taken bitwene them / Alle this done & performed, euery prince toke hede to his owne besinesse / The kynge of ffraunce desired moche to go in-to his Realme. The Turke desired to mary his wif / The 40

The Sultan's
subjects

require only
that they
may keep
their old
Faith.

kyng of Scottes in like wise / wherfore euery man wold departe
 from the Emperour / On a day, at good leiser, they came to the
 1 Emperour / and shewed him their desire; wherfore he was right [1 lf. 120, bk.]
 4 sory / but he knewe wele it most nedes be so. Than asked he
 what they wold do. The kyng of Englund spake first, & seid The large
Sicilian
gathering is
to break up.
 he had promysed his ij. Sustres in mariage, as he knewe wele /
 whiche he wold fayne perfourme. Themperour desired the kyng
 8 of Englund & the kyng of Scottes, to pray the kyng of ffraunce to
 abide stille with him / "fforsothe," saide the kyng, "sith my first
 departyng oute of ffraunce to come in-to the werres of Sizile, sawe
 y not my lady my moder" / "forsothe," saide themperour, "ye
 12 haue grete reason than to se hir" / The kyng of Englund than
 besought the kyng of ffraunce to be at the mariage of his ij.
 Sustirs / "fforsothe," seide the kyng of ffraunce, "I shalt, with right
 good wille." Themperour, hering alle thise apointementes, saide :
 16 "trewly, y hold my lond by god & you iij.; and therfore, my sone,
 y wille first go with you in-to your Realme / & fro thens in-to the
 Realme of Englund, to the mariage of the kinges Sisters; & so come
 home thorough the Realme of Scotland, & conduyte the yong Quene;
 20 & fro thens come hider agin, where y shalt ende the remenaunt of
 my daies." This conclusion was taken bitwene him, the Turke, &
 the kynges, & the Duc of Burgoigne. Than euery man ariedied
 him to departe; and alle on a day departed they. The kyng of
 24 Englund, his wif, & the Turke, departid to Englund / The king of
 Scottes in-to Scotland / Themperour, & the kyng of ffraunce & their
 wives, went in-to ffraunce / Now behoueth it to reherce how euery
 man sped his Iournay. The King
and Queen
of England,
and the
Sultan, go
to England;
K. David to
Scotland;
the rest to
France.
 28 **F**irst shalle we speke of the kyng of ffraunce / At his depart-
 ing, he sent to assertayne the Realme of ffraunce, & specially
 vnto his moder, of his comyng, & the trouthe of alle his for-
 tune / And whan the messangers came there / it can not be writen,
 32 the ioie that was than in the Realme of ffraunce. But ouir alle othir
 this disconsolate moder, the Quene of ffraunce, was glad whan she
 herd tidynges of hir right dere sone / Hou-be-it, she toke displeasir
 that he had be in ffraunce, & not spoken with hir. And whan she
 36 first herd ²tidynges of his comyng, she said / "Allas, my childe! if
 thi good ffadir had knowen the alyve, he had yit lyued / or ellis
 departid out of this world more at his ease / But now, do god by
 me his pleasir; so that ones I might se the or y dye" / Suche
 40 wordes saide the good olde Quene of ffraunce, moder to the kyng / [2 leaf 121]
longs to see
her Son be-
fore she dies.

Ouir alle the realme they range belles & made processions, thankynge
 god of his grete grace; for thei neuer trusted to haue hadde the ioie
 of presence of their yong king / fulle grete ioie had thei also of his
 mariage, & of the good renoune of their yong Quene / This meane 4
 tyme, came themperour & the kinge of fraunce into the Realme / &
 at their first entryng, ther mette them many estates & moche people.
 & whan he came amonges the people, they cried "Nowell" with an
 high voice, yelding thank to god on their knees, ioynynge their 8
 handes to hevinwarde / whan the Emperour & his wif sawe in his
 Realme suche people in suche estate, their hertes were alle renewed
 with ioie. Aftir, came the nobles, in the moost & best biseyn com-
 pany that was seen there bifore. There was the clergie without 12
 nombre, solempnely & honourably set in ordre, whiche, next the
 comon people, salewed the kyng, preysynge god of his agein-comyng,
 whiche was not without wepyng / Than came the noble folkes,
 accompanied as is bifore reherced / and did vnto him their 16
 reuerences / and by one of them were the wordes saide bifore them
 alle, a grete processe / preisyng god of his retourne / grete was the
 preise there. And at thentryng of the Towne, the stretes were
 hanged / before theire houses were the ladies & gentilwommen / 20
 burgeises & maydens; grete was the ioie there. The processions
 were alwey bifore the kyng / And the Emperour and he alighted
 at the chief chirche / and so did the ladies, to praise and thanke
 god. Aftirwarde the kyng conueyed themperour to his loggyng / 24
 and than retourned to his owne. The towne made to the kyng &
 the Quene grete presentes; & so they did to themperour & them-
 presse. Thus was the kinge & themperour receyued in euery place
 they came to in the Realme / and whan the Emperour came to 28
 Paryce, he and his folkes alle meruailed of the gret Richesse they
 sawe there / the kyng brought him to the palice / where as the
 Quene his moder, gretly accompanied with ladies & gentilwommen,
 mette with themperour & themperesse. But whan she sawe hir 32
 sone, she had no power to susteyne hir-self / for the ioie she had /
 and forthwith felt in swoone, wherof themperour & themperesse
 were right so rowfulle / but ouir alle othir, the king was moost sory /
 & brought þe Themperour to his chambre, & forthwith went to his 36
 moder, whiche he fonde somewhat recouerd. & whan he saw hir, he
 kneled downe, and fulle humbly axed hir mercy / and besought hir /
 that it pleased hir to take som payne to make chere to themperesse
 & to hir doughtir / The quene, that was right feble, saide vnto him / 40

King Philip,
with his
Queen and
the Em-
peror, enters
France,

to his folks'
joy.

The clergy

and nobles
greet them;

so do the
burgesses
and maidens.

They give
presents to
the King.

His Mother
swoons for
joy on seeing
him.

[1 ff. 121, bk.]

- “my sone, sith that y haue seen you a lyve bifore my dethe, I am
 now content that god do by me as it pleasith him / Neuirtheles, I
 shal make the best chere y can; but trewly my lymmes may not
 4 yit susteyne me; wherfore y pray you sende for my faire doughtir,
 your wif, that y may se hir” / and whan she behelde hir, she thought
 hir the fairest creature that euir she sawe / & made as moche of hir
 as she coude / At night, the Emperour and themperesse supped in
 8 their chambre. The king & the Quene supped *with his modir* / whiche
 might not ete that soper tyme, for ioie she had of them bothe /
 That night, were brought grete presentes by them of Parice / bothe
 to the Themperour & to Themperesse / & to the kyng & to the
 12 Quene / &, whan tyme was, alle men went to rest / til on the morow /
 they rose vp at good tyme, & herd diuine seruice / and than went
 to dyner / And whan they had dyned / the Iustes began / It semed
 that tyme that alle the world was in ioie / This ffeste endured the
 16 space of an hole moneth. The olde Quene reioysed hir so now, that
 she put oute of mynde alle passed sorowes / Now came the tyme
 that they most depart, to to go the mariage in Englund. The kinge
 led *with him* his moder, to cause hir take som disport & ioie / for
 20 longe tyme had she be *without any* / Themperour, thoroughout alle
 the Realme, was fested in euery Cite, and in euery grete princes
 house / that lay in his way / til he came to the departyng out of
 ffrance / where as he was as honourably conduyted, as he was
 24 receyued at his first comyng. Now passeth he the see / & landid
 at Dover / where as the kyng of Englund, and his wif, and the
 Turke, resceyued them *with grete honour*; & with the Quene were
 the kynges ij. Susters / that were right faire / The kyng of Scottes
 28 was not yit come / but he taried not long aftir / ffor the day of his
 mariage was set or he went out of Sizile. There resceyued the
 kyng of Englund, Themperour and Themperesse, the kyng of
 ffrance, & the ij. Quenes *with grete honour* / and, as long as they
 32 were in the Realme, wold suffre them, nor noon of them, to pay for
 no thing that they spent / Then rode ¹they til they came to
 London; and in euery place Themperour and his company wel-
 comed, as belonged to their estates. And whan they came to
 36 London, The kyng of ffrance was inly glad to se the richesse and
 estate that he sawe there / & how nobly & honourably Themperour
 was resceyued ther. Sone aftir their comyng, came the kyng of
 Scottes, whiche was mette *with* / by the kynges & princes that were
 40 in the Towne, and was right highly & honourably resceyued. The

King Phillip
and his
Queen sup
with his
Mother.

Jousts begin.

The Festival
lasts a
month.

The King
and Queen of
France land
at Dover,

[1 leaf 122]
and ride to
London.

K. Humphrey's Sisters marry the Sultan and the King of Scotland. The Marriage Festival lasts 15 days.

The Emperour promises to

give back to the Sultan the Turkish towns he took (p. 155).

The Emperour and the Kings of France and England visit Scotland.

The Emperour's daughter, Queen Iolante, bears many fair children.

day came, that the Turke and the kyng of Scottes shold be maried to the kyng of Englonde's susters / A meruailous grete feste there was, and a riche & a wele serued / The Iustes & festes were grete by many daies. The feste endured xv. daies / Than departed them-
 perour & the kyng of ffrance. The princes & the lordes of Englonde, that had lefte their childre with the kyng whan he departid fro his fadir / made a grete request vnto the Turke / that there might be a serche thorough his land, if any of their childre 8 were lyving / sayng that they wold with right good wille pay their fynauce / The kyng of Englonde required him right hertly for the same. The Turke promysed him to do asmoche as was possible
 therin / The Emperour, that knewe wele that alle his conquest and 12 good fortune was comen him, next goddes helpe, by the thre kynges present, and for the loue that he had to the kyng of Englonde, he saide to the Turke / "the aliaunce that ye haue with the kyng of Englonde, shalt make you nowe to recouere the places that y haue 16 within your land / ffor now ye be his brothir, y yelde and yeue vnto you them frely agein / wherfore say gramercy to your brothir." The Turke right humbly thankid the Emperour, and so did the kyng of Englonde also / Nowe cometh the tyme of Themperours 20 departyng / The kyng of Scottes besought him to take his way thorough Scotland / and besought his ij. felawes that they wold conduyte the Emperour thider / and desired the Turke in like wise. Themperour and alle thise kynges agreed to the kynges of Scottes 24 request / Thus departed they fro londone / and til they were out of the Realme / the kinge of Englonde wold not lete them be chargid with nothing that they toke / And whan they came in-to Scotland, they were there right wele and honourably resceyued, & gretly 28 fested ouir alle the Realme / Thus were they thre wekis in passing thorough the Realme. And many grete festis & Tournais / And whan the Emperour saw thise iij. seruauentes, that so long had
 [1 lf. 122, bk.] serued¹ him / he was right ioifult of their estate & puissaunce / and 32 thought his doughter wele vred / so did he the Realme of Sizile, & desired no thinge so moche / as to se some childre of his doughtir biforn his dethe / god graunted his request / for he sawe y-nough come of hir, as faire childre as euer were borne / whiche did aftir, 36 grete thinges, as men may finde in Stories of ffrance. There departed he & his ioifult company / at whiche departyng was remembred more sorow than ioie / whan the Emperour shold say fare wele, he coude not speke of a grete while ; but at last, whan 40

he might speke, he saide that, daies of his lyve, had he neuer be so long to-gedir in ioie & wele / euery man toke leve of him / And whan his faire doughtir sholde take hir leve of him / he toke hir
4 in his armes, and stode so a long while, & nouthur of them coude speke a worde / And whan the kyng of ffrance saw that / he made the departyng / and said to themperour / that at any tyme that it pleasid him, she shold come se him / than brought he hir to
8 the Emperesse / and nouthur of them coude wele loke on othir for wepyng. Than departed the kyng them, like as he had done themperour and hir. Than went she in-to hir chambre, accompanied with many ladies & gentilwomen / Then the Emperour & them-
12 peresse departed / and the Turke and his wif in his company / The king of ffrance, Englund, and of Scottes, conveied Themperour, & than toke their leve / at whiche departyng was grete sorowe; and eche embraced othir ful louyngly. Whan they were departed,
16 Themperour, the Turke, and fferaunt, kepte their streight course in-to Sizile / and passed forth the tyme with talkyng of suche adventures as they had seen in their daies / & sped so wele that they came in-to Sizile / the Turke taried there but litil / but went home in-to
20 his owne Cuntre, and his wif with him / where he was right worshipfully resceyued, for dred of the two kynges that he was alied with / Than made he grete serche thorough alle the Realme for the childe of Englund, and founde the moost parte of them, so that ther
24 lakked not passyng two / Than made he them to be bayned, and kepte aswele as they coude / til they were agein in their strengthe and colour. than horsed he eche one of them, and apointed them in the best wise, and sent them in-to Englund, without payng of any
28 ransom / and sent letters vnto his brother of Englund, & ¹this present withall / wherof the kyng was ioifult as he might be / and gretely thanked the Turke / and sent him agein grete giftes. Now were the ffadirs & the modirs in grete ioie, that hadde agein their
32 children.

THe kyng of ffrance, aftir the departyng of Themperour, abode there but a while / and the night before his departyng, supped alle thise iij. kynges to-gedre, & there made assurance & promesse, eche to othir / that neuer noon of them shold faile othir; but that eche shold loue othir as brethern, and eche take othirs quarell as his owne. On the morowe, departed the kyng of ffrance / the kyng of Englund & the kyng of Scottes conueied
40 him / and at the departing there was many a sorowfull embrace.

The Emperour
and Empress

return to
Sicily.

The Sultan
and his
English wife
go back to
Turkey,

set free all
the English
children
there, and
send them
home.

[¹ leaf 123]

The Kings of
France and
England quit
Scotland.

yng / for ful glad wold they haue ben to haue contynued the
 remenaunt of their lyves to-gedre, if it might so be / but eche of
 them was of suche estate / that their besinesse and charge was
 suche / that thei might not contynue to gedre, which sore for- 4
 thought them alle / whan the kynge of ffrance, the Quene, & their
 company were shipped / the wynde serued them so wele / that
 within litil while they landed at Sclyse. The Erle of fflaundes
 herd of his comyng, and met with him there / and made him grete 8
 chere & feest / and so forth brought him to Bruggys / and there
 made him alle the chere that was possible vnto him / The kynge, at
 his departyng, gaf him grete giftes / And whan the kynge came in 12
 to ffrance / he forgate not his good Hoste at Tolet in Spayne / nor
 his Nevewe, nor his wif / that longe had logged him / for he thought
 it was reason, now he was of suche estate & power, to remembre
 them that had so moche done for him / Wherefore he sent vnto them,
 assertaynyng them who he was that they had logged, praing them 16
 alle to come vnto him / And whan they spake with the messenger /
 & had verrily vnderstande his message / they were alle supprised
 with ioie / and in alle haste possible arredied them to go vnto the
 kinge / whiche, at their comyng, made them passing grete chere / 20
 and thanked them of the grete goodnesse they had shewed him in
 his disease / and gaf vnto eche of them / of land / possessions and
 offices, y-nough for them, and those that shold come of them, to lyve
 [1 lf. 123, bk.] alway in honour / Aftir thise tidynges thus done, ¹the olde Quene 24
 of ffrance contynued the remenaunt of her daies with grete ioie in
 goode & perfit lif. The Duc of Burgoigne coude not departe from
 his Nevewe / The kinge, & the Quene his wif, contynued to-gedre
 many yeres / & eche loued othir aswele as was possible / and serued, 28
 loued, & dred god, helde the Realme alle their lif in grete Iustice,
 peas, & tranquillite, and had children to their pleasir / The kynge of
 Scottes departed from the kynge of Englonde, and brought his wif
 home in-to Scotland / and bothe the king of Englonde, and he, & 32
 their wyues, contynued in many yeres to-geder / & had children,
 eche of them, suche as they were aftir right ioyfulle of / and helde
 their Reaume in grete Iustice & peas / and their children contynued
 in the same aftir their daies, hauyng moo Reaumes to gouerne than 36
 their fadirs had / wherof this storie makith noo mencion. But y
 suppose the Cronykells of the Reaume reherceth the noblesse of
 them / Themperour lyved but a while aftir / Than felle the Reaume
 of Sizile to the kynge of ffrance, by reason of his wif / wherof he 40

The King
and Queen
of France go

thro' Bruges

to France.

K. Philip
rewards his
old Host at
Toledo.

King David
and his
English
Queen go
home to
Scotland,
have chil-
dren, and
live happily.

The Emperour
dies, and
Sicily falls

toke the possession. The Turke helde fermely the lawes of Ihesu
 criste / and many of his Reaume / But the moost part wold neur
 leve their feith / but he lyued not long aftir / nor neuer hadde childe
 4 by his wif / & aftir his dethe, was neuer goddis [lawe] kepte nor
 dred in that Cuntre / wherfore she went in-to Englund agein / and
 contynued the Remenaunt of hir lif with hir brothir.

to King
Philip of
France.

The Sultan's
English
widow comes
home to
England.

Thus endith this Boke, whiche hath ben translated with peyne,
 8 for the length of tyme sith alle thise thinges felle. And vndir the
 Boke was written,

Si fortuna tonat, caueto mergi.

Si fortuna iuuat, caueto tolli.¹

¹ A much later hand has written above these 2 verses, 4 others as prose:—

“by faith, we please the lord /
 by faith, we are set free /
 by faith we work the will of god,
 faith will not idell bee.”

Note to page 136, line 5.

Poo or Peacock.—In the 14th century Chanson de geste of the *Vœux du Paon* (MS. Addit. Brit. Mus. 16,956, copied from a MS. No. 6985 (?) in the National Library at Paris: P. Paris *Manuscrits Français* iii. 106, A.D. 1840), “Porrus shoots the peacock (73 b.); it is served up at table, and Cassamus calls on all the knights to make their vows upon it (f. 74 b). ‘Elyot,’ a damsel of high degree, in the service of Fezomé (daughter of Godifer), carries it round; the vows are made, and the peacock is eaten (ff. 75-82 b).” Ward’s *Catalog of Romances in Brit. Mus.* i. 147.

GLOSSARY.

BY MR. THOMAS AUSTIN.

- A, *interj.* ah! 8/18, 34.
A, *pron.* he, 63/6, 109/7, 111/9.
A, *vb.* have, 4/6, 69/28.
Abielde, *vb. t.* habiled, dressed, 38/22;
abiled, *pp.* 50/28; abile, *inf.* 38/22.
Abused, *vb.* ill-used, 16/34.
Accompany, *vb.* take associates to, 180/
39.
Amated, *pp.* dismayed, overcome, 66/
34. See *Mate*.
Amegred, *pp.* emaciated, 9/36. Fr.
amaigrir.
Amenyssht, *pp.* diminished, 4/9.
Amonest, *vb.* admonish, warn, 5/12.
O.Fr. *admonester*.
And, *conj.* if, 7/7, 64/14.
Anoon, *adv.* anon, 75/30.
Arnee, *sb.* army, 40/5. Fr. *armée*.
See *Navee*.
Armes, *sb.* do arms, fight, 61/11, 62/5.
Fr. *faire armes*.
Arowblast, *sb.* arblast, cross-bow, 42/
30.
Artrye, *sb.* artillery, 40/38; Arthery,
76/30.
Aryuail, *sb.* arrival, landing-place, 41/
10.
As and, as if, 13/37.
Ascried, *vb.* challenged, 97/21.
Asserteyne, *vb.* inform, 4/11, 38/3.
Assured, *pp.* trained, 34/24, 193/18, 199/
1. Comp. Fr. *assurer un oiseau, i. e.*
a hawk, and also see *Ensured*. As-
surance is a *sine quâ non* of breeding:
—'Be bold, be bold, in everything be
bold, Be not too bold.'
Aventure, *sb.* hazard, peril, 3/9, 66/12.
Aught, *vb.* owed, 94/4.
Ayenst, *prep.* a. hym, before him, on his
entry, 19/14.
THREE KINGS' SONS.
Bargette, *sb.* small barge, 41/16. O.Fr.
bargette.
Be, *prep.* by, be than = by the time that,
68/27.
Beamnes, *sb.* trumpets, 75/8.
Beil, *vb.* befell, 2/23.
Behelde, *vb.* looked, desired, 33/38.
Belefte, *pp.* left, 13/31; bilefte, 165/39.
Bien venu, *sb.* welcome, 131/35. Fr.
bien-venue.
Boorde, *sb.* table, 128/34, 132/13.
Brake, *vb.* b. their einbussmentes,
comp. break cover, 30/37.
Brayng, *sb.* groaning, 12/15.
But, unless, 168/14; but yif, but if, un-
less, 168/8.
By & by, at once, 167/39.
Castell, *sb.* somer Castells, 44/30. Per-
haps read 'fore C.'
Ceason, *sb.* season, 14/26, 21/20.
Chapelet, *sb.* chaplet of beads: comp.
Le chapelet se défile (of people falling
away), 25/1.
Chase, *vb.* chose, 68/3.
Chaunge, *vb. t.* he chaunged him,
changed his clothes, 178/35.
Chesse, *sb.* chess, 10/19.
Chierte, *sb.* affection, 162/7. O.Fr. *chierté*.
Cloos, *adj.* close, 30/6.
Condite, *pp.* conducted, 94/23; condited,
94/14: conduyte, *vb.* conduct, manage,
9/5; *pp.* 72/9.
Conduyt, *sb.* conduct, charge, 7/12.
Costeyde, *vb. ?* directed themselves, as
mariners did by the coast, 49/1.
Costeyng, steering, 48/39. Fr. *côtoyer*.
O.Fr. *costeier*.
Credence, *sb.* credentials, 22/18, 24/121.
98/31.

Cure, *sb.* yn c., careful, 16/7.

Cured, *pp.* cared for, 8/26.

Currou, *sb.* scout, 15/9, 21/26. Fr. *coureur*.

Daies of my lif, all the days of my life, 159/33.

Damageous, *adj.* injurious, 77/19. O.Fr. *damajos*.

Daunger, *sb.* haue him . . in d. = have him at his mercy, 102/5, 128/31.

Deadly, *adv.* in a deadly way, 169/38.

Demainde, *vb.* it is no d. = it is no question, 72/14.

Departir, *sb.* departure, 27/37.

Depnesse, *sb.* deepness, depth, 41/17.

Despense, *sb.* expense, 26/21; dispence, 89/33.

Despurueu, ill off (translated dispurveyed on p. 19), 9/24, 19/11. Fr. *dépouru*.

Diffended, *vb.* prevented, 146/11.

Differed, *pp.* parted from, 102/5.

Diligence, *sb.* pains, duty, 43/9, 14.

Discomfortable, *adj.* uncomfortable, 31/38.

Discomfortid, *pp.* afflicted, 11/38. Fr. *déconforté*.

Disherite, *pp.* deprived of his inheritance, 1/17.

Dispende, *vb.* spend, 101/23.

Dispureaunce, *sb.* dispurveyance, destitution, lack (of children), 25/34.

Dispuruaide, *adj.* dispurveyed, unprovided, 4/19, 19/9.

Doket, *sb.* ducat, six shillings and eightpence, 108/6.

Doule, *sb.* dole, grief, 77/37. Fr. *deuil*.

Draught, *sb.* shot, range of a weapon, 42/30, 44/33.

Dredefulle, *adj.* dreadful, full of fear, 152/24.

Dressid, *pp.* prepared, 164/1.

Dressith, *vb.* applieth, turneth, 81/3.

Dyanant, *sb.* diamond, 163/19. Fr. *diamant*.

Elegged, *pp.* alleged, 100/22.

Embandon, *vb.* abandon, 88/13.

Emploiede, *vb.* applied to, continued, 13/40.

Enclosed, *pp.* shut up, straitened, 151/11.

Enewred, *pp.* inured, hardened, 2/30.

Enlargissing, *sb.* enlargement, release, 102/1.

Enquerre, *sb.* enquiry, 63/22. O.Fr. *enquerre*.

Ensured, *pp.* trained, 10/18. See *Assured*.

Entend, *vb.* listen to, attend to, 12/12. Fr. *entendre*.

Entremete, *vb.* meddle, 7/3. Fr. *s'entremettre*.

Entreprise, *vb.* undertake, 9/10; entreprynse, 4/22, 6/38.

Erste, *adv.* noon erste, not sooner, 19/18.

Escope, *vb.* escaped, 46/9, 58/27.

Eurous, *adj.* fortunate, happy, 35/4, 38/26; ewrous, 101/2. Fr. *heureux*.

Ewred, *adj.* destined, fortunated, 62/23.

Feliship, *sb.* escort, company of troops, band, 28/23, 31/33, 45/6.

Fenyrer, *sb.* February, 9/20, 27/37. Fr. *février*.

Fille, *vb.* fell, 143/40.

Fleer, *sb.* fugitive, 149/7.

Florence, *sb.* florin (Sicilian florin is 2s. 6d.), 155/19.

Forerider, *sb.* advanced rider, 14/33; forrider, 31/34.

Fors, no fors = no matter, 171/27. Fr. *force*.

Fortrained, *adj.* tired out, 31/19.

Fote, *sb.* foot (Proverb), 29/5.

Fronters, *sb.* frontiers, 28/32.

Frussh, *sb.* burst, 15/27. O.Fr. *froisser*.

Fynaunce, *sb.* ransom (used also in Romance of *Partenay*, l. 1853), 20/39, 93/13, 94/6, 95/11.

Fyne, *sb.* end, 8/17. Fr. *fin*.

Gabbid, *pp.* talked idly, lied, 32/12. Comp. Fr. *gaber*.

Golde, *sb.* gold, 18/24; goold, 13/21.

Gonne shotte, gunshot, 42/33; gownes, guns, 75/34.

Grehounde, *sb.* greyhound, 30/30.

Gressith, *vb.* grazeth, 112/13.

Half, *sb.* at the lest h. = at least, 92/26.

Before 'half' (92/8), words were probably left out by the MS. copyist.

Hardies, *sb.* boldness, 23/30. Fr. *hardiesse*.

Herbegeour, *sb.* harbinger, marshal, 178/3; herbeiour, 53/31.

Hoolde, *vb.* hold, 51/10.

Hou . . . someuer, howsoever, 8/15.

Humbles, *sb.* humblesse, humility, 35/39.

- Induce, *vb.* introduce, induct, 2/16.
 Infortune, *sb.* misfortune, 1/23, 45/37.
 Fr. *infortune*.
 Journey, *sb.* battle, fight, 15/31, 32/29.
 Fr. *ournée*.
 Inbards, *sb.* jeopardy, 78/13; inbardy, 169/25.
 Inbarde, *vb.* jeopard, 171/26.
 Labores, *sb.* labourers, ? 'laboreres,' 97/33, 102/15.
 Large, *adj.* bountiful, free-handed, 164/15; a large half houre = a full h. h., 33/27.
 Large, at their = at large, 163/2.
 Lawe, *sb.* faith, 132/9.
 Leest, *adv.* least, 17/29.
 Lette, *vb.* hinder, prevent, 70/18.
 Lene, *sb.* leave, haue l. = have taken l., 162/11; liberty to go, 162/31.
 Leue, *vb.* leave, 29/27; leueth, *imp.* leave off, 119/16; leue of, leave off, 119/32.
 Lene, *sb.* live, 29/28; leuyth, liveth, 11/39.
 Leve, *vb.* believe, 151/22.
 Loos, *sb.* praise, 17/23, 117/36. *Fr.* *los*.
 Lyuerey, *sb.* delivery, 53/6.
 Make, *sb.* mate, 63/8.
 Male-eurus, *adj.* unhappy, unlucky, 60/17. *Fr.* *malheureux*, *O.Fr.* *maleureus*.
 Malyncolious, *adj.* melancholy, 79/16. *O.Fr.* *melancolious*.
 Maner, *sb.* manuer (manners), politeness, 33/8; manere, 29/1; the manere, 36/18. *Fr.* *manière*.
 Marchers, *sb.* lords of the marches, 6/9.
 Marches, *sb.* borders, 6/37, 9/26.
 Mate, *adj.* mortified, downcast, 79/22. *Fr.* *maté*.
 Maugre, *sb.* ill-will, 81/12, 180/29. *Fr.* *maugré*, *mal gré*.
 Mette, *vb.* meet, 179/33; met, 179/34.
 Meyne, *sb.* attendants, household, 88/7. *O.Fr.* *maisnée*, *meyné*.
 Mischief, *sb.* mishap, at a m., in evil plight, 52/28. *O.Fr.* *meschief*.
 Moorning, *vb.* mourning, 7/26.
 Moost, *adv.* most, 13/28, 30.
 Most, *vb.* must, 21/19.
 Muster, *sb.* make his musters (of knights), watch his arms, 156/24.
 Mysbeleue, *sb.* misbelief, heresy, 13/7.
 Navee, *sb.* navy, 40/13. *O.Fr.* *navie*.
 Neurirles, nevertheless, 65/40.
 Noblè, nobley, *sb.* magnificence, dignity, 68/5, 179/21.
 Non, *sb.* noon, 92/5.
 Nounpareil, nonpareil, matchless, 55/28.
 Nowell, cry (Nowell is also used by Chaucer), 192/23. *Fr.* *crier Noël*, cry Christmas (used for a wished-for thing), and much like 'Hurrah.'
 Obeisaunce, *sb.* obedience, 4/22.
 Of, *adv.* off, 2/36, 53/2.
 Of, *prep.* for, like *Fr.* *de*, 35/33.
 On, *prep.* used like *Fr.* *sur*, conquer on . . ., 72/11.
 Ordeyned, *pp.* cared, prescribed for, looked to, 19/12.
 Othe, *vb.* swear, 163/2.
 Ouirthrewe, *vb.* was overthrown, 16/18. See also *Conquest of Ireland*, 62/21.
 Out, *vb.* get out, 6/22.
 Pame, *sb.* tennis, 37/25. *Fr.* *paume*.
 Party, *sb.* game, match, 67/7. *Fr.* *partie*, *tenir la partie*.
 Pavis, *sb. pl.* large shields for covering body, 52/12. *Fr.* *pavois*.
 Peas, *sb.* peace, 4/3; pees, 1/7. *O.Fr.* *pais*.
 Peisaunt, *adj.* weighty, 25/8. *Fr.* *pesant*.
 Perdicion, *sb.* destruction, 68/32.
 Perdurable, *adj.* everlasting, eternal, 7/32. *Fr.* *perdurable*.
 Peyne, *sb.* pain, trouble, work, 69/7.
 Pleasir, *sb.* pleasure, 6/6, 17/33. *Fr.* *plaisir*.
 Point, *sb.* break, 59/28, 67/13. *Fr.* *point du jour*.
 Poo, *sb.* peacock, 136/5, etc.
 Premeuer, *sb.* promoter, 6/38.
 Purceuant, *sb.* pursuivants, 32/28.
 Recomfort, *sb.* comfort, 11/28.
 Recomfort, *vb.* comfort, 12/8.
 Recouerir, *sb.* recovery, 84/39, 86/13.
 Recoured, *pp.* recovered, 22/22.
 Recured, *pp.* recovered, made their way back, 124/29.
 Redeles, *adj.* senseless, 70/30.
 Reise, *vb.* raise, levy, 91/14.
 Renay, *sb.* deny, 102/14; rennaye, 158/22. *Fr.* *renier*, *Lat.* *renegare*.
 Renome, renone, *sb.* renown, 4/1, 159/22. *Fr.* *renon*.
 Renomee, *sb.* renown, 98/25. *Fr.* *renomée*.

Rescous, *sb.* rescue, 125/23; rescouse, 125/5; rescuse, 46/1, 69/7. O.Fr. *rescoussse*.

Resort, *vb.* retire, 157/15; resorted, returned, 76/28.

Ressplendisshed, *vb. int.* glittered, 123/8. Fr. *resplendir*.

Retourned, *vb. t.* turned, 16/16. Fr. *retourner*.

Roode, *vb.* rode, 75/33.

Rought, *vb.* recked, 155/12.

Russet, *vb.* ? rushed, 60/10.

Rynage, *sb.* beach, shore, 40/16. Fr. *rivage*.

Sad, *adj.* sober, 24/18.

Sacred, *pp.* consecrated, 86/36. Fr. *sacré*.

Salowed, *vb.* saluted, 104/36. Fr. *saluer*.

Sauffcondite, *sb.* safe conduct, 93/40. Fr. *sauvconduit*.

Saute, *sb.* assault, 52/12.

Sawe, *prep.* save, except, 87/25.

Scutes, *sb.* florins (see p. 72), 71/14.

Fr. *écu*, so called from the shield of arms on it. Here it is the small *écu*, or half-crown.

Serpentyne, *sb.* serpentine, gun with bore of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches, 40/38.

Showre, *sb.* storm, tempest, shower, 131/11.

Somer, *sb.* sumpter, 53/39. Fr. *sommier*.

Sowde, *vb.* pay, 4/27. Fr. *souder*.

Sowne, *sb.* swoon, 11/24.

Spense, *sb.* expense, 122/14.

Spore, *vb.* spur, 49/15.

Spradde, *pp.* spread, 38/8.

Sprynge, *sb.* spring of day, like *point*, 140/36.

Stale, *vb.* stole, 152/25.

Steerne, *sb.* helm, 60/10.

Suffised, *pp.* contented, 8/38.

Surely, *adv.* in safety, 177/6.

Surmountour, *sb.* surpasser, exceller, 177/9.

Surnome, *pp.* surnamed, 36/39. Fr. *sur-nommé*.

Surtee, *sb.* affidavit, treaty, 107/40. Fr. *sureté*.

Swone, *sb.* swoon, 39/25.

Sy, *vb.* saw, 15/34.

Taberyne, *sb.* tabor, 40/24. O.Fr. *tabourin*.

Tain, *num. adj.* one, 14/31.

Taklee, *pp.* tackled, rigged, 81/32.

Taried, *vb.* detained, 10/27.

Than, *conj.* by than = by when, by the time that, 68/27, 152/15.

There as = where, 13/19. See *Where as*.

Titinges, *sb.* ? thinges, things, 109/39.

To, *prep.* on board; to shippe = aship, 39/37.

Toppis, *sb.* tops (of the masts), 44/30.

To-scrag, *pp.* scratched, 130/9.

Touchid, *vb. t.* to, touched, 25/22.

Tough, *conj.* though (note pronunciation), 11/14.

Trapoures, *sb.* trappings, 185/10. Fr. *trappure*.

Treter, *sb.* traitor, 18/13.

Trist, *adj.* sad, 26/36. Fr. *triste*.

Trussid, *pp.* packed, 168/28. O.Fr. *trosser*, *torser*.

Vacche, *sb.* watch, 74/39.

Valet, *sb.* servant, 30/26.

Vesselt, *sb. pl.* vessels, 63/35.

Vigours, *adj.* vigorous, 20/15.

Vndrowned, *pp.* unsunk, 42/34.

Vnsayne, *pp.* unseen, 166/21.

Vntolde, *vb.* did not tell, left untold, 174/30.

Vp, *adv.* they founde vp, 53/24. Comp. hunt up.

Vred, *pp.* well ured = fortunate, happy, 145/15.

Vrous, *adj.* happy, 181/14.

Wacche, *sb.* the belle of the wacche, 123/3. Comp. τοῦ κώδωνος παρενεχθέντος, Thuc. iv. 135. London Watchmen also carried bells.

Warte, *sb.* ward, warder, 14/32.

Weeles, *sb.* weals, goodnesses, 133/32; weelis, 33/3; wele, 36/24; weles, prosperities, 24/21.

Wery, *vb.* were, 153/3.

What-som-euer, whatsoever, 27/24.

Where as = where, 14/29.

Where-someuir, wheresoever, 64/40.

Wided, *pp.* voided, departed, 88/11.

Wilke, *vb.* walked, 47/19.

Wite, *vb.* know, 12/24, 168/34.

Withhelde, *vb.* retained, 22/31.

Yelde, *vb.* repay, requite, 37/7.

Yen, *sb.* eyen, eyes, 79/40.

Yngoodly, *adj.* excellent, 174/23.

Yolden, *pp.* yielded, 176/38.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES, &c.

BY MR. THOMAS AUSTIN.

ALBORS, King of Spain, weds his daughter to the King of Sicily, 3.

Alfour, King of Sicily, marries Princess Sybil of Spain, daughter of King Albors, 3; has a daughter, Iolante, 3; seeks help against the Turks, 4; gets no help, 5; is joined by Ferant and Prince Philip, 14; hears of capture of Ferabras, 21; Ferabras is handed over to him, 33; Prince Philip presented to him, 34; the French, English, and Scotch expedition reach Gaeta, 40; he is complained of by his allies, 54, who suffer loss by a storm, 59; holds a Council about the loss of the allies at sea, 66; goes to Naples, 68; proposals for ransom of Ferabras laid before him, 94; resolves to consult Ferant about it, 95; welcomes Prince Philip and Prince David at Court, 108; plans defence of Naples against the Turks, 120, 121; gives his officers a banquet, 132; recaptures his towns, 145, 152; is made Emperor, 146; refuses to let Orcays be ransomed, 148; consults his Council on marriage of Iolante, 153; holds a preliminary Tourney on her account, 156, and proclaims final one, 158; goes to Milan to be crowned, and to Rome, 163; welcomes King Humphrey, 181; holds the Tourney, 188; agrees to help the Sultan, 197; visits England, 204; visits Scotland, 204; his death, 206.

Baltasar, a mercenary, a knight of the Sultan's, 42.

Brunswick, Frederick, Duke of, 146.

Burgundy, Duke of, is made regent of

France, 86; talks with Philip, 166; intends personating Philip at the Tourney, 168; goes to Naples, 182; is met by the Emperor, 185; refuses Orcays' sister, 197, 206.

Bussaunt, Earl of (? Buchan), saved from shipwreck, 63.

Capletrent, 122. Cape (or Point) Tri-onto, on the coast of Italy, extending into the Gulf of Taranto. Lat. 39° 35' N.; long. 16° 50' E.

Charles, King of France, marries a daughter of the King of Nauerre (? Navarre), 1; they have a son, 1; is urged by his son to help the King of Sicily, 5; he declines, 5-7; finds his son is departed, 11; his ships at Gaeta, 43; reproaches himself, 65.

Constable of France, 43; his fate unknown, 63.

David, Prince of Scotland, heads the Scotch troops, 27; holds a Council, 46; is shipwrecked, 60, and taken, 61; saved by his captor, and released, 62; goes to Sizé, 72; joins in the sally, 75; captures his captor, Prince Orcays, 76, and sets him free, 77; his rashness, 99; goes to the Neapolitan Court, 108; relates his adventures, 133; goes to see Iolante, 151; does well at the Tourney, 157; goes home, 163; his arrival, 175; succeeds his father, 177; returns to Sicily, 178; returns home, 201; his marriage, 204.

Douglas, Earl, of Scotland, 39; shipwrecked, 60; slain, 61, 133.

Dover, 203.

- England, King of, promises help to the Sicilians, 24; prepares his forces, 38; laments his loss, 65; sorrows for his son's departure for Sicily, 84; mourns his son as dead, 86; dies, 175. See *Humphrey*.
- Ferabras, King of Persia, brother to the Sultan, with him subdues half Sicily, 13; is at Fondi, 14; is captured by Prince Philip in a skirmish, 16; desires to see his captor, 18, 20; is handed over to King of Sicily, 33; proposals for his ransom laid before the King, 94; a Council held thereon, 101; Turkish knights visit him in prison, 104; is enlarged for a time, 106; reaches the Sultan, 107; sends Prince Humphrey to Prince Philip, 113; Sultan apologizes to him, 115; goes to Persia about his ransom, 116; terms of his ransom, 155.
- Ferant, a Sicilian knight, King Alfou's Seneschal, is sent to Spain to ask help, 13; leaves Toledo with Prince Philip, 13; reaches Sicily, 14; is rescued by Philip, 16; visits him, 19; reports Ferabras's capture to the king, 21; his troops attacked by troops of King Ferabras of Persia, 30; commands garrison of Sizé with Philip, 68; Prince David of Scotland joins him, 72; sallies out of Sizé, 75; resolves on a sortie, 96; blames Philip and David for rashness, 99; holds a Council to advise King of Sicily, 100; is welcomed at Court, 108; takes the three Princes to the Emperor, 151; is sorry at their departure, 161.
- Fosses, a town four miles from Gaeta, 51; is captured from the Turks, 53.
- Foundey (Fondi), a town near Gaeta, in kingdom of Two Sicilies, is held by the Turks, 14; Scotch spies come near it, 47.
- France, King of, Charles, weds a Princess of Naurne (? Navarre), 1; objects to help Sicily, 5; is against his son's departure, 7; mourns at his departure, 11; agrees to help Sicily, 24; prepares his forces, 38; recalls them after the shipwreck, 63; his death, 86. See *Philip*.
- Gayette, Gaeta, occupied by the Sultan, and the Christian fleet anchor there, 40; Turks repel the Christians, 45; the fleet leaves it, 56; is recaptured from the Turks, 147.
- Humphrey, Prince, of England, 78; wishes to help Sicily, 81; starts, 83; is captured, 85; is let out of prison, 110; the Sultan wants to drown him, 111; King Ferabras sends him to Prince Philip, 113; joins the other Princes, 117; tells of his release, 134; is taken to the Neapolitan Court, 151; at the Tourney, 157; goes home, 163; is told of his father's illness, 170; goes to his father's death-bed, 173; is crowned king, 175; makes ready for the Tourney, 175; is welcomed back at Naples, 181; second at the final Tournament, 195; marries Orcays' sister, 200; returns home, 201; his sisters marry the Sultan and the King of Scotland, 204; returns from Scotland, 205.
- Iolante, daughter of the King of Sicily, 3; desires to see Prince Philip, 23; Philip falls in love with her, 37; she loves him secretly, 109; the three Princes go to visit her, 151; her marriage pondered, 153; a three days' Tourney is to decide it, 154; the preliminary Tourney, 156; the grand Tourney proclaimed, 158; is told that Philip will win her in the Tourney, 190; meets Philip, 193; dances with him, 194; her marriage, 196; welcomed in France as queen, 202; goes to England, 203.
- Le toure de Gretus, a port near Gaeta, 56.
- London, 171, 203.
- Luby (? Lybia), King of, 145.
- Millayne (Milan), 163.
- Naples, the King of the Two Sicilies goes there, 67, 68; Turkish messengers arrive there, 94; Neapolitan Court, 108; the Sultan resolves to besiege it, 120; the king arranges the defence, 121; the siege, 123; Ferant sets a gallows up on the walls, to hang Orcays, 127; a grand banquet there, 132; the Turks do not succeed,

137; the siege raised, 140; the Sultan killed before it, 142; Council held there, 153; preliminary Tournament to decide about Iolante's marriage, 156; adorned for final Tourney, 185.

Nauerne (? Navarre), 1.

Oliver, Ferant's brother, is captain at Taprey, 14, 29, 49, 51.

Orcays, son of the Great Turk, takes Prince David of Scotland, and sets him free again, 61, 62; sends him to his friends, 71; is captured by Prince David, 76; released by him, 77; is captured again, 125; gallows prepared for him, 127; at the banquet, 132; tells his history, 135; vows to give back his father's conquests, 136; in love with Iolante, 137; the Turks wish to ransom him, 149; his ransom advised, 153; terms of it, 155; is at the Tourney, 157; his departure, 159; wants Iolante, 164; his return to Sicily, as Sultan, 179; offers to turn Christian, 180; turns Christian, and takes name of Charles, 187; goes to England, 201; marries a sister of David of Scotland, 204; returns to Turkey, 205; his widow returns to England, 207.

Paris, 9, 12.

Peacock, used to swear by, 136.

Persia. See *Ferabras*.

Philip, son of Charles, King of France, is born, 1; is christened, 2; urges his father to help the King of Sicily, 5; is grieved at refusal, 7; resolves to go to Sicily, 9; leaves Paris, and changes his name, 9; goes to Toledo and falls sick, 10; starts from Toledo with Ferant, 13; reaches Sicily, 14; fights his first skirmish, 15; captures King Ferabras, 16; the Sicilian ladies are anxious to see him, 23; is ordered to Sicily, 28; retakes King Ferabras, 31; pledges his faith to Ferant, 35; falls in love with Iolante, 37; commands garrison of Size with Ferant, 68; is at the Council on ransoming of Ferabras, 101; advises Christian captives to be freed, 102; is welcomed at Neapolitan Court with Ferant and David of Scotland, 108; is

joined by Prince Humphrey of England, 117; is captured by the Turks, 124; the Sultan resolves to hang him, 126; is rescued, 129; helps to take Gaeta, 146; Iolante sorrows for his supposed death, 150; is taken by Ferant to her, 151; does best of all at the preliminary Tourney, 157; resolves to return home, 159; returns, 163; talks with his uncle, 166; returns to Naples, 182; acts as his uncle's squire, 184; his supposed absence lamented, 187; does best at the Tournament, 189, etc.; the Emperor embraces him, 192; is taken to see Iolante, 193; accepts her, and is married, 196; his welcome in France, 202; goes to England, 203; returns home, 205; succeeds to throne of Sicily, 206.

Port Dean, in Scotland, 39.

Rome, 163.

Schuse, Shuys, 206.

Scotland: the king refuses to help Sicily, 6; the Estates advise him to do so, 25; Prince David heads expedition, 27; the king makes joint preparations with France and England, 38; the joint fleet reaches Gaeta, 40; is repulsed, 45; Scotch spies sent out, 47; losses in the Scotch fleet, 63; grief of the king, 65; his death, 177. See *David*.

Shipwreck of vessels of the allied fleet, 59, 63.

Sicily, *i. e.* the Two Sicilies, *passim*.

Size, Sessa, a town near Gaeta, a garrison left there, 67; the Turks resolve to lay siege to it, 69; Prince David goes there, 73; Prince Orcays captured in a sally, 75, 76; daily sallies, 87; the Turks think of raising the siege, 89; a sortie resolved on, 96; success of it, 98.

Spain, King of, asked to help Sicily, 13; will give no help, 66. See *Albors*.

Sultan (the Grand Turk), subdues half Sicily, 13; opposes the landing at Gaeta, 40; calls a Council, 42; detains Prince David, 62; resolves to besiege Size, 69; goes to see the encampment, 75; calls a Council about the siege, 88; wishes a truce, 103, and settles it, 107; leaves garrisons

- in Sicily, 109; wants to kill Prince Humphrey, 112; apologizes to King Ferabras, 115; appeals to his subjects for help, 119; resolves to besiege Naples, 120; wishes to hang Prince Philip, 127; sees the siege is useless, 137; holds another Council, 138; is killed before Naples, 142.
- Sybil, the King of Spain's daughter, marries King Alfour of Sicily, 3.
- Talpoir, same as Taprey, 21, 22.
- Taprey, a town in the kingdom of the Two Sicilies, near Gaeta, 14, 16; called Tapyr, 47; still held by Oliver, 48, 51.
- Toledo. See *Towlette*.
- Tournament, preliminary, to decide about marriage of Iolante, 154, 156; the field for the final one is settled, 187, 188; King Philip's side wins, 189, 191, 195; the party disperses, 201.
- Towlette, Toledo in Spain, is reached by Prince Philip, 10; he lies sick there, 12, 22, 206.
- Turks make war against Sicily, 4; repulse the Christian fleet at Gaeta, 45; besiege Sizé, 69; make a year's truce, 107; besiege Naples, 123; blame their Sultan, 139; defeated before Naples, 142; are downcast, 149; make a three years' truce, 155. See *Sultan*.
- Warwick, Earl of, welcomes Prince Humphrey on part of King of England, 171, 172.
- Warwick, son of the Earl of, reproaches Prince Humphrey, 79, 82.







PRATT

-8. MAR. 1903
JAN 7 1985

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

